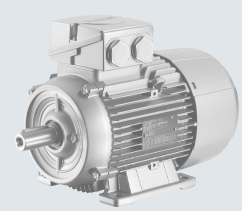
SIEMENS



Operating Instructions

SINAMICS

SINAMICS G120C

Low voltage converter
Built-in units with frame sizes AA ... F

Edition 09/2017

www.siemens.com/drives

SIEMENS

SINAMICS

SINAMICS G120C
SINAMICS G120C converter

Operating Instructions

Edition 09/2017, firmware 4.7 SP9

09/2017, FW V4.7 SP9
A5E34263257B AF

Legal information

Warning notice system

This manual contains notices you have to observe in order to ensure your personal safety, as well as to prevent damage to property. The notices referring to your personal safety are highlighted in the manual by a safety alert symbol, notices referring only to property damage have no safety alert symbol. These notices shown below are graded according to the degree of danger.

⚠ DANGER
indicates that death or severe personal injury **will** result if proper precautions are not taken.

⚠ WARNING
indicates that death or severe personal injury **may** result if proper precautions are not taken.

⚠ CAUTION
indicates that minor personal injury can result if proper precautions are not taken.

NOTICE
indicates that property damage can result if proper precautions are not taken.

If more than one degree of danger is present, the warning notice representing the highest degree of danger will be used. A notice warning of injury to persons with a safety alert symbol may also include a warning relating to property damage.

Qualified Personnel

The product/system described in this documentation may be operated only by **personnel qualified** for the specific task in accordance with the relevant documentation, in particular its warning notices and safety instructions. Qualified personnel are those who, based on their training and experience, are capable of identifying risks and avoiding potential hazards when working with these products/systems.

Proper use of Siemens products

Note the following:

⚠ WARNING
Siemens products may only be used for the applications described in the catalog and in the relevant technical documentation. If products and components from other manufacturers are used, these must be recommended or approved by Siemens. Proper transport, storage, installation, assembly, commissioning, operation and maintenance are required to ensure that the products operate safely and without any problems. The permissible ambient conditions must be complied with. The information in the relevant documentation must be observed.

Trademarks

All names identified by ® are registered trademarks of Siemens AG. The remaining trademarks in this publication may be trademarks whose use by third parties for their own purposes could violate the rights of the owner.

Disclaimer of Liability

We have reviewed the contents of this publication to ensure consistency with the hardware and software described. Since variance cannot be precluded entirely, we cannot guarantee full consistency. However, the information in this publication is reviewed regularly and any necessary corrections are included in subsequent editions.

Siemens AG
Division Digital Factory
Postfach 48 48
90026 NÜRNBERG
GERMANY

A5E34263257B AF
Ⓟ 09/2017 Subject to change

Changes in the current manual

Notable changes since the 11/2016 edition of the Manual

New hardware

- Operator Panel IOP replaced by Intelligent Operator Panel 2 (IOP-2).
  Installing the inverter (Page 50)
  Tools to commission the inverter (Page 116)
- dU/dt filter plus Voltage Peak Limiter
  Mount dU/dt filter plus Voltage Peak Limiter (Page 62)

Hardware, which is no longer described in the current operating instructions

Frame size FSA, power range 0.55 kW … 2.2 kW

Information on inverters FSA, 0.55 kW … 2.2 kW is provided in Edition 11/2016 of the operating instructions.

Operating instructions SINAMICS G120C, FW V4.7 SP6 (https://support.industry.siemens.com/cs/ww/en/view/109744769)

New functions

- Telegram 350 added for PROFIBUS and PROFINET
  Drive control via PROFIBUS or PROFINET (Page 179)
- Improved method for optimizing the efficiency of standard induction motors
  Efficiency optimization (Page 311)
- End position control with two limit switches
  Limit position control (Page 202)
- The inverter issues an alarm if a memory card is not inserted.
  Activate message for a memory card that is not inserted (Page 332)

Overview of all new and modified functions in firmware V4.7 SP9:

Firmware version 4.7 SP9 (Page 429)

Corrections

- Default 14 of the terminal strip corrected:
  The higher-level control switches the function of the terminal strip via PZD01, bit 15 (not via digital input DI 3).
  Default setting of the interfaces (Page 91)
- Motor holding brake function corrected:
  - The inverter sets the signal "Operation released" to "high" after expiry of the time p1216 (not with the ON command).
  - The inverter sets the signal "Operation released" to "low" with the OFF command (not with the signal "Motor is magnetized").

  Motor holding brake (Page 206)
- The maximum permissible cable length has been corrected:
  Optional components (Page 36)
- The restrictions relating to the electromagnetic compatibility of the inverter have been corrected.
  Maximum permissible motor cable length (Page 77)
- With the installation of a suitable fuse, the short-circuit current rating SCCR of the inverter is 100 kA, irrespective of the frame size.
  General inverter technical data (Page 405)

Other revised chapters

- Description for drive control via PROFIBUS and PROFINET has been revised
  Drive control via PROFIBUS or PROFINET (Page 179)
- External Class B line filters for inverters FSAA … FSC, and reference to additional optional components for the inverter added
  Optional components (Page 36)
- Data regarding branch protection reduced to typical fuses.
  Branch circuit protection (Page 75)
- Technical data for the digital inputs and digital outputs added:
  - Minimum current for the "high" state for digital inputs
  - Maximum current for the "low" state for transistor outputs

  Technical data of inputs and outputs (Page 401)

Table of contents

Fundamental safety instructions 1

1.1 General safety instructions

⚠ WARNING

Electric shock and danger to life due to other energy sources

Touching live components can result in death or severe injury.

- Only work on electrical devices when you are qualified for this job.
- Always observe the country-specific safety rules.

Generally, the following six steps apply when establishing safety:

1. Prepare for disconnection. Notify all those who will be affected by the procedure.
2. Isolate the drive system from the power supply and take measures to prevent it being switched back on again.
3. Wait until the discharge time specified on the warning labels has elapsed.
4. Check that there is no voltage between any of the power connections, and between any of the power connections and the protective conductor connection.
5. Check whether the existing auxiliary supply circuits are de-energized.
6. Ensure that the motors cannot move.
7. Identify all other dangerous energy sources, e.g. compressed air, hydraulic systems, or water. Switch the energy sources to a safe state.
8. Check that the correct drive system is completely locked.

After you have completed the work, restore the operational readiness in the inverse sequence.

⚠ WARNING

Electric shock due to connection to an unsuitable power supply

When equipment is connected to an unsuitable power supply, exposed components may carry a hazardous voltage that might result in serious injury or death.

- Only use power supplies that provide SELV (Safety Extra Low Voltage) or PELV-(Protective Extra Low Voltage) output voltages for all connections and terminals of the electronics modules.

WARNING

Electric shock due to equipment damage

Improper handling may cause damage to equipment. For damaged devices, hazardous voltages can be present at the enclosure or at exposed components; if touched, this can result in death or severe injury.

- Ensure compliance with the limit values specified in the technical data during transport, storage and operation.
- Do not use any damaged devices.

WARNING

Electric shock due to unconnected cable shield

Hazardous touch voltages can occur through capacitive cross-coupling due to unconnected cable shields.

- As a minimum, connect cable shields and the conductors of power cables that are not used (e.g. brake cores) at one end at the grounded housing potential.

WARNING

Electric shock if there is no ground connection

For missing or incorrectly implemented protective conductor connection for devices with protection class I, high voltages can be present at open, exposed parts, which when touched, can result in death or severe injury.

- Ground the device in compliance with the applicable regulations.

WARNING

Arcing when a plug connection is opened during operation

Opening a plug connection when a system is operation can result in arcing that may cause serious injury or death.

- Only open plug connections when the equipment is in a voltage-free state, unless it has been explicitly stated that they can be opened in operation.

WARNING

Electric shock due to residual charges in power components

Because of the capacitors, a hazardous voltage is present for up to 5 minutes after the power supply has been switched off. Contact with live parts can result in death or serious injury.

- Wait for 5 minutes before you check that the unit really is in a no-voltage condition and start work.

NOTICE

Property damage due to loose power connections

Insufficient tightening torques or vibration can result in loose power connections. This can result in damage due to fire, device defects or malfunctions.

- Tighten all power connections to the prescribed torque.
- Check all power connections at regular intervals, particularly after equipment has been transported.

WARNING

Spread of fire from built-in devices

In the event of fire outbreak, the enclosures of built-in devices cannot prevent the escape of fire and smoke. This can result in serious personal injury or property damage.

- Install built-in units in a suitable metal cabinet in such a way that personnel are protected against fire and smoke, or take other appropriate measures to protect personnel.
- Ensure that smoke can only escape via controlled and monitored paths.

WARNING

Failure of pacemakers or implant malfunctions due to electromagnetic fields

Electromagnetic fields (EMF) are generated by the operation of electrical power equipment, such as transformers, converters, or motors. People with pacemakers or implants in the immediate vicinity of this equipment are at particular risk.

- If you have a heart pacemaker or implant, maintain a minimum distance of 2 m from electrical power equipment.

WARNING

Unexpected movement of machines caused by radio devices or mobile phones

When radio devices or mobile phones with a transmission power > 1 W are used in the immediate vicinity of components, they may cause the equipment to malfunction. Malfunctions may impair the functional safety of machines and can therefore put people in danger or lead to property damage.

- If you come closer than around 2 m to such components, switch off any radios or mobile phones.
- Use the "SIEMENS Industry Online Support App" only on equipment that has already been switched off.

WARNING

Motor fire in the event of insulation overload

There is higher stress on the motor insulation through a ground fault in an IT system. If the insulation fails, it is possible that death or severe injury can occur as a result of smoke and fire.

- Use a monitoring device that signals an insulation fault.
- Correct the fault as quickly as possible so the motor insulation is not overloaded.

WARNING

Fire due to inadequate ventilation clearances

Inadequate ventilation clearances can cause overheating of components with subsequent fire and smoke. This can cause severe injury or even death. This can also result in increased downtime and reduced service lives for devices/systems.

- Ensure compliance with the specified minimum clearance as ventilation clearance for the respective component.

WARNING

Unrecognized dangers due to missing or illegible warning labels

Dangers might not be recognized if warning labels are missing or illegible. Unrecognized dangers may cause accidents resulting in serious injury or death.

- Check that the warning labels are complete based on the documentation.
- Attach any missing warning labels to the components, where necessary in the national language.
- Replace illegible warning labels.

NOTICE

Device damage caused by incorrect voltage/insulation tests

Incorrect voltage/insulation tests can damage the device.

- Before carrying out a voltage/insulation check of the system/machine, disconnect the devices as all converters and motors have been subject to a high voltage test by the manufacturer, and therefore it is not necessary to perform an additional test within the system/machine.

WARNING

Unexpected movement of machines caused by inactive safety functions

Inactive or non-adapted safety functions can trigger unexpected machine movements that may result in serious injury or death.

- Observe the information in the appropriate product documentation before commissioning.
- Carry out a safety inspection for functions relevant to safety on the entire system, including all safety-related components.
- Ensure that the safety functions used in your drives and automation tasks are adjusted and activated through appropriate parameterizing.
- Perform a function test.
- Only put your plant into live operation once you have guaranteed that the functions relevant to safety are running correctly.

Note

Important safety notices for Safety Integrated functions

If you want to use Safety Integrated functions, you must observe the safety notices in the Safety Integrated manuals.

WARNING

Malfunctions of the machine as a result of incorrect or changed parameter settings

As a result of incorrect or changed parameterization, machines can malfunction, which in turn can lead to injuries or death.

- Protect the parameterization (parameter assignments) against unauthorized access.
- Handle possible malfunctions by taking suitable measures, e.g. emergency stop or emergency off.

1.2 Equipment damage due to electric fields or electrostatic discharge

Electrostatic sensitive devices (ESD) are individual components, integrated circuits, modules or devices that may be damaged by either electric fields or electrostatic discharge.

NOTICE

Equipment damage due to electric fields or electrostatic discharge

Electric fields or electrostatic discharge can cause malfunctions through damaged individual components, integrated circuits, modules or devices.

- Only pack, store, transport and send electronic components, modules or devices in their original packaging or in other suitable materials, e.g conductive foam rubber of aluminum foil.
- Only touch components, modules and devices when you are grounded by one of the following methods:
  - Wearing an ESD wrist strap
  - Wearing ESD shoes or ESD grounding straps in ESD areas with conductive flooring
- Only place electronic components, modules or devices on conductive surfaces (table with ESD surface, conductive ESD foam, ESD packaging, ESD transport container).

1.3 Warranty and liability for application examples

The application examples are not binding and do not claim to be complete regarding configuration, equipment or any eventuality which may arise. The application examples do not represent specific customer solutions, but are only intended to provide support for typical tasks. You are responsible for the proper operation of the described products. These application examples do not relieve you of your responsibility for safe handling when using, installing, operating and maintaining the equipment.

1.4 Industrial security

Note

Industrial security

Siemens provides products and solutions with industrial security functions that support the secure operation of plants, systems, machines and networks.

In order to protect plants, systems, machines and networks against cyber threats, it is necessary to implement – and continuously maintain – a holistic, state-of-the-art industrial security concept. Siemens products and solutions only represent one component of such a concept.

The customer is responsible for preventing unauthorized access to its plants, systems, machines and networks. Systems, machines and components should only be connected to the enterprise network or the internet if and to the extent necessary and with appropriate security measures (e.g. use of firewalls and network segmentation) in place.

Additionally, Siemens' guidance on appropriate security measures should be taken into account. For more information about industrial security, please visit:

Industrial security (http://www.siemens.com/industrialsecurity).

Siemens' products and solutions undergo continuous development to make them more secure. Siemens strongly recommends to apply product updates as soon as available and to always use the latest product versions. Use of product versions that are no longer supported, and failure to apply latest updates may increase customer's exposure to cyber threats.

To stay informed about product updates, subscribe to the Siemens Industrial Security RSS Feed at:

Industrial security (http://www.siemens.com/industrialsecurity).

WARNING

Unsafe operating states resulting from software manipulation

Software manipulations (e.g. viruses, trojans, malware or worms) can cause unsafe operating states in your system that may lead to death, serious injury, and property damage.

- Keep the software up to date.
- Incorporate the automation and drive components into a holistic, state-of-the-art industrial security concept for the installation or machine.
- Make sure that you include all installed products into the holistic industrial security concept.
- Protect files stored on exchangeable storage media from malicious software by with suitable protection measures, e.g. virus scanners.

1.5 Residual risks of power drive systems

When assessing the machine- or system-related risk in accordance with the respective local regulations (e.g., EC Machinery Directive), the machine manufacturer or system installer must take into account the following residual risks emanating from the control and drive components of a drive system:

1. Unintentional movements of driven machine or system components during commissioning, operation, maintenance, and repairs caused by, for example,
   - Hardware and/or software errors in the sensors, control system, actuators, and cables and connections
   - Response times of the control system and of the drive
   - Operation and/or environmental conditions outside the specification
   - Condensation/conductive contamination
   - Parameterization, programming, cabling, and installation errors
   - Use of wireless devices/mobile phones in the immediate vicinity of electronic components
   - External influences/damage
   - X-ray, ionizing radiation and cosmic radiation
2. Unusually high temperatures, including open flames, as well as emissions of light, noise, particles, gases, etc., can occur inside and outside the components under fault conditions caused by, for example:
   - Component failure
   - Software errors
   - Operation and/or environmental conditions outside the specification
   - External influences/damage
3. Hazardous shock voltages caused by, for example:
   - Component failure
   - Influence during electrostatic charging
   - Induction of voltages in moving motors
   - Operation and/or environmental conditions outside the specification
   - Condensation/conductive contamination
   - External influences/damage
4. Electrical, magnetic and electromagnetic fields generated in operation that can pose a risk to people with a pacemaker, implants or metal replacement joints, etc., if they are too close
5. Release of environmental pollutants or emissions as a result of improper operation of the system and/or failure to dispose of components safely and correctly
6. Influence of network-connected communication systems, e.g. ripple-control transmitters or data communication via the network

For more information about the residual risks of the drive system components, see the relevant sections in the technical user documentation.

Introduction 2

2.1 About the Manual

Who requires the operating instructions and what for?

These operating instructions primarily address fitters, commissioning engineers and machine operators. The operating instructions describe the devices and device components and enable the target groups being addressed to install, connect-up, set, and commission the converters safely and in the correct manner.

What is described in the operating instructions?

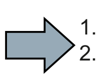
These operating instructions provide a summary of all of the information required to operate the converter under normal, safe conditions.

The information provided in the operating instructions has been compiled in such a way that it is sufficient for all standard applications and enables drives to be commissioned as efficiently as possible. Where it appears useful, additional information for entry level personnel has been added.

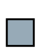
The operating instructions also contain information about special applications. Since it is assumed that readers already have a sound technical knowledge of how to configure and parameterize these applications, the relevant information is summarized accordingly. This relates, e.g. to operation with fieldbus systems and safety-related applications.

What is the meaning of the symbols in the manual?

 Reference to further information in the manual



An operating instruction starts here.

 This concludes the operating instruction.

 Download from the Internet

 DVD that can be ordered

 Examples of inverter function symbols

2.2 Guide through the manual

Section	In this section you will find answers to the following questions:
Description (Page 29)	• How is the inverter marked? • Which components make up the inverter? • Which optional components are available for the inverter? • What is the purpose of the optional components? • Which motors can be fed from the inverter? • Which commissioning tools are there?
Installing (Page 41)	• Which sequence is recommended when installing the inverter? • What does EMC-compliant installation actually mean? • Which options are available to install optional components below the inverter? • What are the inverter dimensions? • Which mounting and installation materials are required when installing the inverter? • To which line supplies can the inverter be connected? • How is the inverter connected to the line supply? • How is the braking resistor connected to the inverter? • Which terminals and fieldbus interfaces does the inverter have? • What are the interface functions?
Commissioning (Page 115)	• Which motor data is required for commissioning • How is the inverter set in the factory? • What is the commissioning procedure? • How do you restore the inverter factory settings?
Advanced commissioning (Page 157)	• Which functions are included in the inverter firmware? • How do the functions interoperate with one another? • How are the functions set?
Saving settings and series commissioning (Page 321)	• Why is it necessary to back up the inverter settings? • Which options are available to back up the settings? • How does the data backup function? • How do you prevent the inverter settings from being changed? • How do you prevent the inverter settings from being read out?
Corrective maintenance (Page 369)	• How are inverter components replaced? • How do you change the firmware version of the inverter?
Alarms, faults and system messages (Page 349)	• What is the meaning of the LEDs provided on the inverter? • How does the system runtime respond? • How does the inverter save alarms and faults? • What do the inverter alarms and faults mean? • How are inverter faults resolved? • Which I&M data is saved in the inverter?

Section	In this section you will find answers to the following questions:
Technical data (Page 401)	• What is the inverter technical data? • What do "High Overload" and "Low Overload" mean?
Appendix (Page 429)	• What are the new functions of the current firmware? • What are the most important inverter parameters? • How is the inverter operated using the BOP-2 Operator Panel? • How does the device trace function in STARTER? • How can signal interconnections be changed in the inverter firmware? • What does "BiCo technology" mean? • Where can you find additional manuals and information about the inverter?

Description

3

Use for the intended purpose

The inverter described in this manual is a device to control a three-phase motor. The inverter is designed for installation in electrical installations or machines.

It has been approved for industrial and commercial use on industrial networks. Additional measures have to be taken when connected to public grids.

The technical specifications and information about connection conditions are indicated on the rating plate and in the operating instructions.

Use of third-party products

This document contains recommendations relating to third-party products. Siemens accepts the fundamental suitability of these third-party products.

You can use equivalent products from other manufacturers.

Siemens does not accept any warranty for the properties of third-party products.

Use of OpenSSL

This product contains software developed in the OpenSSL project for use within the OpenSSL toolkit.

This product contains cryptographic software created by Eric Young.

This product contains software developed by Eric Young.

Further information is provided on the Internet:

OpenSSL (https://www.openssl.org/)

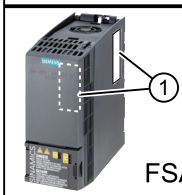
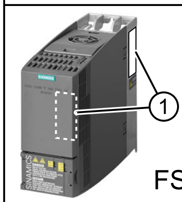
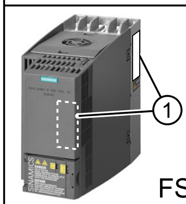
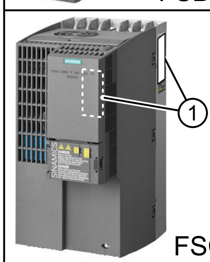
Cryptsoft (mailto:eay@cryptsoft.com)

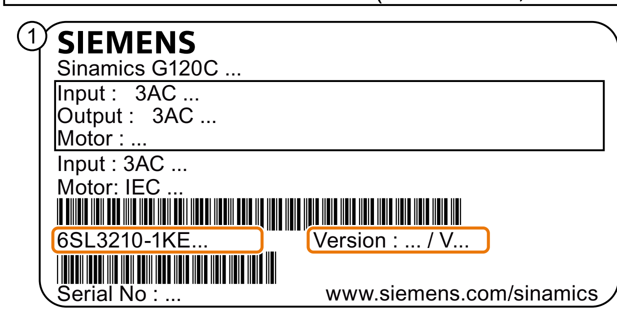
3.1 Scope of delivery inverters FSAA ... FSC

The delivery comprises at least the following components:

- A ready to run inverter with loaded firmware.
  Options for upgrading and downgrading the firmware can be found on the Internet:
  Firmware (http://support.automation.siemens.com/WW/news/en/67364620)
  You can find the article number 6SL3210-1KE…, the hardware version (e.g. C02) and the firmware (e.g. V4.7) on the inverter rating plate.
- 1 set of terminal strips for connecting the inputs and outputs
- 1 set of shield plates, including mounting materials
- Compact Operating Instructions in German and English
- The inverter contains open-source software (OSS). The OSS license terms are saved in the inverter.
- 1 set of connectors for connecting the line supply, motor and braking resistor
- Only for inverters with fieldbus via USS or Modbus RTU: 1 connector for connecting the fieldbus

Rating plate and technical data

Frame size	Rated output power	Rated output current	Article No.	
	Based on a low overload		Without filter	With filter
 FSAA	0.55 kW	1.7 A	6SL3210-1KE11-8U□2	6SL3210-1KE11-8A□2
	0.75 kW	2.2 A	6SL3210-1KE12-3U□2	6SL3210-1KE12-3A□2
	1.1 kW	3.1 A	6SL3210-1KE13-2U□2	6SL3210-1KE13-2A□2
	1.5 kW	4.1 A	6SL3210-1KE14-3U□2	6SL3210-1KE14-3A□2
	2.2 kW	5.6 A	6SL3210-1KE15-8U□2	6SL3210-1KE15-8A□2
 FSA	3.0 kW	7.3 A	6SL3210-1KE17-5U□1	6SL3210-1KE17-5A□1
	4.0 kW	8.8 A	6SL3210-1KE18-8U□1	6SL3210-1KE18-8A□1
 FSB	5.5 kW	12.5 A	6SL3210-1KE21-3U□1	6SL3210-1KE21-3A□1
	7.5 kW	16.5 A	6SL3210-1KE21-7U□1	6SL3210-1KE21-7A□1
 FSC	11.0 kW	25.0 A	6SL3210-1KE22-6U□1	6SL3210-1KE22-6A□1
	15.0 kW	31.0 A	6SL3210-1KE23-2U□1	6SL3210-1KE23-2A□1
	18.5 kW	37.0 A	6SL3210-1KE23-8U□1	6SL3210-1KE23-8A□1
SINAMICS G120C USS/MB	(USS, Modbus RTU)		B	B
SINAMICS G120C DP	(PROFIBUS)		P	P
SINAMICS G120C PN	(PROFINET, EtherNet/IP)		F	F



The rating plate contains the Article No. and the hardware and firmware version of the inverter. You will find a rating plate at the following locations on the inverter:

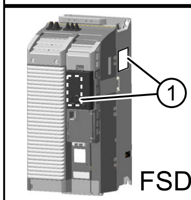
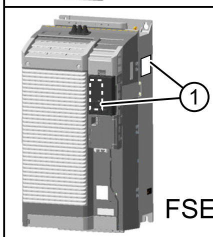
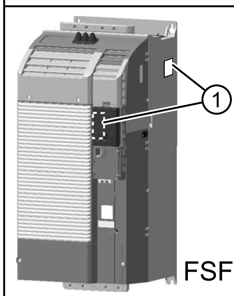
- At the front, after removing the blanking cover for the operator panel.
- At the side on the heat sink

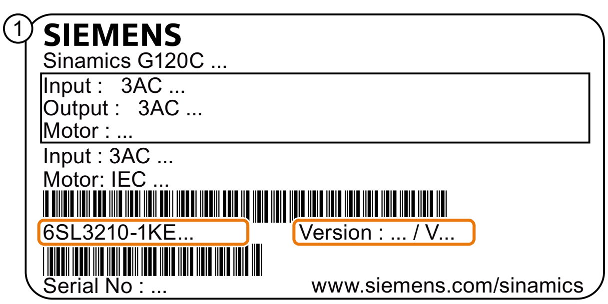
3.2 Scope of delivery inverters FSD ... FSF

The delivery comprises at least the following components:

- A ready to run inverter with loaded firmware.
  Options for upgrading and downgrading the firmware can be found on the Internet:
  Firmware (http://support.automation.siemens.com/WW/news/en/67364620)
  You can find the article number 6SL3210-1KE…, the hardware version (e.g. C02) and the firmware (e.g. V4.7) on the inverter rating plate.
- Shield plate, including mounting hardware
- Compact Operating Instructions in German and English
- The inverter contains open-source software (OSS). The OSS license terms are saved in the inverter.
- 1 set of covers for the motor, line and braking resistor terminals.

Type plate and technical data

Frame size	Rated output power	Rated output current	Article No. SINAMICS G120C PN (PROFINET, EtherNet/IP)	
	Based on a low overload		Without filter	With filter
 FSD	22 kW	43 A	6SL3210-1KE24-4UF1	6SL3210-1KE24-4AF1
	30 kW	58 A	6SL3210-1KE26-0UF1	6SL3210-1KE26-0AF1
	37 kW	68 A	6SL3210-1KE27-0UF1	6SL3210-1KE27-0AF1
	45 kW	82.5	6SL3210-1KE28-4UF1	6SL3210-1KE28-4AF1
 FSE	55 kW	103 A	6SL3210-1KE31-1UF1	6SL3210-1KE31-1AF1
 FSF	75 kW	136 A	6SL3210-1KE31-4UF1	6SL3210-1KE31-4AF1
	90 kW	164 A	6SL3210-1KE31-7UF1	6SL3210-1KE31-7AF1
	110 kW	201 A	6SL3210-1KE32-1UF1	6SL3210-1KE32-1AF1
	132 kW	237 A	6SL3210-1KE32-4UF1	6SL3210-1KE32-4AF1



The rating plate contains the Article No. and the hardware and firmware version of the inverter. You will find a rating plate at the following locations on the inverter:

- At the front, after removing the blanking cover for the operator panel.
- At the side on the heat sink

3.3 Directives and standards

Relevant directives and standards

The following directives and standards are relevant for the inverters:

European Low Voltage Directive

The inverters fulfil the requirements stipulated in the Low-Voltage Directive 2014/35/EU, if they are covered by the application area of this directive.

European Machinery Directive

The inverters fulfil the requirements stipulated in the Machinery Directive 2006/42//EU, if they are covered by the application area of this directive.

However, the use of the inverters in a typical machine application has been fully assessed for compliance with the main regulations in this directive concerning health and safety.

Directive 2011/65/EU

The inverter fulfills the requirements of Directive 2011/65/EU on the restriction of the use of certain hazardous substances in electrical and electronic devices (RoHS II).

European EMC Directive

By completely complying with IEC/EN 61800-3, it has been proven that the inverter is in compliance with directive 2004/108/EC or 2014/30/EU.

Underwriters Laboratories (North American market)

Inverters provided with one of the test symbols displayed fulfil the requirements stipulated for the North American market as a component of drive applications, and are appropriately listed.

EMC requirements for South Korea

The inverters with the KC marking on the rating plate satisfy the EMC requirements for South Korea.

Eurasian conformity

The inverters comply with the requirements of the Russia/Belarus/Kazakhstan customs union (EAC).

Australia and New Zealand (RCM formerly C-Tick)

The inverters showing the test symbols fulfil the EMC requirements for Australia and New Zealand.

Immunity to voltage drop of semiconductor process equipment.

The inverters comply with the requirements of standard SEMI F47-0706.

Quality systems

Siemens AG employs a quality management system that meets the requirements of ISO 9001 and ISO 14001.

Certificates for download

- EC Declaration of Conformity: (https://support.industry.siemens.com/cs/ww/de/view/58275445)
- Certificates for the relevant directives, prototype test certificates, manufacturers declarations and test certificates for functions relating to functional safety ("Safety Integrated"): (http://support.automation.siemens.com/WW/view/en/22339653/134200)
- Certificates of products that were certified by UL: (http://database.ul.com/cgi-bin/XYV/template/LISEXT/1FRAME/index.html)
- Certificates of products that were certified by TÜV SÜD: (https://www.tuev-sued.de/industrie_konsumprodukte/zertifikatsdatenbank)

Standards that are not relevant

China Compulsory Certification

The inverters do not fall in the area of validity of the China Compulsory Certification (CCC).

3.4 Optional components

Line filter

The inverter is available with and without an integrated line filter. With a line filter, the inverter achieves a higher radio interference class.

Inverter			**Line filter as base component** **Class B (Category C1) for cable-conducted interference emission and Class A (Category C2) for field-conducted interference emission**	**4 kHz pulse frequency** **Maximum motor cable length, shielded**
Frame size AA	0.55 kW … 2.2 kW	6SL3210-1KE11-8U . 2, 6SL3210-1KE12-3U . 2, 6SL3210-1KE13-2U . 2, 6SL3210-1KE14-3U . 2, 6SL3210-1KE15-8U . 2 [1]	6SL3203-0BE17-7BA0	50 m
Frame size A	3.0 kW … 4.0 kW	6SL3210-1KE17-5U . 1, 6SL3210-1KE18-8U . 1		25 m
Frame size B	5.5 kW … 7.5 kW	6SL3210-1KE21-3U . 1, 6SL3210-1KE21-7U . 1	6SL3203-0BE21-8BA0	50 m
Frame size C	11 kW … 18.5 kW	6SL3210-1KE22-6UX1, 6SL3210-1KE23-2UX1, 6SL3210-1KE23-8UX1	6SL3203-0BE23-8BA0	50 m with additional ferrite core We recommend ferrite cores from Wurth Elektronik GmbH, Article number 74270095.

[1] with restrictions, see below.

Line reactor

The line reactor increases the level of protection for the inverter against overvoltages, harmonics and commutation dips.

In order that the inverter service life is not reduced, a line reactor is required for a relative short-circuit voltage u_k of the line transformer < 1 %.

Inverter			**Line reactor**	**Line reactor as base component**
Frame size AA	0.55 kW	6SL3210-1KE11-8 . . .	6SL3203-0CE13-2AA0	6SE6400-3CC00-2AD3
	0.75 kW … 1.1 kW	6SL3210-1KE12-3 . . . 6SL3210-1KE13-2 . . .		6SE6400-3CC00-4AD3
	1.5 kW	6SL3210-1KE14-3 . . .	6SL3203-0CE21-0AA0	6SE6400-3CC00-6AD3 [1]
	2.2 kW	6SL3210-1KE15-8 . . .		
Frame size A	3.0 kW … 4.0 kW	6SL3210-1KE17-5 . . 1 6SL3210-1KE18-8 . . 1		---

Inverter			Line reactor	Line reactor as base component
Frame size B	5.5 kW … 7.5 kW	6SL3210-1KE21-3 . . 1 6SL3210-1KE21-7 . . 1	6SL3203-0CE21-8AA0	---
Frame size C	11.0 kW … 18.5 kW	6SL3210-1KE22-6 . . 1 6SL3210-1KE23-2 . . 1 6SL3210-1KE23-8 . . 1	6SL3203-0CE23-8AA0	---
Frame size D … frame size F	22 kW … 132 kW		An external line reactor is not required.	

[1)] with restrictions for G120C FSAA, 2.2 kW. See below.

Sine-wave filter

Sine-wave filters limit the the rate of voltage rise (dv/dt) and the peak voltages at the motor winding. The sine-wave filter increases the maximum permissible length of the motor cables.

Inverter			Sine-wave filter	Sine-wave filter as base component
Frame size AA	0.55 kW … 2.2 kW	6SL3210-1KE11-8U . 2 6SL3210-1KE12-3U . 2 6SL3210-1KE13-2U . 2 6SL3210-1KE14-3U . 2 6SL3210-1KE15-8U . 2 [1)]	---	6SE6400-3TD00-4AD0

Frame size A … frame size F (3 kW … 132 kW): A sine-wave filter is not available.

[1)] with restrictions, see below.

Output reactor

In order to increase the maximum permissible motor cable length you need one or two output reactors, depending on the inverter.

- Frame size AA … frame size C: An output reactor
- Frame size D … frame size F: Two output reactors connected in series

Inverter			Output reactor	Output reactor as base component
Frame size AA	0.55 kW … 2.2 kW	6SL3210-1KE11-8 . . . 6SL3210-1KE12-3 . . . 6SL3210-1KE13-2 . . . 6SL3210-1KE14-3 . . . 6SL3210-1KE15-8 . . .	6SL3202-0AE16-1CA0	6SE6400-3TC00-4AD2 [1)]
Frame size A	3.0 kW … 4.0 kW	6SL3210-1KE17-5 . . 1 6SL3210-1KE18-8 . . 1	6SL3202-0AE18-8CA0	---
Frame size B	5.5 kW … 7.5 kW	6SL3210-1KE21-3 . . 1 6SL3210-1KE21-7 . . 1	6SL3202-0AE21-8CA0	---
Frame size C	11.0 kW … 18.5 kW	6SL3210-1KE22-6 . . 1 6SL3210-1KE23-2 . . 1 6SL3210-1KE23-8 . . 1	6SL3202-0AE23-8CA0	---

Inverter			Output reactor	Output reactor as base component
Frame size D	22 kW … 37 kW	6SL3210-1KE24-4 . . 1 6SL3210-1KE26-0 . . 1 6SL3210-1KE27-0 . . 1	6SE6400-3TC07-5ED0	---
	45 kW	6SL3210-1KE28-4 . . 1	6SE6400-3TC14-5FD0	---
Frame size E	55 kW	6SL3210-1KE31-1 . . 1		
Frame size F	75 kW … 90 kW	6SL3210-1KE31-4 . . 1 6SL3210-1KE31-7 . . 1		
	110 kW	6SL3210-1KE32-1 . . 1	6SL3000-2BE32-1AA0	---
	132 kW	6SL3210-1KE32-4 . . 1	6SL3000-2BE32-6AA0	---

1) with restrictions for G120C FSAA, 2.2 kW. See below.

dU/dt filter plus Voltage Peak Limiter

The "du/dt filter plus Voltage Peak Limiter" is intended for motors for which the voltage strength is either unknown or is not adequate.

The du/dt filter plus Voltage Peak Limiter limits the voltage rate of rise and the voltage peaks at the inverter output.

Inverter			dU/dt filter plus VPL
Frame size F	75 kW … 132 kW	6SL3210-1KE31-4 . . 1, 6SL3210-1KE31-7 . . 1, 6SL3210-1KE32-1 . . 1, 6SL3210-1KE32-4 . . 1	6SL3000-2DE32-6AA0

Braking resistor

The braking resistor allows the inverter to actively brake loads with high moments of inertia.

Inverter			Braking resistor	Braking resistor as base component
Frame size AA	0.55 kW … 1.1 kW	6SL3210-1KE11-8 . . . 6SL3210-1KE12-3 . . . 6SL3210-1KE13-2 . . .	6SL3201-0BE14-3AA0	6SE6400-4BD11-0AA0 1)
	1.5 kW	6SL3210-1KE14-3 . . .		
	2.2 kW	6SL3210-1KE15-8 . . .	6SL3201-0BE21-0AA0	
Frame size A	3.0 kW … 4.0 kW	6SL3210-1KE17-5 . . 1 6SL3210-1KE18-8 . . 1		---
Frame size B	5.5 kW … 7.5 kW	6SL3210-1KE21-3 . . 1 6SL3210-1KE21-7 . . 1	6SL3201-0BE21-8AA0	---
Frame size C	11.0 kW … 18.5 kW	6SL3210-1KE22-6 . . 1 6SL3210-1KE23-2 . . 1 6SL3210-1KE23-8 . . 1	6SL3201-0BE23-8AA0	---
Frame size D	22 kW	6SL3210-1KE24-4 . . 1	JJY:023422620001	---
	30 kW … 37 kW	6SL3210-1KE26-0 . . 1 6SL3210-1KE27-0 . . 1	JJY:023424020001	---
	45 kW	6SL3210-1KE28-4 . . 1	JJY:023434020001	---
Frame size E	55 kW	6SL3210-1KE31-1 . . 1		

Inverter			Braking resistor	Braking resistor as base component
Frame size F	75 kW … 90 kW	6SL3210-1KE31-4 . . 1 6SL3210-1KE31-7 . . 1	JJY:023454020001	---
	110 kW … 132 kW	6SL3210-1KE32-1 . . 1 6SL3210-1KE32-4 . . 1	JJY:023464020001	---

[1)] with restrictions for G120C FSAA, 2.2 kW. See below.

[1)] restrictions for G120C FSAA, 2.2 kW

Operation of the optional component is only permitted for operation of the inverter with the HO base load output = 1.5 kW.

Supplementary optional components for the inverter

In addition to the optional components offered by SIEMENS, supplementary components are also available from selected partners.

Further information is provided on the Internet:

Drive options partner (www.siemens.de/drives-options-partner)

3.5 Motors and multi-motor drives that can be operated

Siemens motors that can be operated

You can connect standard induction motors to the inverter.

You can find information on further motors on the Internet:

Motors that can be operated (https://support.industry.siemens.com/cs/ww/en/view/100426622)

Third-party motors that can be operated

You can operate standard asynchronous motors from other manufacturers with the inverter:

NOTICE
Insulation failure due to unsuitable third-party motor A higher load occurs on the motor insulation in inverter mode than with mains operation. Damage to the motor winding may occur as a result. • Please observed the notes in the System Manual "Requirements for third-party motors"

Further information is provided on the Internet:

Requirements for third-party motors (https://support.industry.siemens.com/cs/ww/en/view/79690594)

Multi-motor drive

A multi-motor drive involves simultaneously operating several motors from one inverter. For standard induction motors, multi-motor drives are permissible in installations that are compliant with IEC.

Further information is provided on the Internet:

Multi-motor drive (http://support.automation.siemens.com/WW/view/en/84049346)

Multi-motor drives are not permissible for installations that are compliant with UL.

Installing 4

4.1 EMC-compliant setup of the machine or plant

The inverter is designed for operation in industrial environments where strong electromagnetic fields are to be expected.

Reliable and disturbance-free operation is only guaranteed for EMC-compliant installation.

To achieve this, subdivide the control cabinet and the machine or system into EMC zones:

EMC zones

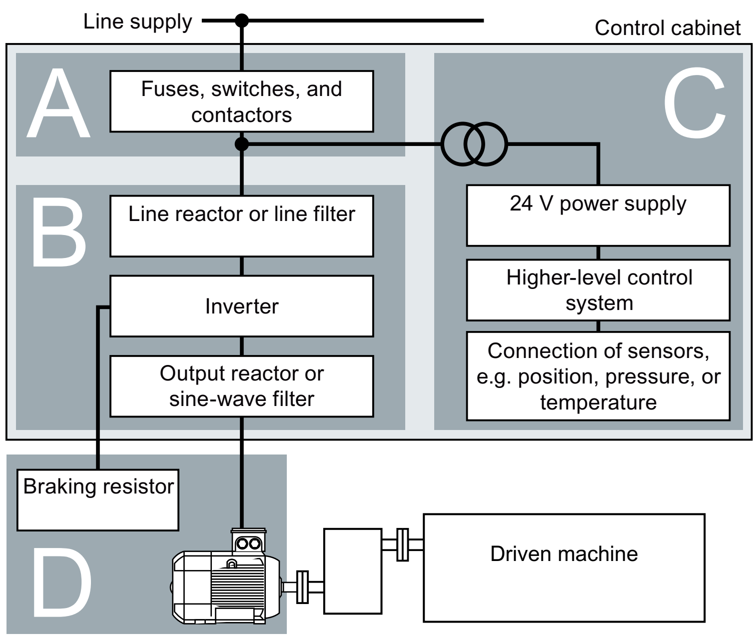


Figure 4-1 Example of the EMC zones of a plant or machine

Inside the control cabinet

- Zone A: Line supply connection
- Zone B: Power electronics
  Devices in Zone B generate energy-rich electromagnetic fields.
- Zone C: Control and sensors
  Devices in Zone C do not generate any energy-rich electromagnetic fields themselves, but their functions can be impaired by electromagnetic fields.

Outside the control cabinet

- Zone D: Motors, braking resistors
  Devices in Zone D generate electromagnetic fields with a significant amount of energy

4.1.1 Control cabinet

- Assign the various devices to zones in the control cabinet.
- Electromagnetically uncouple the zones from each other by means of one of the following actions:
  - Side clearance ≥ 25 cm
  - Separate metal enclosure
  - Large-area partition plates
- Route cables of various zones in separate cable harnesses or cable ducts.
- Install filters or isolation amplifiers at the interfaces of the zones.

Control cabinet assembly

- Connect the door, side panels, top and base plate of the control cabinet with the control cabinet frame using one of the following methods:
  - Electrical contact surface of several cm² for each contact location
  - Several screw connections
  - Short, finely stranded, braided copper wires with cross-sections ≥ 95 mm² / 000 (3/0) (-2) AWG
- Install a shield support for shielded cables that are routed out of the control cabinet.
- Connect the PE bar and the shield support to the control cabinet frame through a large surface area to establish a good electrical connection.
- Mount the control cabinet components on a bare metal mounting plate.
- Connect the mounting plate to the control cabinet frame and PE bar and shield support through a large surface area to establish a good electrical connection.
- For screw connections onto painted or anodized surfaces, establish a good conductive contact using one of the following methods:
  - Use special (serrated) contact washers that cut through the painted or anodized surface.
  - Remove the insulating coating at the contact locations.

Measures required for several control cabinets

- Install equipotential bonding for all control cabinets.
- Screw the frames of the control cabinets together at several locations through a large surface area using serrated washers to establish a good electrical connection.
- In plants and systems where the control cabinets are lined up next to one another, and which are installed in two groups back to back, connect the PE bars of the two cabinet groups at as many locations as possible.

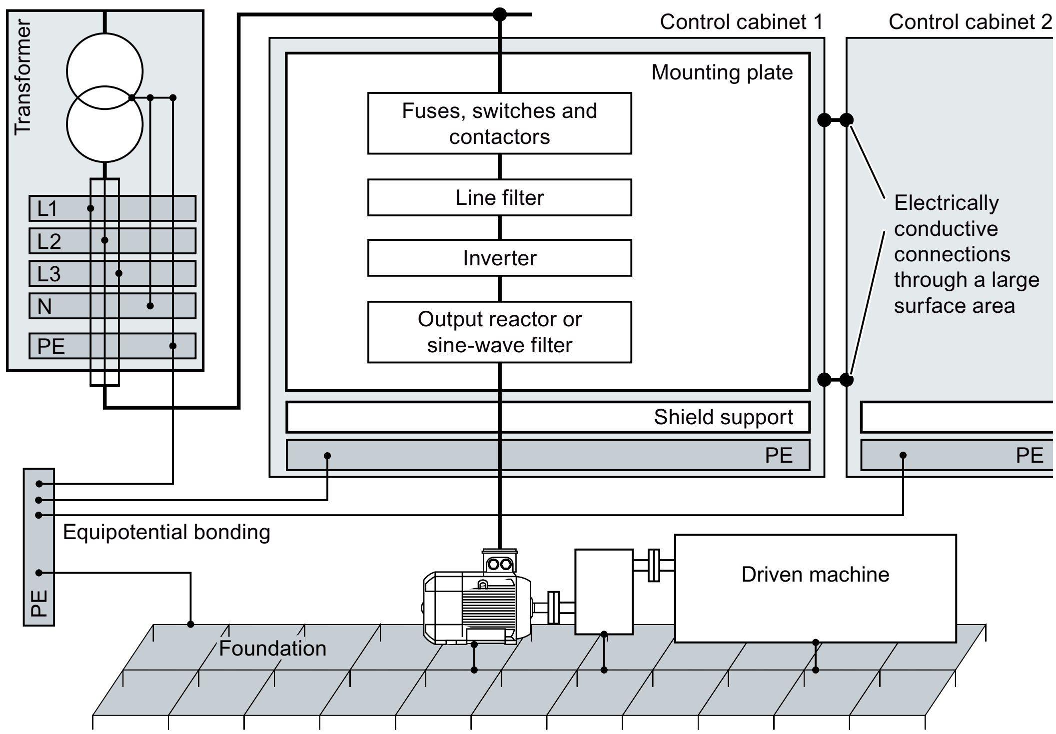


Figure 4-2 Grounding and high-frequency equipotential bonding measures in the control cabinet and in the plant/system

Further information

Additional information about EMC-compliant installation is available in the Internet:

EMC installation guideline (http://support.automation.siemens.com/WW/view/en/60612658)

4.1.2 Cables

Cables with a high level of interference and cables with a low level of interference are connected to the inverter:

- Cables with a high level of interference:
  - Cable between the line filter and inverter
  - Motor cable
  - Cable at the inverter DC link connection
  - Cable between the inverter and braking resistor
- Cables with a low level of interference:
  - Cable between the line and line filter
  - Signal and data cables

Cable routing inside the cabinet

- Route the power cables with a high level of interference so that there is a minimum clearance of 25 cm to cables with a low level of interference.
  If the minimum clearance of 25 cm is not possible, insert separating metal sheets between the cables with a high level of interference and cables with a low level of interference. Connect these separating metal sheets to the mounting plate to establish a good electrical connection.
- Cables with a high level of interference and cables with a low level of interference may only cross over at right angles:
- Keep all of the cables as short as possible.
- Route all of the cables close to the mounting plates or cabinet frames.
- Route signal and data cables - as well as the associated equipotential bonding cables - parallel and close to one another.
- Twist incoming and outgoing unshielded individual conductors.
  Alternatively, you can route incoming and outgoing conductors in parallel, but close to one another.
- Ground any unused conductors of signal and data cables at both ends.
- Signal and data cables must only enter the cabinet from one side, e.g. from below.
- Using shielded cables for the following connections:
  - Cable between the inverter and line filter
  - Cable between the inverter and output reactor or sine-wave filter

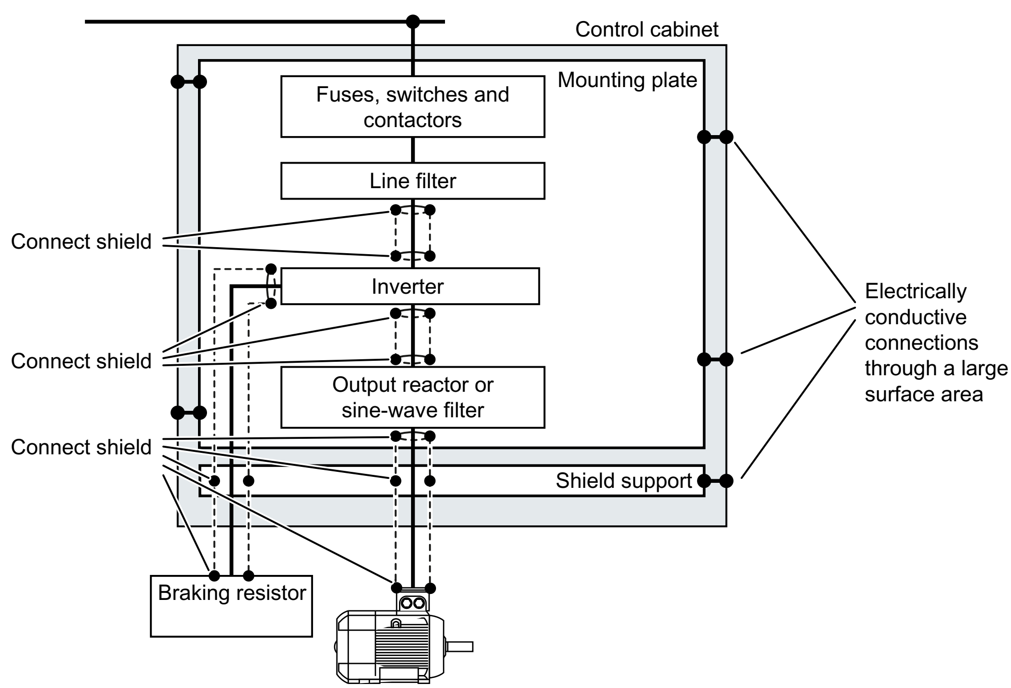


Figure 4-3 Routing inverter cables inside and outside a control cabinet

Routing cables outside the control cabinet

- Maintain a minimum clearance of 25 cm between cables with a high level of interference and cables with a low level of interference.
- Using shielded cables for the following connections:
  - Inverter motor cable
  - Cable between the inverter and braking resistor
  - Signal and data cables
- Connect the motor cable shield to the motor enclosure using a PG gland that establishes a good electrical connection.

Requirements relating to shielded cables

- Use cables with finely-stranded, braided shields.
- Connect the shield to at least one end of the cable.

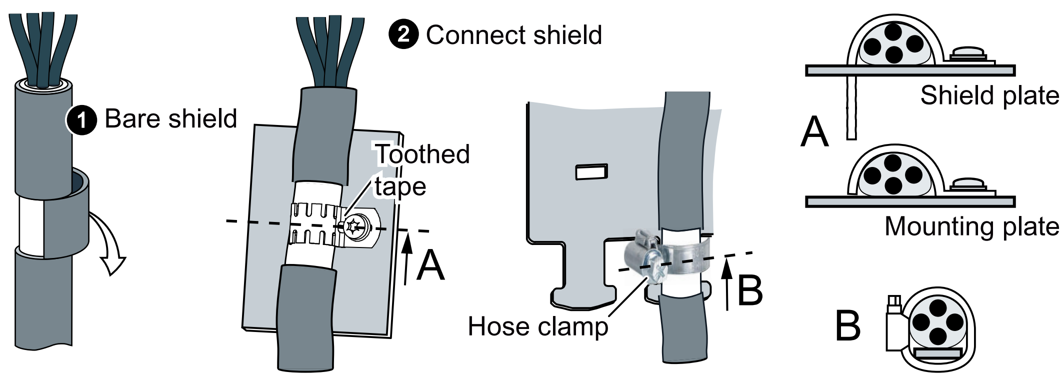


Figure 4-4 Examples for EMC-compliant shield support

- Attach the shield to the shield support directly after the cable enters the cabinet.
- Do not interrupt the shield.
- Only use metallic or metallized plug connectors for shielded data cables.

4.1.3 Electromechanical components

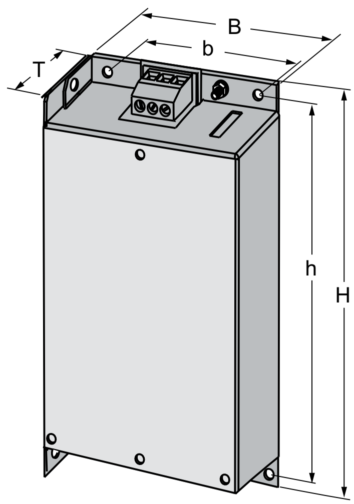
Surge voltage protection circuit

- Connect surge voltage protection circuits to the following components:
  - Coils of contactors
  - Relays
  - Solenoid valves
  - Motor holding brakes
- Connect the surge voltage protection circuit directly at the coil.
- Use RC elements or varistors for AC-operated coils and freewheeling diodes or varistors for DC-operated coils.

4.2 Mounting base components

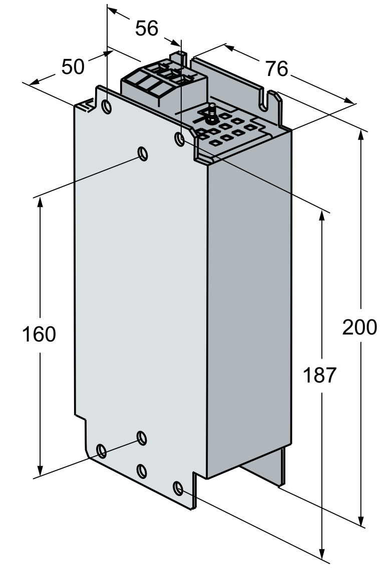
Dimensions and mounting

All dimensions in mm

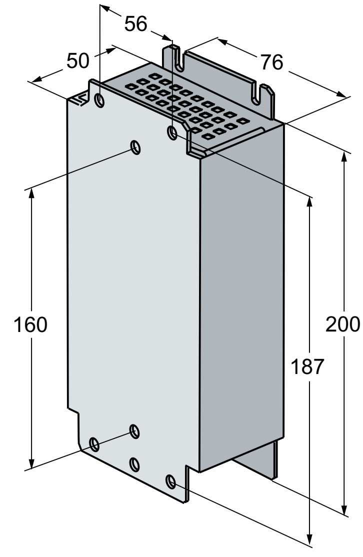


	FSAA, FSA	FSB	FSC
B	73	100	140
b	62.3	80	120
H	202	297	359
h	186	281	343
T	65	85	95

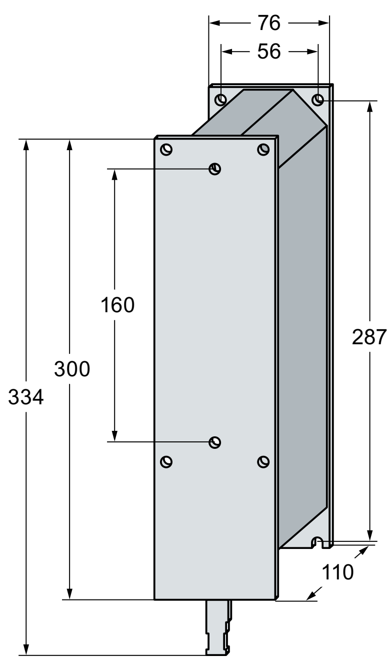
Figure 4-5 Line filter



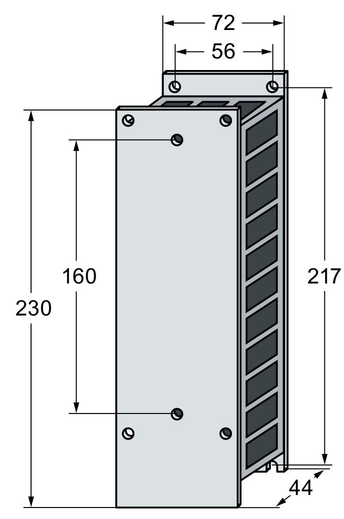
Line reactor



Output reactor



Sine-wave filter



Braking resistor

Mounting of the base components:

- 4 × M4 screws
- 4 × M4 nuts
- 4 × M4 washers

Tightening torque: 5 Nm

Mounting frame size FSAA on a base component

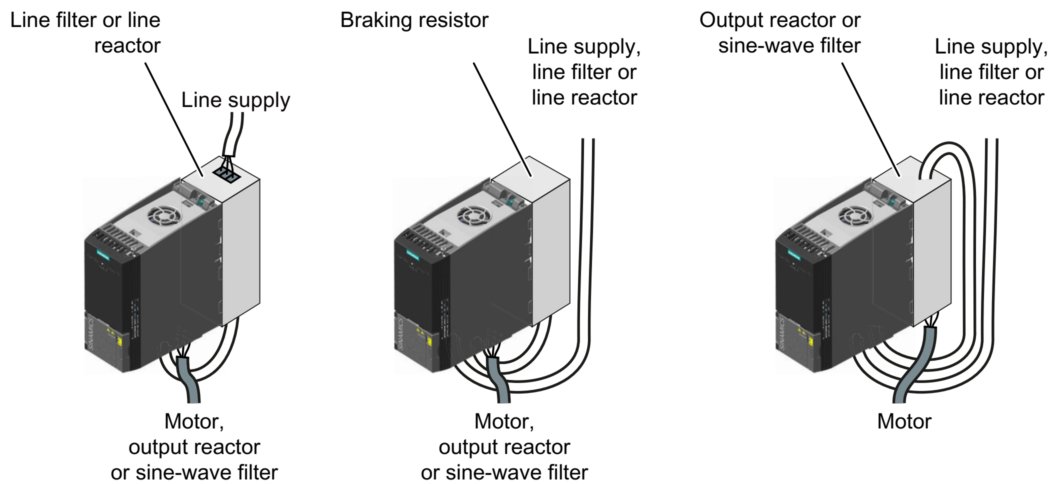


Figure 4-6 Available base components

Reactors, filters and braking resistors are available as base components for inverters, frame size FSAA.

Mount the inverter using two M4 screws on the base component.

Mounting frame size FSAA on two base components

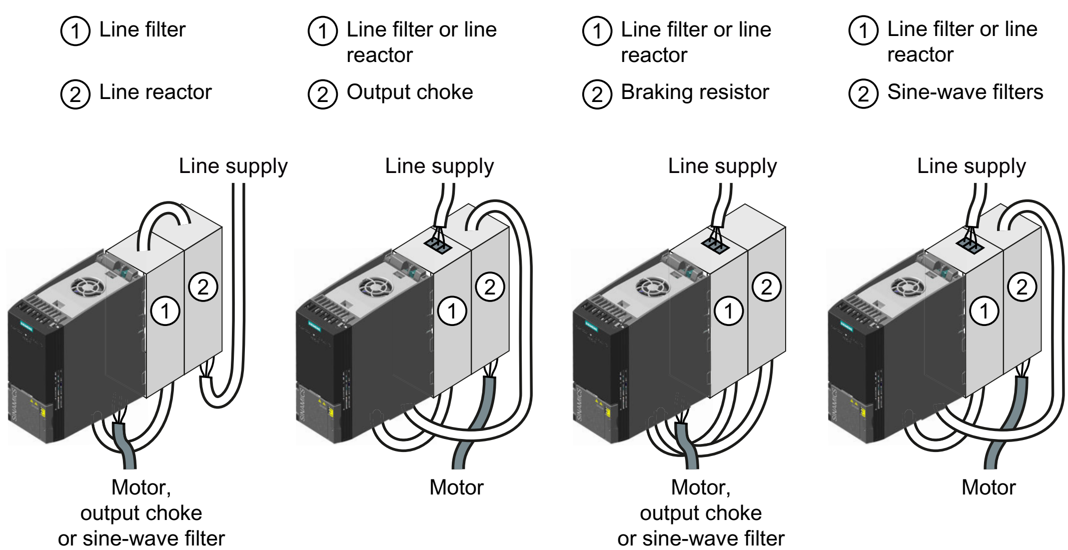
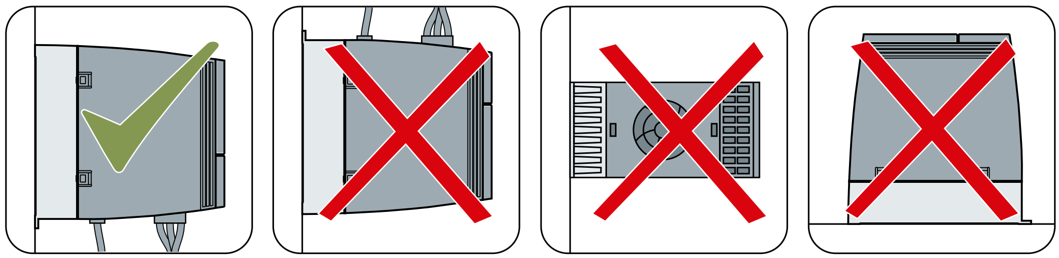


Figure 4-7 Permissible combinations of base components

You can combine two base components.

4.3 Installing the inverter

Mounting position



Only the wall-mounted option with network connection at the bottom is permissible.

Protection against the spread of fire

The device may be operated only in closed housings or in control cabinets with protective covers that are closed, and when all of the protective devices are used. The installation of the device in a metal control cabinet or the protection with another equivalent measure must prevent the spread of fire and emissions outside the control cabinet.

Protection against condensation or electrically conductive contamination

Protect the device, e.g. by installing it in a control cabinet with degree of protection IP54 according to IEC 60529 or NEMA 12. Further measures may be necessary for particularly critical operating conditions.

If condensation or conductive pollution can be excluded at the installation site, a lower degree of control cabinet protection may be permitted.

Dimensions

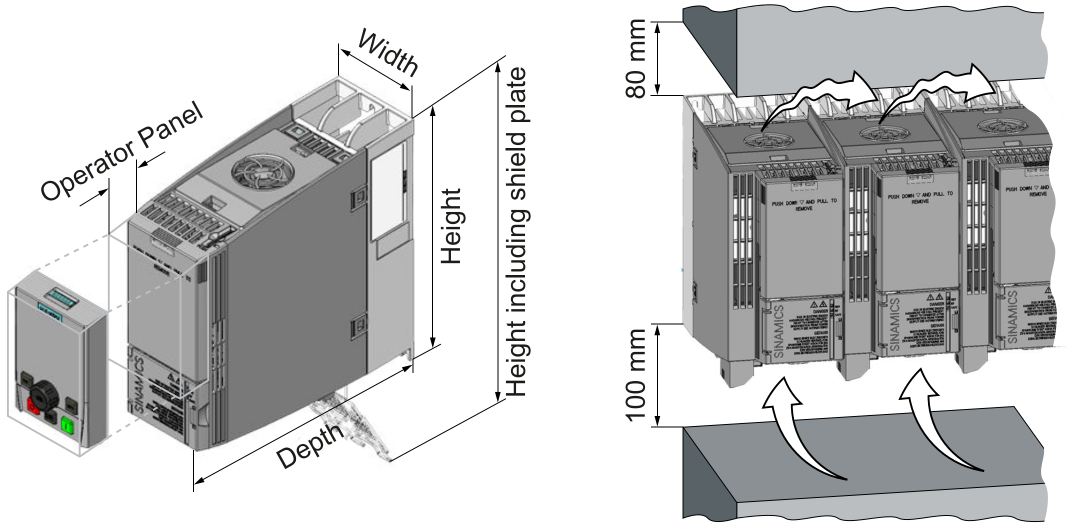


Figure 4-8 Dimensions and minimum spacing to other devices, FSAA ... FSC

Table 4-1 Dimensions, FSAA … FSC

	Frame size AA 0.55 kW … 2.2 kW	Frame size A 3.0 kW … 4.0 kW	Frame size B 5.5 kW … 7.5 kW	Frame size C 11 kW … 18.5 kW
Height	181 mm	196 mm	196 mm	295 mm
Height including shield plate	268 mm	276 mm	276 mm	375 mm
Width	73 mm	73 mm	100 mm	140 mm
Depth of the inverter with PROFINET interface	178 mm	226 mm	226 mm	226 mm
Depth of the inverter with USS/MB or PROFIBUS interface	155 mm	203 mm	203 mm	203 mm
Additional depth with operator panel attached	+ 11 mm with inserted BOP-2 (Basic Operator Panel) or IOP-2 (Intelligent Operator Panel)			

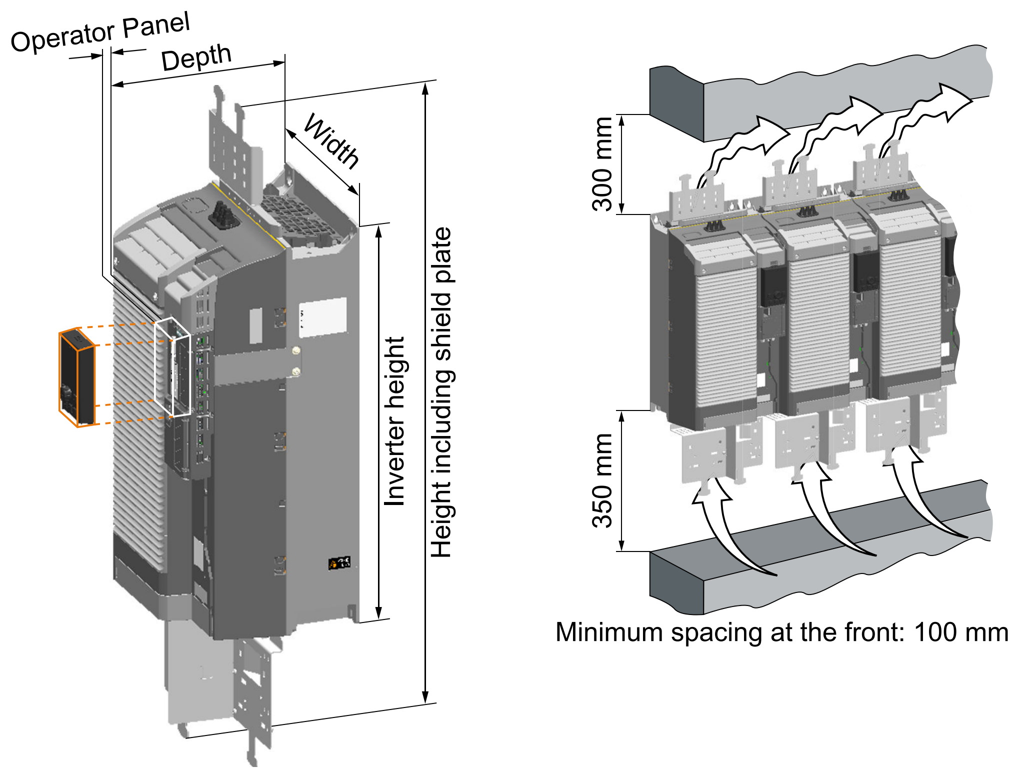


Figure 4-9 Dimensions and minimum spacing to other devices, FSD … FSF

Table 4-2 Dimensions, FSD … FSF

	Frame size D 22 kW … 45 kW	Frame size E 55 kW	Frame size F 75 kW … 132 kW
Inverter height	472 mm	551 mm	708 mm
Height including shield plate	708 mm	850 mm	1107 mm
Height of the lower shield plate	152 mm	177 mm	257 mm
Height of the upper shield plate [1)]	84 mm	123 mm	142 mm
Width	200 mm	275 mm	305 mm
Depth	237 mm	237 mm	357 mm
Additional depth with operator panel (OP) attached	+ 11 mm with inserted BOP-2 (Basic Operator Panel) or IOP-2 (Intelligent Operator Panel)		

1) The upper shield plate is optionally available:

Mounting the shield plates, FSAA … FSC

We recommend that you mount the shield plates provided. The shield plates make it simpler to install the inverter in compliance with EMC regulations and to provide strength relief for the connected cables.

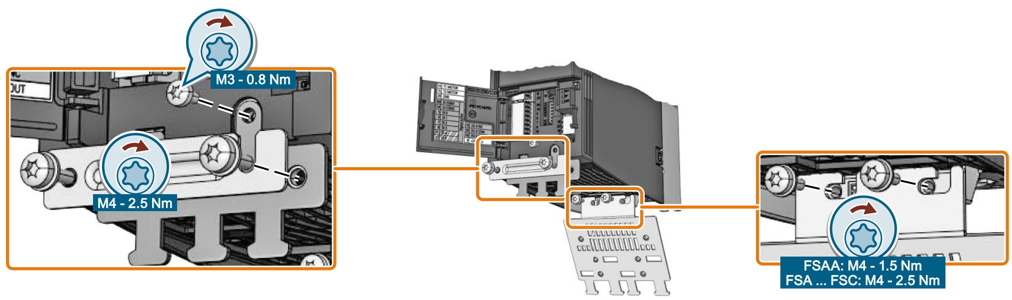


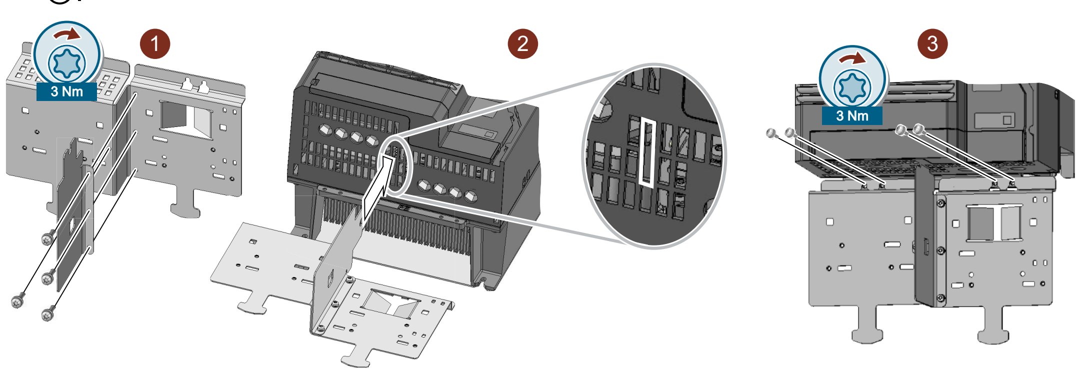
Figure 4-10 Mounting the shield plates, FSAA … FSC

Mounting the shield plate and EMC connecting bracket, FSD … FSF

Procedure, FSD and FSE

Proceed as follows to mount the EMC connecting bracket and the shield plate:

1. If you are using an inverter with an integrated line filter, then mount the EMC connecting bracket on the shield plate ①.
   On inverters without a filter, the EMC connecting bracket is not included in the scope of supply of the inverter.
2. Then slide the shield module into the inverter, so that it is held in the inverter ② by the clamping spring. The shield module is located correctly if it can be easily withdrawn from the inverter without any resistance.
3. After you have ensured that it is correctly located, fix the shield module using the four screws ③.

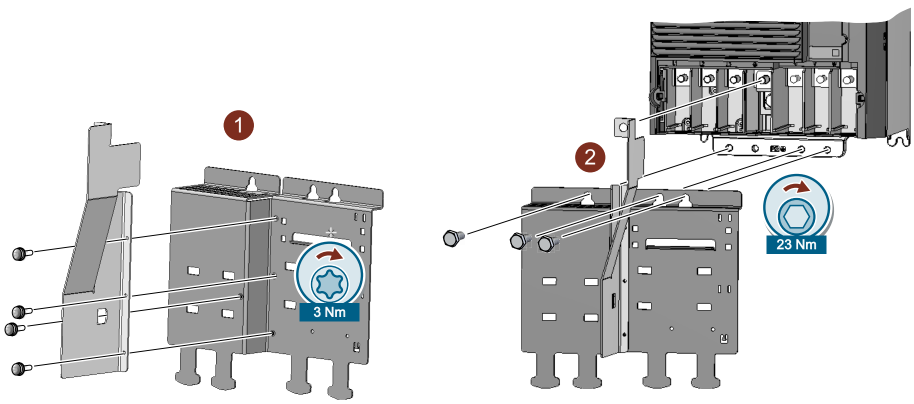


You have mounted the EMC connecting bracket and the shield plate.

Procedure, FSF:

Proceed as follows to mount the EMC connecting bracket and the shield plate:

1. If you are using an inverter with an integrated line filter, then mount the EMC connecting bracket on the shield plate ①.
   On inverters without a filter, the EMC connecting bracket is not included in the scope of supply of the inverter.
2. Screw the shield module to the inverter ② using three screws, as shown in the figure.



You have mounted the EMC connecting bracket and the shield plate.

Mounting on a control cabinet panel

Table 4-3 Drilling patterns and mounting equipment, FSAA … FSC

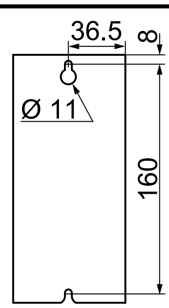
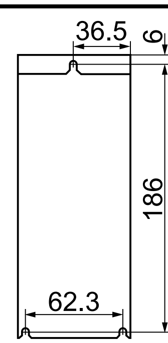
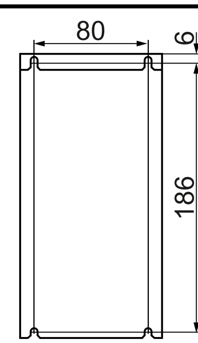
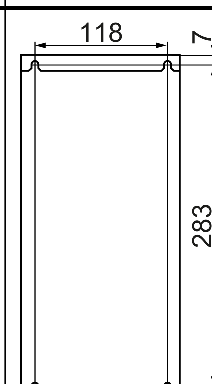
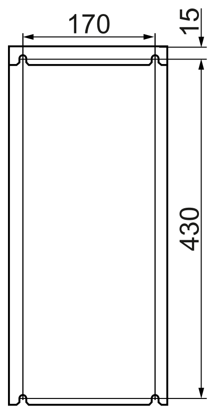
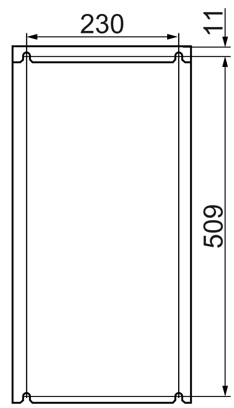
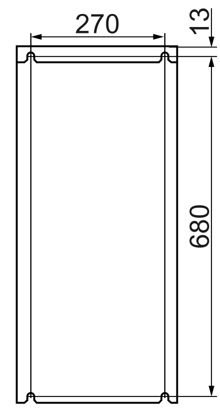
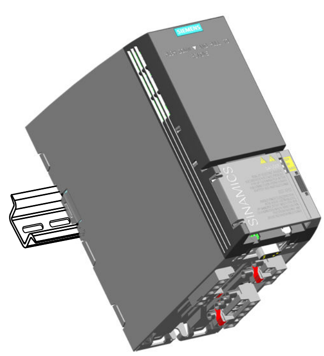
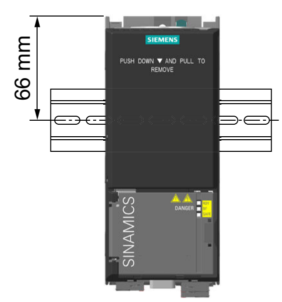
	Frame size AA **0.55 kW … 2.2 kW**	**Frame size A** **3.0 kW … 4.0 kW**	**Frame size B** **5.5 kW … 7.5 kW**	**Frame size C** **11 kW … 18.5 kW**
Drilling pattern	 Drilling pattern without shield plate When the shield plate is mounted, the drilling pattern is compatible to frame size A			
Mounting parts	2 × M4 bolts 2 × M4 nuts 2 × M4 washers	3 × M4 bolts 3 × M4 nuts 3 × M4 washers	4 × M4 bolts 4 × M4 nuts 4 × M4 washers	4 x M5 bolts 4 x M5 nuts 4 x M5 washers
Locked-rotor (starting) torque	2.5 Nm	2.5 Nm	2.5 Nm	2.5 Nm

Table 4-4 Drilling templates and mounting equipment, FSD … FSF

	Frame size D **22 kW … 45 kW**	**Frame size E** **55 kW**	**Frame size F** **75 kW … 132 kW**
Drilling pattern			
Mounting parts	4 x M5 bolts 4 x M5 nuts 4 x M5 washers	4 x M6 bolts 4 x M6 nuts 4 x M6 washers	4 x M8 bolts 4 x M8 nuts 4 x M8 washers
Locked-rotor (starting) torque	6 Nm	10 Nm	25 Nm

Mounting on a standard mounting rail (TS 35)





You can mount inverters, frame size FSAA on a TS 35 standard mounting rail.

Procedure

Proceed as follows to mount the inverter on a mounting rail:

1. Mount the inverter on the top edge of the mounting rail.
2. Using a screwdriver, actuate the release button on the upper side of the inverter.
3. Continue to actuate the release button until the inverter audibly snaps onto the mounting rail.

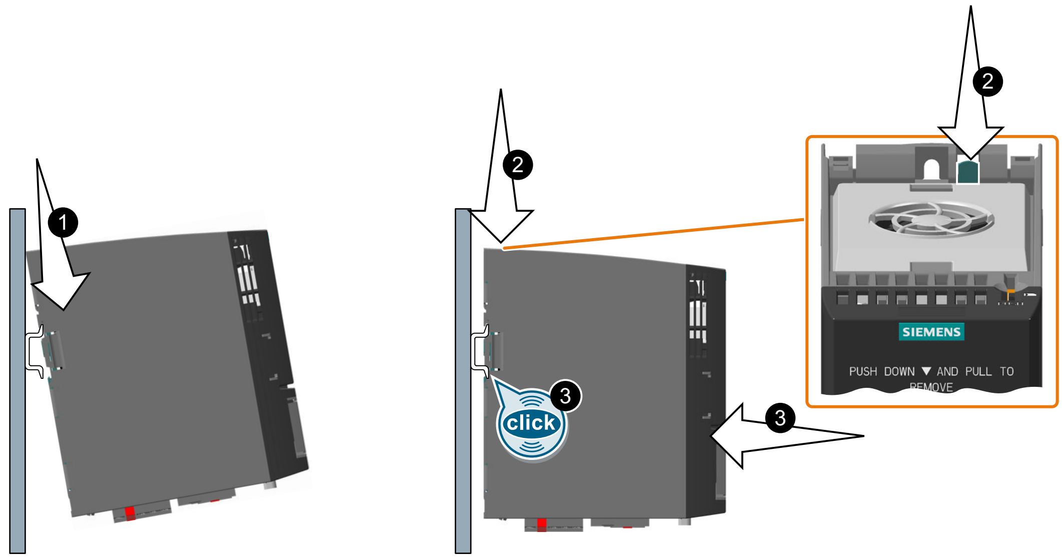


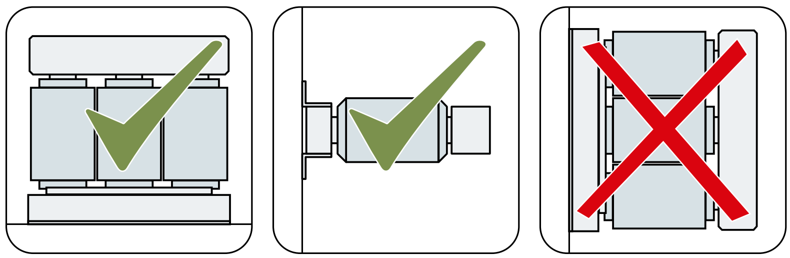
Figure 4-11 Mounting on a standard mounting rail

☐ You have mounted the inverter on a mounting rail.

To remove, actuate the release button and at the same time withdraw the inverter from the mounting rail.

4.4 Mounting the line reactor

Mounting position



Clearances to other devices

Keep shaded areas free of any devices and components.

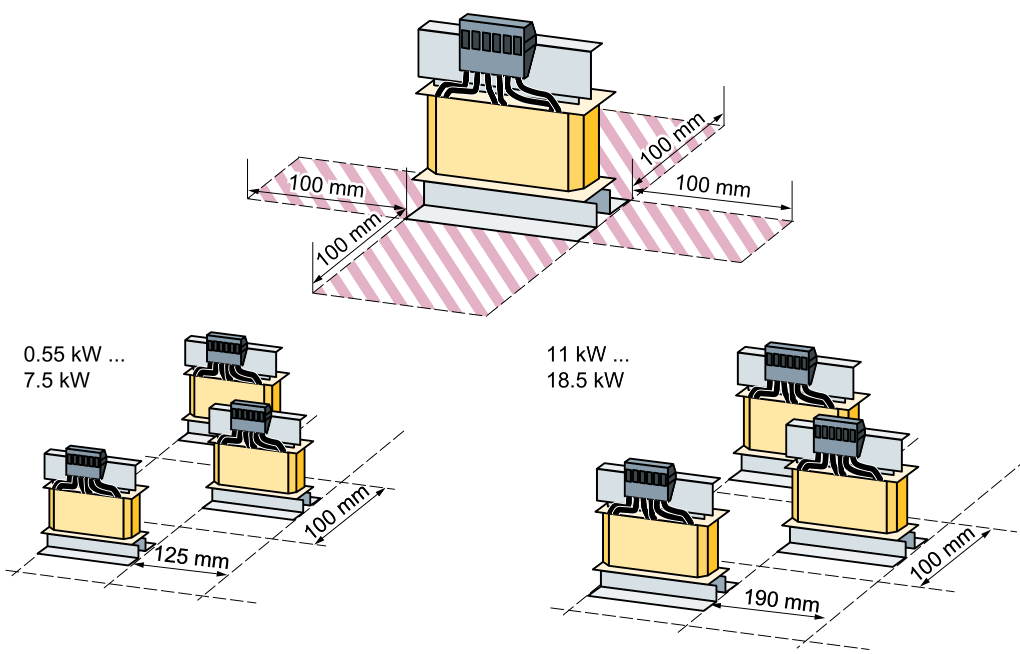
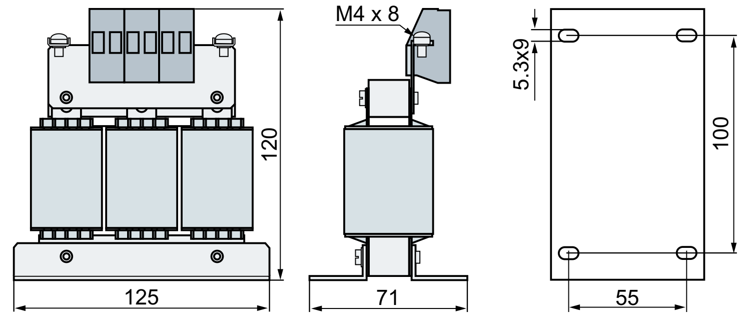
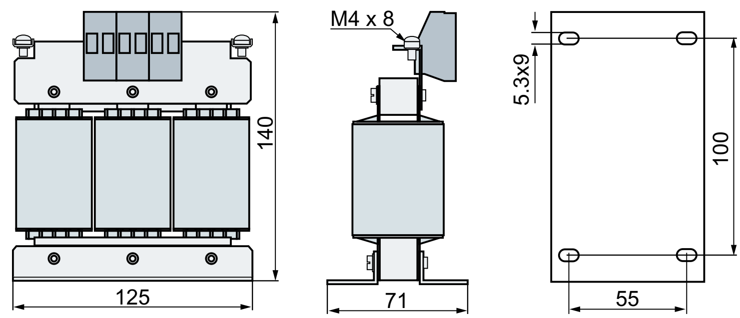
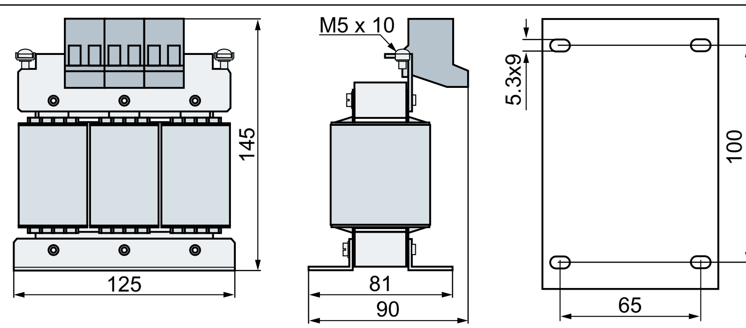
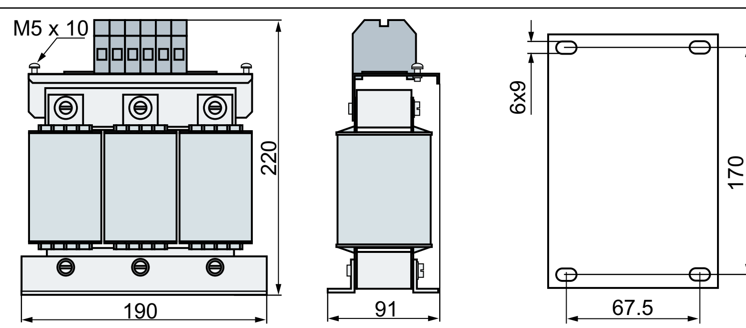


Figure 4-12 Clearances between the line reactors and other devices, examples for space-saving installation

Dimensions [mm] and drilling patterns

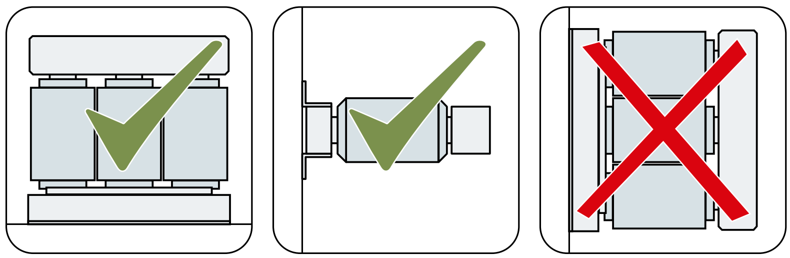
<table>
<tr><td>Article number
6SL3203-0CE13-2AA0</td><td>
</td></tr>
<tr><td>Article number
6SL3203-0CE21-0AA0</td><td>
</td></tr>
<tr><td>Article number
6SL3203-0CE21-8AA0</td><td>
</td></tr>
<tr><td>Article number
6SL3203-0CE23-8AA0</td><td>
</td></tr>
</table>

Mount the line reactor using M5 screws, nuts and washers. Tightening torque: 6 Nm

Assignment of line reactor to inverter:
Optional components (Page 36)

4.5 Mounting the output reactor

Mounting position



Clearances to other devices

Keep shaded areas free of any devices and components.

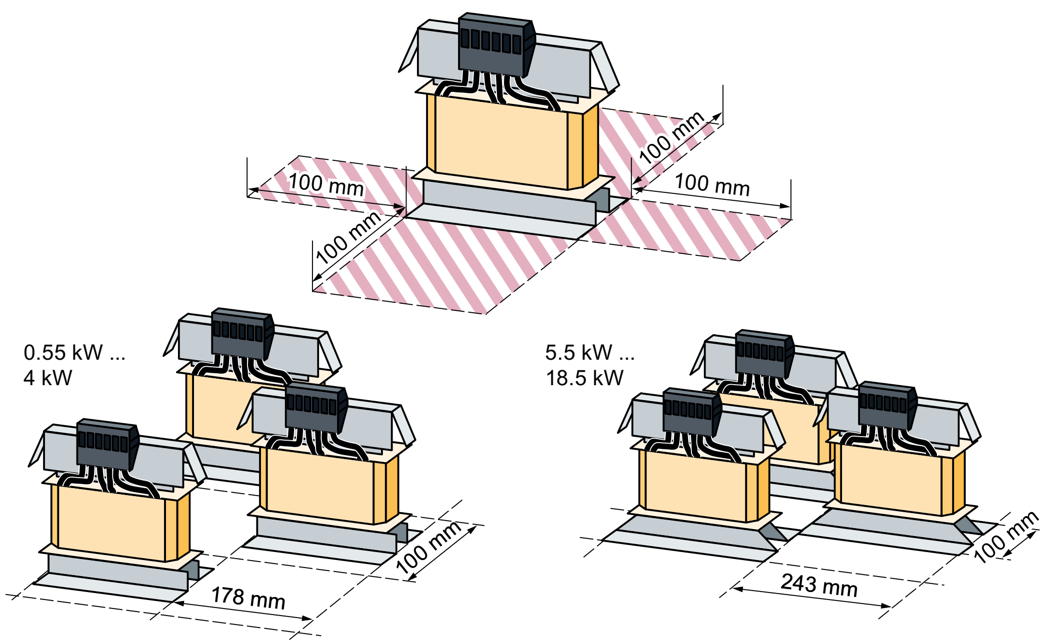
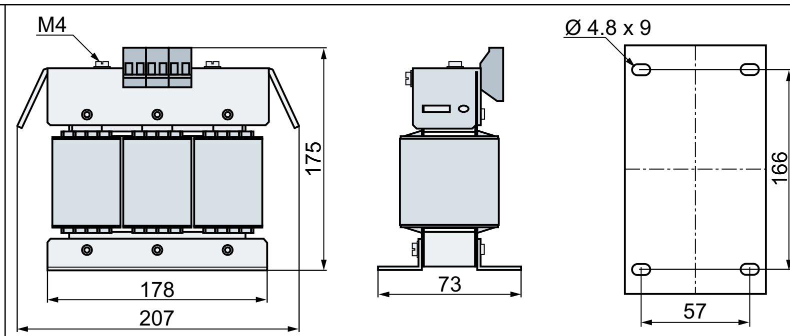
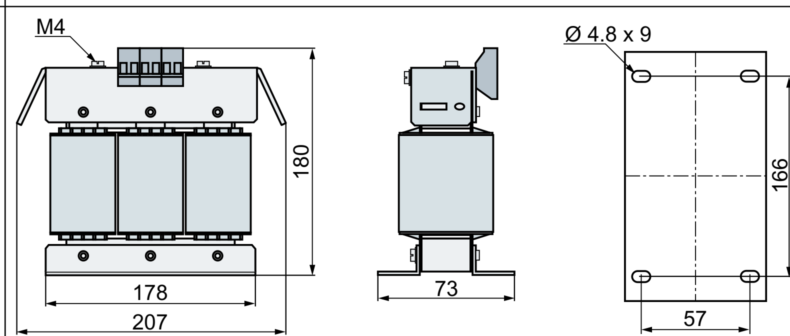
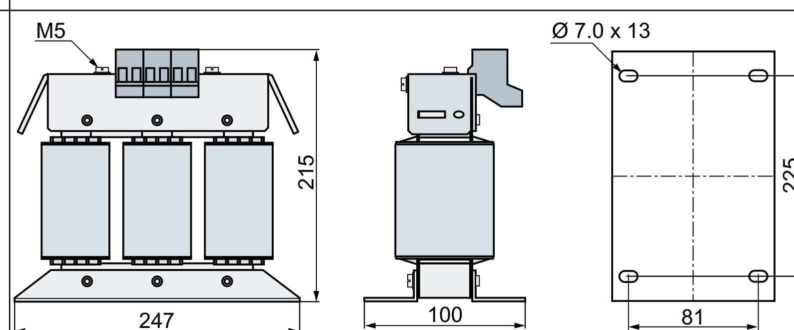
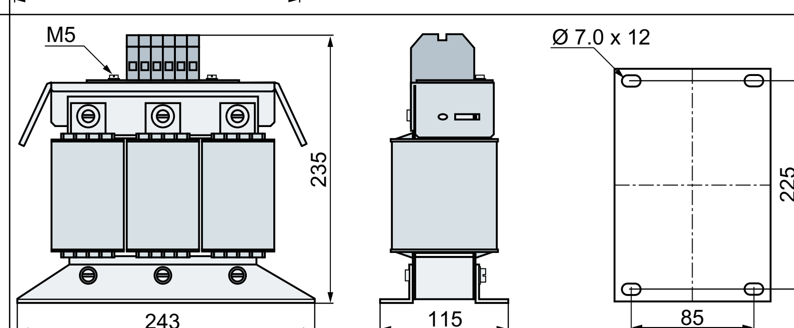
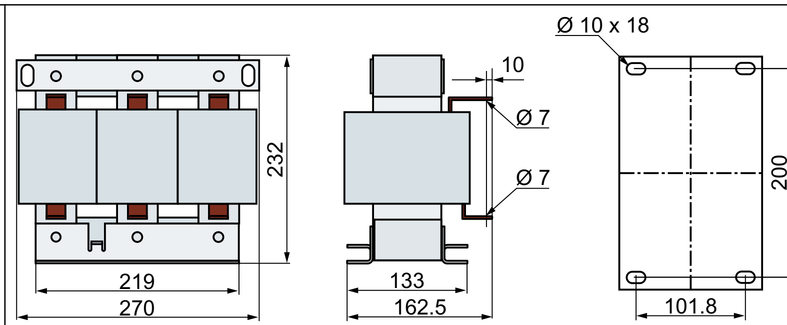
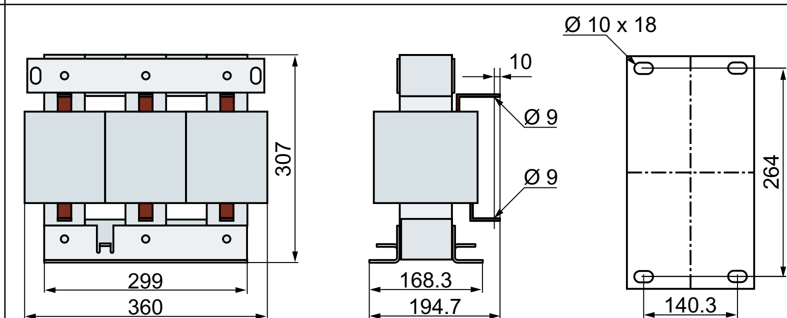
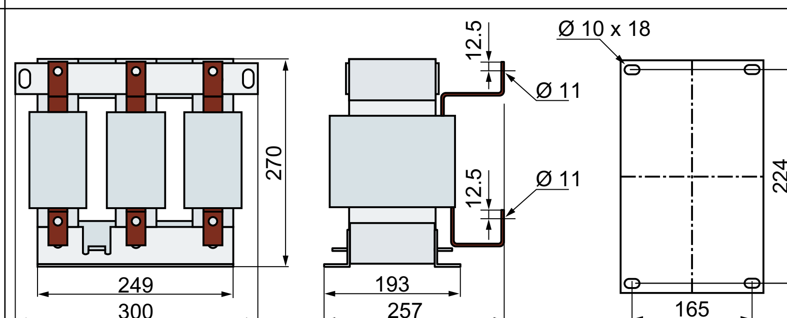
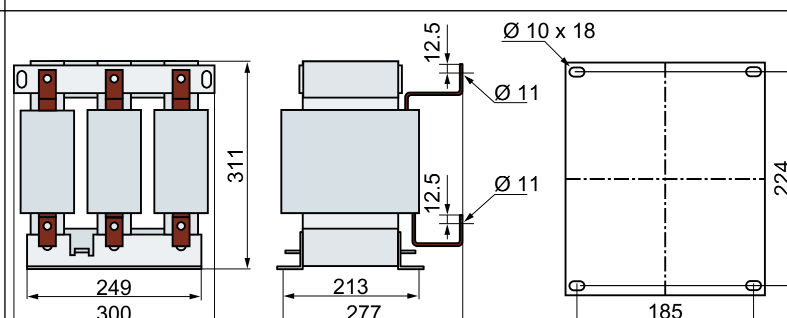


Figure 4-13 Minimum clearances of the output reactor to other devices, space-saving mounting examples

Dimensions [mm] and drilling patterns

Article number 6SL3202-0AE16-1CA0 Installation: M4 screws, nuts and washers. Tightening torque: 3 Nm	
Article number 6SL3202-0AE18-8CA0 Installation: M4 screws, nuts and washers. Tightening torque: 3 Nm	
Article number 6SL3202-0AE21-8CA0 Installation: M5 screws, nuts and washers. Tightening torque: 6 Nm	
Article number 6SL3202-0AE23-8CA0 Installation: M5 screws, nuts and washers. Tightening torque: 6 Nm	

Article number 6SE6400-3TC07-5DE0 Installation: M8 screws, nuts and washers. Tightening torque: 25 Nm	
Article number 6SE6400-3TC14-5FD0 Installation: M8 screws, nuts and washers. Tightening torque: 25 Nm	
Article number 6SL3000-2BE32-1AA0 Installation: M8 screws, nuts and washers. Tightening torque: 25 Nm	
Article number 6SL3000-2BE32-6AA0 Installation: M8 screws, nuts and washers. Tightening torque: 25 Nm	

Assignment of output reactor to inverter:

Optional components (Page 36)

4.6 Mount dU/dt filter plus Voltage Peak Limiter

Dimensions [mm] and drilling patterns

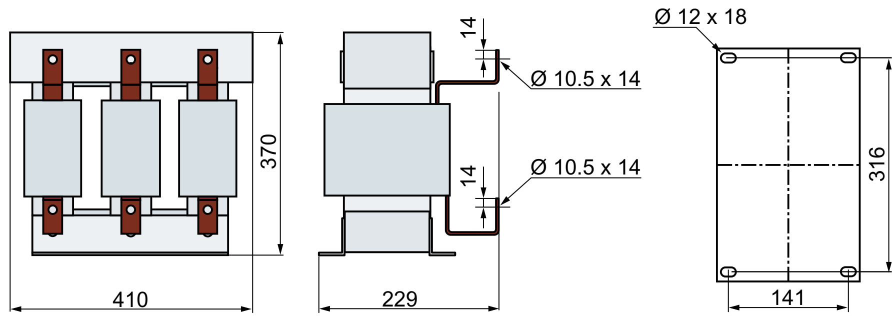


Figure 4-14 dU/dt filter

Mounting: M10 screws, nuts and washers.

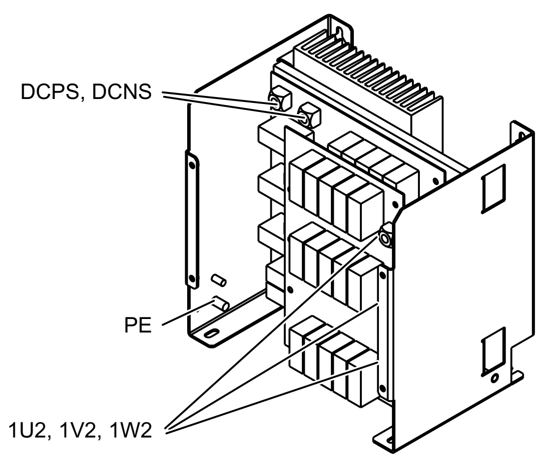


Figure 4-15 Overview of the Voltage Peak Limiter

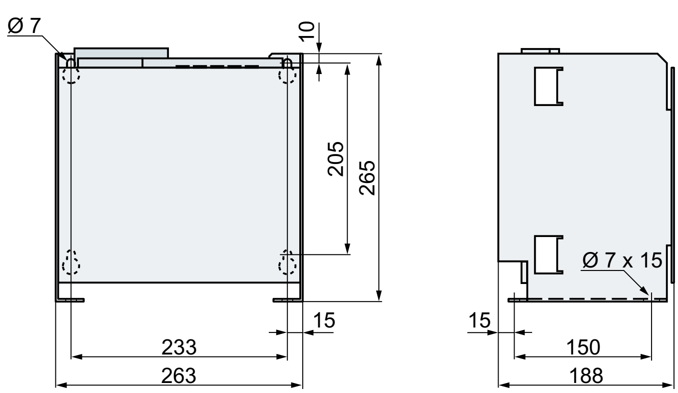
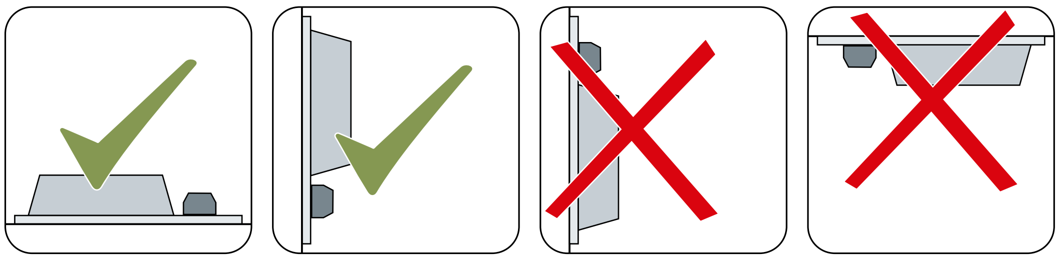


Figure 4-16 Voltage Peak Limiter

Mounting: M6- screws, nuts and washers.

4.7 Mounting the braking resistor

Mounting position



⚠ CAUTION

Risk of burns due to touching hot surfaces

During operation and for a short time after the inverter shuts down, the surface of the device can reach a high temperature. Touching the surface of the inverter can cause burns.

- Do not touch the device during operation.
- After shutting down the inverter, wait for the device to cool down before touching it.

Clearances to other devices

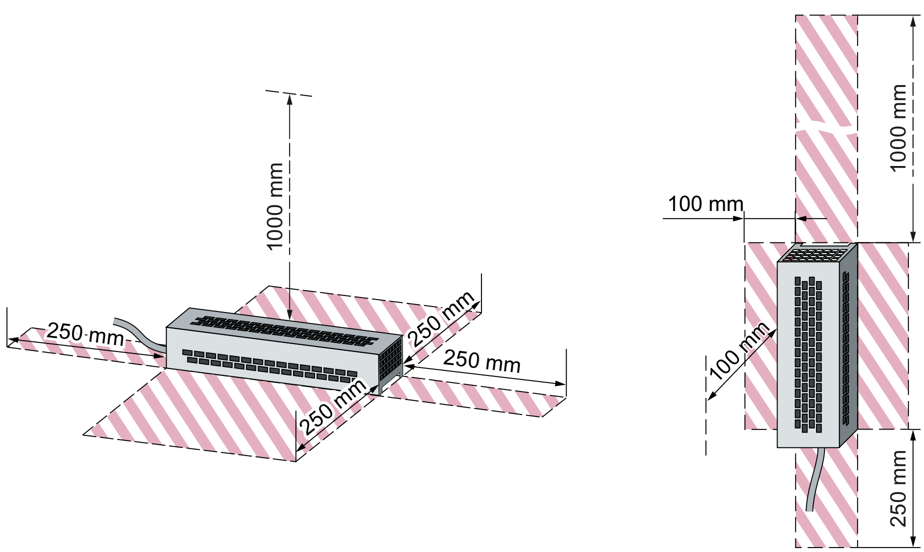


Figure 4-17 Minimum clearances for the braking resistor when mounting on the floor or a wall

Keep shaded areas free of any devices and components.

Mounting instructions

Mount the resistor on a heat-resistant, level surface with a high thermal conductivity.

Do not cover the ventilation openings of the braking resistor.

Dimensions and drilling patterns

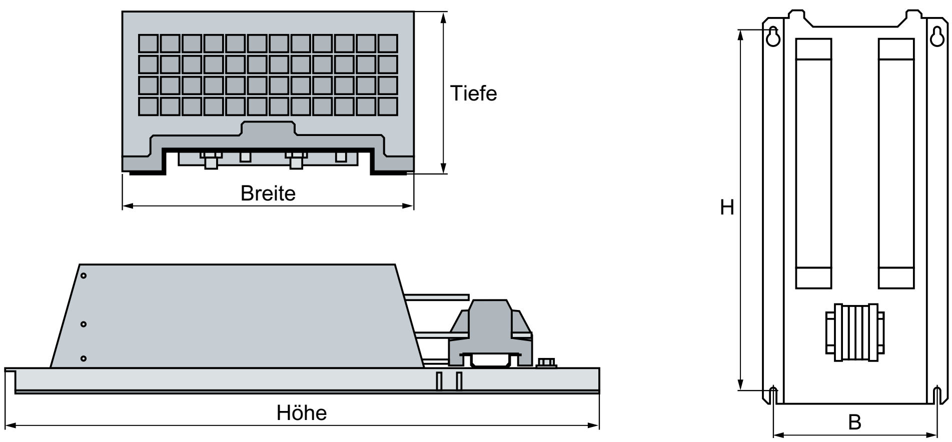


Figure 4-18 Dimensions of the braking resistor

Table 4-5 Dimensions [mm]

Article number	Total dimensions			Drilling dimensions		
	Width	Height	Depth	W	H	Fixing
6SL3201-0BE14-3AA0	105	295	100	72	266	M4 / 3 Nm
6SL3201-0BE21-0AA0	105	345	100	72	316	M4 / 3 Nm
6SL3201-0BE21-8AA0	175	345	100	142	316	M4 / 3 Nm
6SL3201-0BE23-8AA0	250	490	140	217	460	M5 / 6 Nm
JJY:023422620001	220	470	180	187	430	M5 / 6 Nm
JJY:023424020001	220	610	180	187	570	M5 / 6 Nm
JJY:023434020001	350	630	180	317	570	M5 / 6 Nm
JJY:023454020001 [1)] JJY:023422620001 || JJY:023434020001	220 350	470 630	180 180	187 317	430 570	M5 / 6 Nm M5 / 6 Nm
JJY:023464020001 [1)] JJY:023434020001 || JJY:023434020001	350 350	630 630	180 180	317 317	570 570	M5 / 6 Nm M5 / 6 Nm

Mount the braking resistor using screws, nuts and washers.

[1)] The article number contains two braking resistors, which must be switched in parallel

Assignment of braking resistor to inverter:

Optional components (Page 36)

4.8 Connect the line supply, motor and braking resistor

4.8.1 Permissible line supplies

The converter is designed for the following line supplies according to IEC 60364-1 (2005).

- TN system
- TT system
- IT system

General requirements on line supply

The plant builder or machine manufacturer must ensure for operation with rated current I_{rated} that the voltage drop between the transformer input terminals and the inverter when operated with its rated values is less than 4% of the transformer rated current

Restrictions for installation altitudes above 2000 m

Above an installation altitude of 2000 m, the permissible line supplies are restricted.

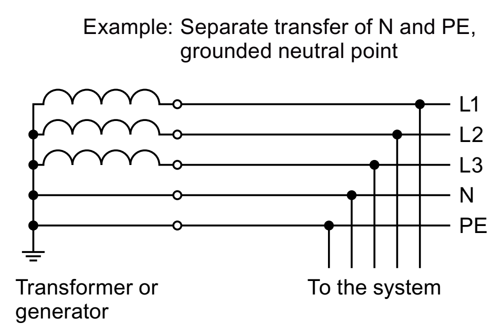
Restrictions for special ambient conditions (Page 414)

4.8.1.1 TN line system ((400-V-Umrichter))

A TN system transfers the PE protective earth to the installed plant or system via a conductor.

Generally, in a TN line system the neutral point is grounded. There are versions of a TN system with a grounded line conductor, e.g. with grounded L1.

A TN line system can transfer the neutral conductor N and the PE protective conductor either separately or combined.



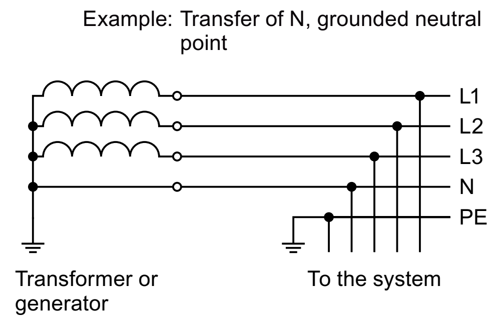
Inverter operated on a TN line system

- Inverter with integrated or external line filter:
  - Operation on TN line systems with grounded neutral point permissible.
  - Operation on TN line systems with grounded line conductor not permissible.
- Inverter without line filter:
  - Operation permissible on all TN line systems.

4.8.1.2 TT line system

In a TT line system, the transformer grounding and the installation grounding are independent of one another.

There are TT line supplies where the neutral conductor N is either transferred – or not.



Inverter operated on a TT line system

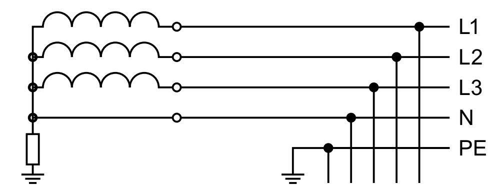
- Inverter with integrated or external line filter:
  - Operation on TT line systems with grounded neutral point permissible.
  - Operation on TT line systems without grounded neutral point not permissible.
- Inverter without line filter:
  - Operation on all TT line systems permissible.
- For installations in compliance with IEC, operation on a TT line system is permissible. For installations in compliance with UL, operation on a TT line system is not permissible.

4.8.1.3 IT system

In an IT line system, all of the conductors are insulated with respect to the PE protective conductor – or connected to the PE protective conductor through an impedance.

There are IT systems with and without transfer of the neutral conductor N.

Example: Transfer of N, impedance with respect to PE protective conductor



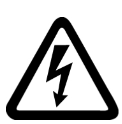
Inverter operated on an IT line system

- Inverters with integrated line filter:
  - Operation on IT line systems not permissible.
- Inverter without line filter:
  - Operation on all IT line systems permissible.

Behavior of the inverter when a ground fault occurs

In some instances, even for a ground fault, the inverter should still remain functional. In cases such as these, you must install an output reactor. This prevents an overcurrent trip or damage to the drive.

4.8.2 Protective conductor



WARNING

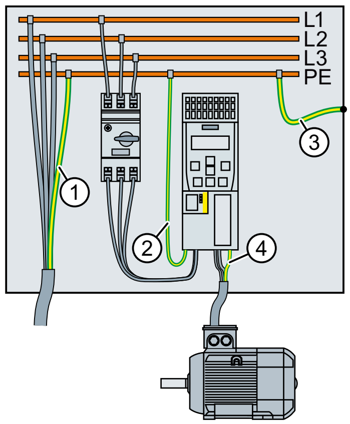
Electric shock due to interrupted protective conductor

The drive components conduct a high leakage current via the protective conductor. Touching conductive parts when the protective conductor is interrupted can result in death or serious injury.

- Dimension the protective conductor as stipulated in the appropriate regulations.

Dimensioning the protective conductor

Observe the local regulations for protective conductors subject to an increased leakage current at the site of operation.



① Protective conductor for line feeder cables

② Protective conductor for inverter line feeder cables

③ Protective conductor between PE and the control cabinet

④ Protective conductor for motor feeder cables

The minimum cross-section of the protective conductor ① … ④ depends on the cross-section of the line or motor feeder cable:

- Line or motor feeder cable ≤ 16 mm^2
  ⇒ Minimum cross-section of the protective conductor = cross-section of the line or motor feeder cable
- 16 mm^2 < line or motor feeder cable ≤ 35 mm^2
  ⇒ Minimum cross-section of the protective conductor = 16 mm^2
- Line or motor feeder cable > 35 mm^2
  ⇒ Minimum cross-section of the protective conductor = ½ cross-section of the line or motor feeder cable

Additional requirements placed on the protective conductor ①:

- For permanent connection, the protective conductor must fulfill at least one of the following conditions:
  - The protective conductor is routed so that it is protected against damage along its complete length.
    Cables routed inside switch cabinets or enclosed machine housings are considered to be adequately protected against mechanical damage.
  - As a conductor of a multi-conductor cable, the protective conductor has a cross-section ≥ 2.5 mm^2 Cu.
  - For an individual conductor, the protective conductor has a cross-section ≥ 10 mm^2 Cu.
  - The protective conductor consists of two individual conductors with the same cross-section.
- When connecting a multi-core cable using an industrial plug connector according to EN 60309, the protective conductor must have a cross-section of ≥ 2.5 mm^2 Cu.

4.8.3 Connecting the inverter and inverter components to the supply

Overview

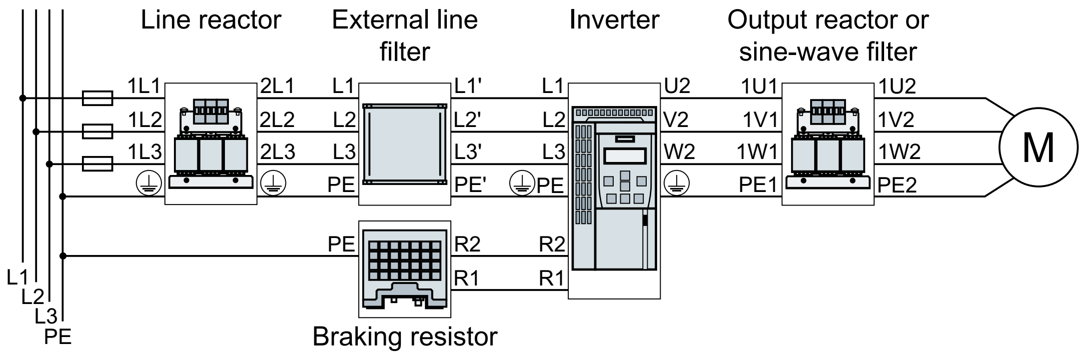


Figure 4-19 Connecting inverters FSAA … FSC and their optional components

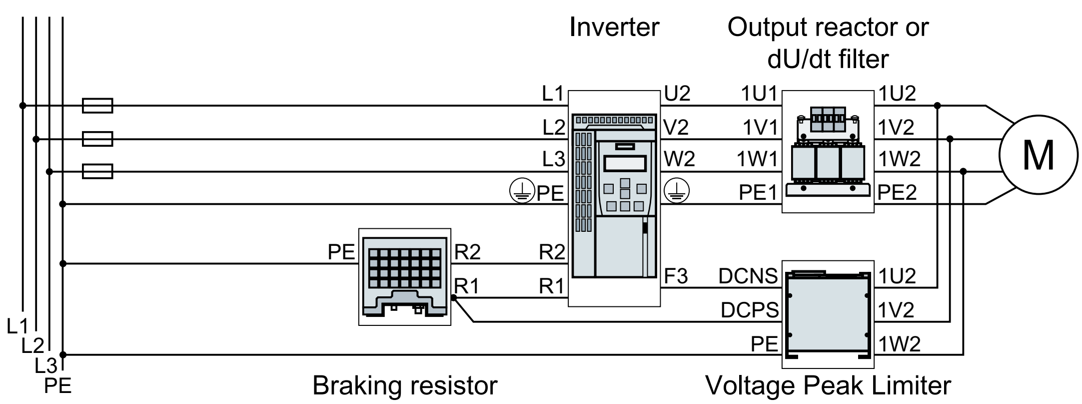


Figure 4-20 Connection of the inverters FSD, FSE and their optional components

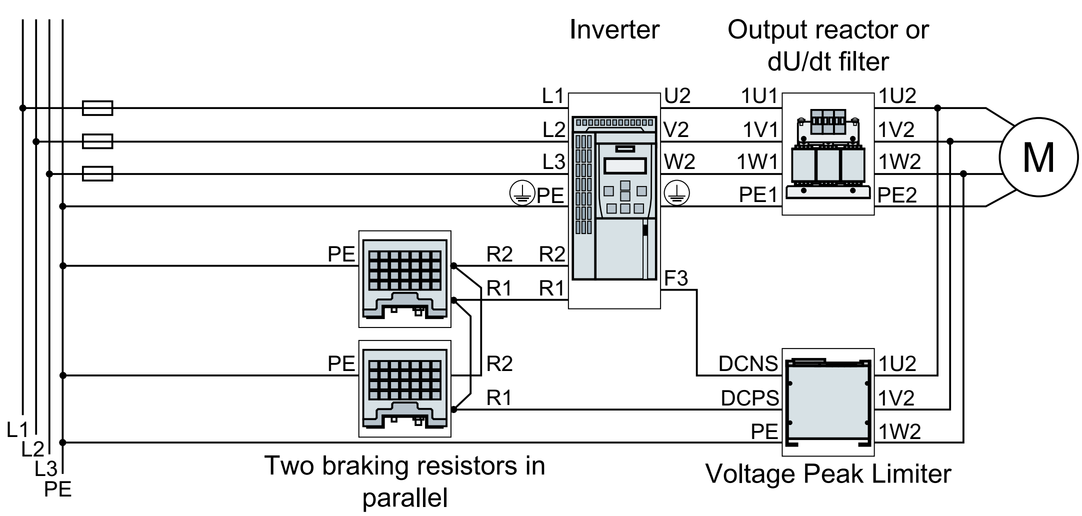
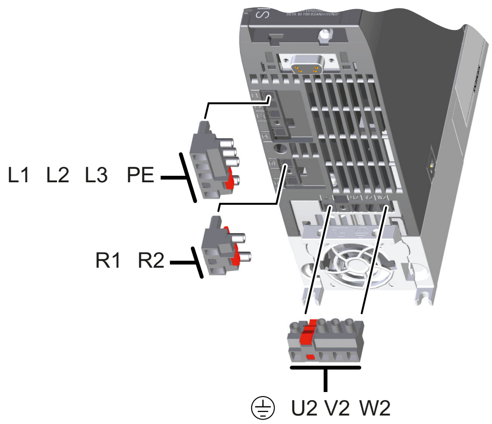


Figure 4-21 Connection of the inverter FSF and its optional components

If an EMC-compliant installation is required, you must use shielded cables.

EMC-compliant setup of the machine or plant (Page 41)

Overview of the connections, FSAA … FSC



The plugs for connecting the line supply, motor, and braking resistor are located on the lower side of the inverter.

Overview of the connections, FSD … FSF

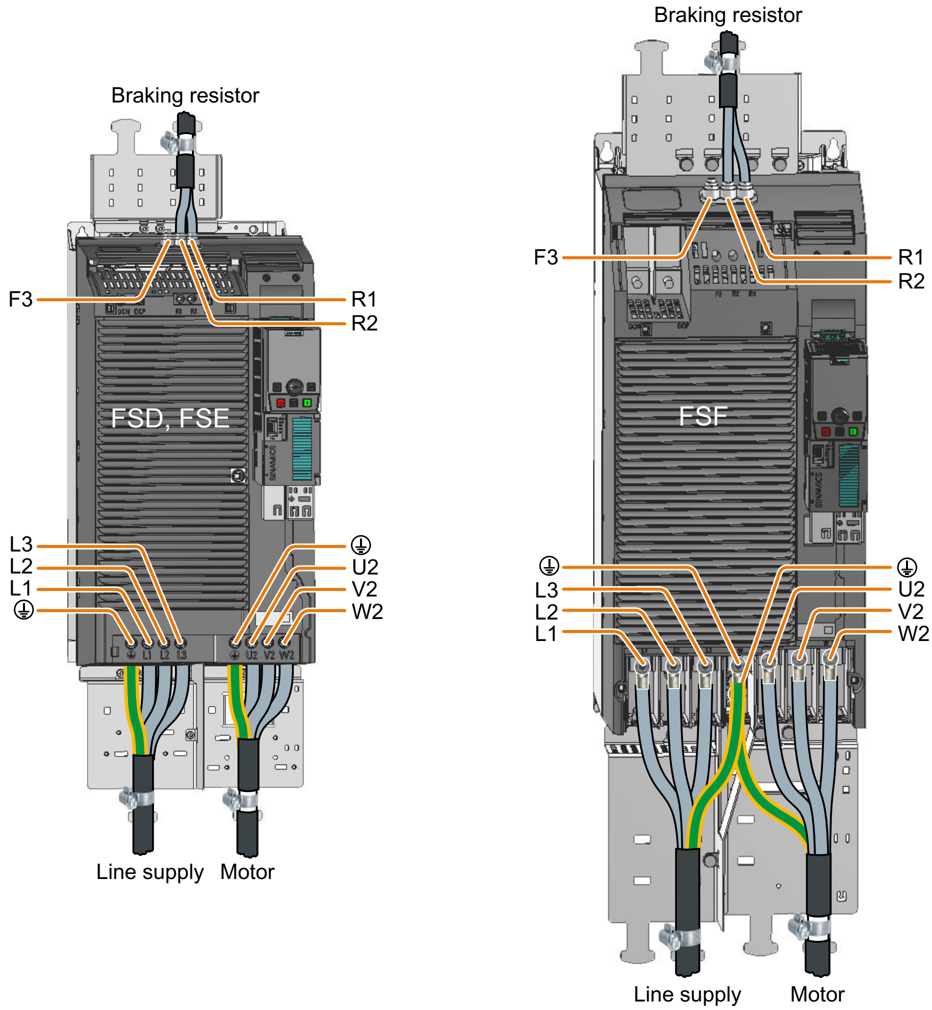
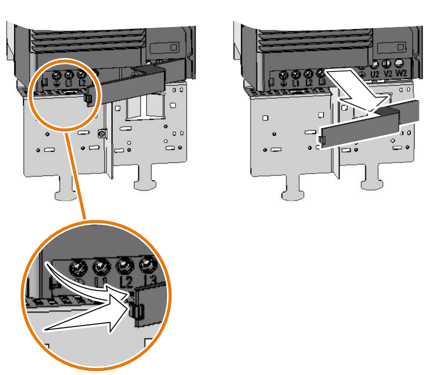


Figure 4-22 Connections for the line supply, motor and braking resistor

Connecting the line supply and motor, frame sizes FSD … FSE



Remove the lower connection covers.

You must re-attach the covers in order to re-establish the touch protection of the inverter after the cables have been connected.

Connecting the line supply and motor, frame size FSF

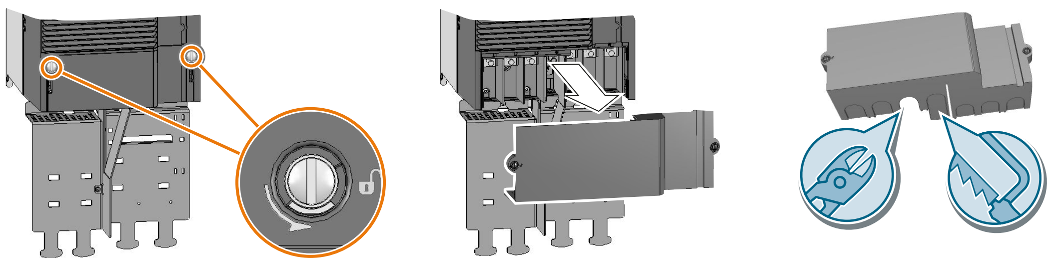


Figure 4-23 Connecting the line supply and motor, FSF

Remove the lower connection covers.

Use side cutters or a fine saw blade to make openings in the cover for the cables.

You must re-attach the covers in order to re-establish the touch protection of the inverter after the cables have been connected.

Connecting the braking resistor, frame sizes FSD … FSF

We recommend mounting the shield plate. The shield plate is not included in the scope of delivery of the inverter.

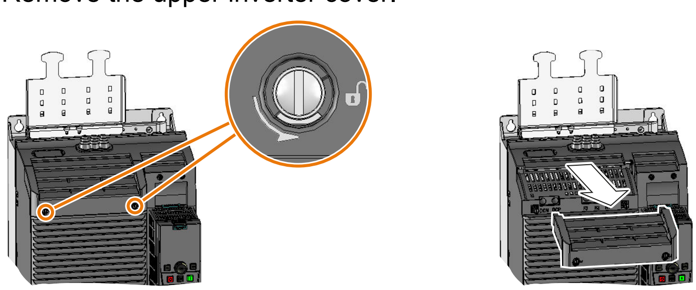
Spare parts (Page 383)

Procedure

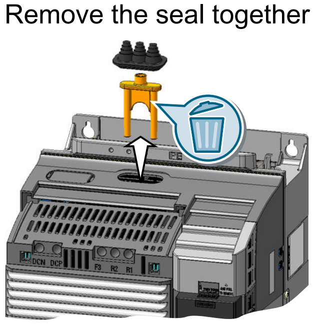
1.
2.

To connect a braking resistor, proceed as follows:

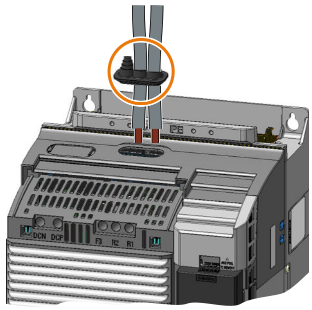
1. Remove the upper inverter cover.



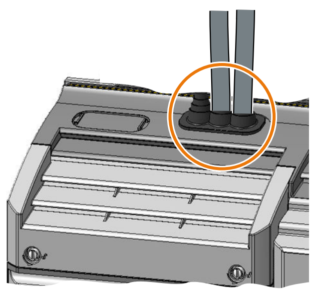
2. Release the two braking resistor terminals.
3. Remove the seal together with the connection cover upwards away from the inverter.



4. Adapt the seal to the cable cross-section.
5. Place the seal on the cables to be connected.

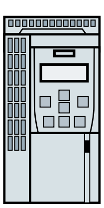


6. Connect the cables in the inverter.
7. Push the seal into the inverter housing.
8. Mount the upper inverter cover.



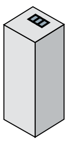
You have connected the braking resistor.

Conductor cross-sections and tightening torques

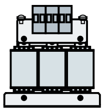


Inverter					
Frame size, rated power		Line and motor connection Conductor cross-section (tightening torque)			
FSAA, FSA	0.55 kW … 4.0 kW	1.0 ... 2.5 mm²	(0.5 Nm)	18 ... 14 AWG	(4.5 lbf in)
FSB	5.5 kW … 7.5 kW	4.0 ... 6.0 mm²	(0.6 Nm)	12 ... 10 AWG	(5.5 lbf in)
FSC	11 kW	6.0 ... 16 mm²	(1.5 Nm)	10 ... 5 AWG	(13.5 lbf in)
	15 kW … 18.5 kW	10 ... 16 mm²	(1.5 Nm)	7 ... 5 AWG	(13.5 lbf in)
FSD	22 kW … 45 kW	10 ... 35 mm²	(2.5 ... 4.5 Nm)	20 ... 10 AWG	(22 lbf in)
FSE	55 kW	25 ... 70 mm²	(8 ... 10 Nm)	6 ... 3/0 AWG	(88.5 lbf in)
FSF	75 kW … 132 kW	35 ... 2 * 120 mm²	(22 ... 25 Nm)	1 ... 2 * 4/0 AWG	(210 lbf in)

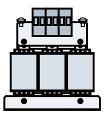
Frame size, rated power		Connection for braking resistor Conductor cross-section (tightening torque)			
FSAA, FSA	0.55 kW … 4.0 kW	1.0 ... 2.5 mm²	(0.5 Nm)	18 ... 14 AWG	(4.5 lbf in)
FSB	5.5 kW … 7.5 kW	4.0 ... 6.0 mm²	(0.6 Nm)	12 ... 10 AWG	(5.5 lbf in)
FSC	11 kW	6.0 ... 16 mm²	(1.5 Nm)	10 ... 5 AWG	(13.5 lbf in)
	15 kW … 18.5 kW	10 ... 16 mm²	(1.5 Nm)	7 ... 5 AWG	(13.5 lbf in)
FSD	22 kW … 45 kW	2,5 ... 16 mm²	(1.2 ... 1.7 Nm)	20 ... 6 AWG	(15 lbf in)
FSE	55 kW	10 ... 35 mm²	(2.5 ... 4.5 Nm)	20 ... 10 AWG	(40 lbf in)
FSF	75 kW … 132 kW	25 ... 70 mm²	(8 ... 10 Nm)	6 ... 3/0 AWG	(88.5 lbf in)



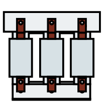
Reactor, filter or braking resistor as base components Connection cross-section (tightening torque)		Frame size, rated power of the converter	
1,0 ... 2,5 mm^2 (1,1 Nm)	17 ... 14 AWG (10 lbf in)	FSAA	0,55 kW … 2,2 kW



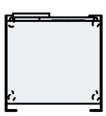
Line reactor Connection cross-section (tightening torque)			Rated power of the inverter
2.5 mm^2 (0.8 Nm)	14 AWG (7 lbf in)	PE M4 (3 Nm / 27 lbf in)	0.55 kW … 4.0 kW
6 mm^2 (1.8 Nm)	10 AWG (16 lbf in)	PE M5 (5 Nm / 44 lbf in)	5.5 kW … 7.5 kW
16 mm^2 (4 Nm)	5 AWG (35 lbf in)		11 kW … 18.5 kW



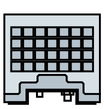
Output reactor Conductor cross-section (tightening torque)			Rated power of the inverter
2.5 mm^2 (0.8 Nm)	14 AWG (7 lbf in)	PE M4 (3 Nm / 27 lbf in)	0.55 kW … 4.0 kW
10 mm^2 (1.8 Nm)	8 AWG (16 lbf in)	PE M5 (5 Nm / 44 lbf in)	5.5 kW … 7.5 kW
16 mm^2 (4 Nm)	5 AWG (35 lbf in)		11 kW … 18.5 kW
M6		PE M6	22 kW … 37 kW
M8		PE M8	45 kW … 90 kW
M10		PE M8	110 kW … 132 kW



dU/dt filter Conductor cross-section (tightening torque)		Rated power of the inverter
M10	PE M6	75 kW … 132 kW



Voltage Peak Limiter Conductor cross-section (tightening torque)	Rated power of the inverter
M8	75 kW … 132 kW



Braking resistor Connection cross-section (tightening torque)				Rated power of the inverter
R1, R2, PE		Temperature contact		
2.5 mm^2 (0.5 Nm)	14 AWG (4.5 lbf in)	2.5 mm^2 (0.5 Nm)	14 AWG (4.5 lbf in)	0.55 kW … 7.5 kW
2.5 mm^2 (0.6 Nm)	10 AWG (5.5 lbf in)			11 kW … 18.5 kW
10 mm^2 (0.8 Nm)	8 AWG (7.1 lbf in)			22 kW … 37 kW
16 mm^2 (1.2 Nm)	6 AWG (10.6 lbf in)			45 kW … 55 kW
10/16 mm^2 (0.8/1.2 Nm)	8/6 AWG (7.1/10.6 lbf in)			75 kW … 90 kW
16 mm^2 (1.2 Nm)	6 AWG (10.6 lbf in)			110 kW … 132 kW

4.8.4 Branch circuit protection

⚠ WARNING

Risk of electric shock and fire from a network with an excessively high impedance

Excessively low short-circuit currents can lead to the protective devices not tripping or tripping too late, and so causing electric shock or a fire.

- In the case of a conductor-conductor or conductor-ground short-circuit, ensure that the short-circuit current at the point where the inverter is connected to the line supply at least meets the minimum requirements for the response of the protective device used.
- You must use an additional residual-current device (RCD) if a conductor-ground short circuit does not reach the short-circuit current required for the protective device to respond. The required short-circuit current can be too low, especially for TT systems.

⚠ WARNING

Risk of electric shock and fire from a network with an impedance that is too low.

Excessively high short-circuit currents can lead to the protective devices not being able to interrupt these short-circuit currents and being destroyed, and so causing electric shock or a fire.

- Ensure that the uninfluenced short-circuit current at the line terminal of the inverter does not exceed the breaking capacity (SCCR or Icc) of the protective device used.

Table 4-6 Branch circuit protection according to the IEC standard and UL standard

Frame size	Rated power	Article number		
		Inverter	Fuse according to the IEC standard	Max. rated current of the fuse according to UL standard, Class J [1)]
FSAA	0.55 kW	6SL3210-1KE11-8…	3NA3803	10 A
	0.75 kW	6SL3210-1KE12-3…		
	1.1 kW	6SL3210-1KE13-2…		
	1.5 kW	6SL3210-1KE14-3…		
	2.2 kW	6SL3210-1KE15-8…		
FSA	3 kW	6SL3210-1KE17-5…	3NA3805	15 A
	4 kW	6SL3210-1KE18-8…		
FSB	5.5 kW	6SL3210-1KE21-3…	3NA3812	35 A
	7.5 kW	6SL3210-1KE21-7…		
FSC	11 kW	6SL3210-1KE22-6…	3NA3822	60 A
	15 kW	6SL3210-1KE23-2…		
	18.5 kW	6SL3210-1KE23-8…		
FSD	22 kW	6SL3210-1KE24-4…	3NA3824	70 A
	30 kW	6SL3210-1KE26-0…	3NA3830	90 A
	37 kW	6SL3210-1KE27-0…	3NA3830	100 A
	45 kW	6SL3210-1KE28-4…	3NA3832	125 A

Frame size	Rated power	Article number		
		Inverter	Fuse according to the IEC standard	Max. rated current of the fuse according to UL standard, Class J [1)]
FSE	55 kW	6SL3210-1KE31-1…	3NA3836	150 A
FSF	75 kW	6SL3210-1KE31-4…	3NA3140	200 A
	90 kW	6SL3210-1KE31-7…	3NA3142	250 A
	110 kW	6SL3210-1KE32-1…	3NA3250	300 A
	132 kW	6SL3210-1KE32-4…	3NA3252	350 A

[1)] The stated fuses are only permissible with a cabinet volume ≥0.36 m³

You can find information about other permissible overcurrent protection devices on the Internet.

Protective devices for SINAMICS G120C (https://support.industry.siemens.com/cs/ww/en/view/109750343)

Installation in the United States and Canada (UL or CSA)

Measures for a UL and cUL-compliant installation:

- Use the specified overcurrent protection device.
- A multi-motor drive is not permissible, i.e. simultaneously operating several motors connected to one inverter.
- The integrated semiconductor short-circuit protection in the inverter does not provide branch protection. Install branch protection in compliance with the National Electric Code or the Canadian Electrical Code, part 1 and also all local regulations.
- Depending on the inverter, use the following power and motor cables:
  - FSAA with rated power ≤ 1.5 kW: Copper conductor, suitable for temperatures ≤60 °C
  - FSAA (2.2 KW) and FSA … FSC: Copper conductor, suitable for temperatures ≤75 °C
  - FSD … FSF: Copper conductor, suitable for temperatures ≤60 °C or ≤75 °C
- For frame size FSE, use a copper conductor suitable for temperatures ≤75 °C for connecting the braking resistor.
- For frame size FSF, to connect the line supply and motor, only use UL approved ring-type cable lugs (ZMVV), which are certified for the particular voltage. Permissible current of the ring-type cable lugs ≥ 125 % of the input or output current.
- Leave parameter p0610 in its factory setting.
  The factory setting p0610 = 12 means: The inverter responds to motor overtemperature immediately with an alarm and after a certain time with a fault.
- When commissioning the drive system, set the motor overload protection to 115%, 230% or 400% of the rated motor current using parameter p0640. As a consequence, the motor overload protection is fulfilled according to UL 508C and UL 61800-5-1.

Additional measures for CSA conformity

Frame sizes FSA ... FSC

- Install the inverter on a surge protection device with the following features:
  - Rated voltage 3-phase 480 V AC
  - Overvoltage category III
  - Overvoltage VPR ≤2500 V
  - Applications, type 1 or type 2

Frame sizes FSD … FSF

- Operate the inverter under the following ambient conditions:
  - Pollution degree 2
  - Overvoltages category III

4.8.5 Maximum permissible motor cable length

Table 4-7 Maximum permissible motor cable lengths for FSAA … FSC [1]

Inverter frame size	EMC category: Second environment, C2 or C3	No EMC category					
	Inverter with filter	Inverter with filter and without output reactor		Inverter without filter and without output reactor		Inverter without filter, with an output reactor	
	with shielded motor cable	Shielded	Unshielded	Shielded	Unshielded	Shielded	Unshielded
FSAA	25 m [2]	50 m	100 m	150 m [3]	150 m	150 m [4]	225 m [4]
FSA … FSC	25 m [2]	50 m	100 m	150 m	150 m	150 m [4]	225 m [4]

[1] The values are valid for a pulse frequency set at the factory

[2] When using a low-capacitance motor connection cable FSAA … FSB: 50 m, FSC: 100 m

[3] Exception for 2.2 kW: 125 m with standard motor cable, 150 m when using a motor cable with low capacitance

[4] For a line voltage 440 V … 415 V: shielded 100 m, unshielded 150 m

Table 4-8 Maximum permissible motor cable lengths for FSD … FSF [1)]

Inverter frame size	EMC category: Second environment, C2 or C3	No EMC category			
	Inverter with filter	Inverter with or without filter, without output reactor		Inverter without filter, with two output reactors in series	
	with shielded motor cable	Shielded	Unshielded	Shielded	Unshielded
FSD, FSE [2)]	150 m	200 m	300 m	350 m	525 m
FSF [2)]	150 m	300 m	450 m	525 m	800 m

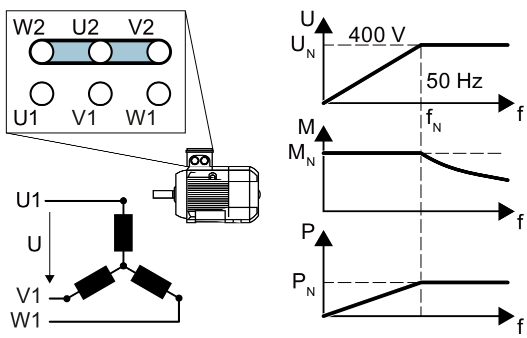
1) The values are valid for a pulse frequency set at the factory

2) The specified motor cable lengths apply for a line voltage of 400 V

4.8.6 Connecting the motor to the inverter in a star or delta connection

Standard induction motors with a rated power of approximately ≤ 3 kW are normally connected in a star/delta connection (Y/Δ) at 400 V/230 V. For a 400-V line supply, you can connect the motor to the inverter either in a star or in a delta connection.

Operating the motor in a star connection

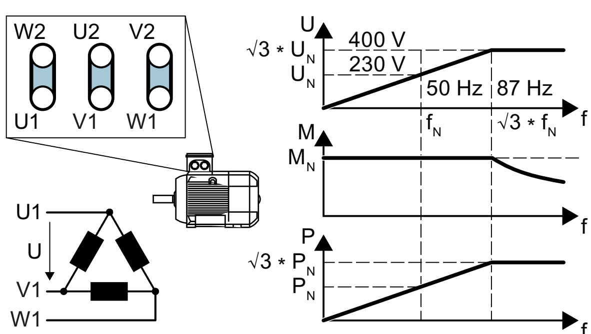


In a star connection, the motor can provide its rated torque M_N in the range 0 … rated frequency f_N.

Rated voltage U_N = 400 V is available at a rated frequency f_N = 50 Hz.

The motor goes into field weakening above the rated frequency. In field weakening, the available motor torque decreases linearly with 1/f. In field weakening, the available power remains constant.

Operating the motor in a delta connection with 87 Hz characteristic



In a delta connection, the motor is operated with a voltage and frequency above its rated values. As a consequence, the motor power is increased by a factor √3 ≈ 1.73.

In the range f = 0 … 87 Hz, the motor can output its rated torque M_N.

The maximum voltage U = 400 V is available at a frequency of f = √3 × 50 Hz ≈ 87 Hz.

The motor only goes into field weakening above 87 Hz.

The higher motor power when operated with an 87 Hz characteristic has the following disadvantages:

- The inverter must supply approximately 1.73x current. Select an inverter based on its rated current - and not its rated power.
- The motor temperature increases more significantly than when operated with f ≤ 50 Hz.
- The motor must have windings that are approved for a voltage > rated voltage U_N.
- As the fan impeller rotates faster, the motor has a higher noise level than operation with f ≤ 50 Hz.

4.8.7 Operating a converter on the residual current device

> **WARNING**
>
> **Live enclosure parts due to unsuitable protection equipment**
>
> The frequency inverter can cause a direct current in the protective conductor. If an unsuitable residual current device (RCD) or residual current monitoring equipment (RCM) is used to protect against direct or indirect contact, the direct current in the protective conductor prevents the protective device from being triggered if a fault occurs.
>
> As a result, parts of the inverter without touch protection can carry a dangerous voltage.
>
> - Adhere to the conditions for residual current devices as listed below.

Preconditions for operating the inverter with a residual current device

You can operate the inverter with a residual current device (RCD, ELCB or RCCB) or residual current monitoring equipment (RCM) under the following conditions:

- The inverter is connected to a TN system.
- You are using an inverter, with frame sizes FSAA, FSA or FSB.
- You are using a super-resistant (universal current-sensitive) RCD/RCM, type B, such as a SIQUENCE circuit breaker from Siemens.
  - RCD/RCM tripping current for filtered devices = 300 mA
  - RCD/RCM tripping current for unfiltered devices = 30 mA
- Each inverter is connected via its own RCD/RCM.
- Maximum length of shielded motor cables: 15 m.
- Maximum length of non-shielded motor cables: 30 m.

Measures for touch protection without RCD/RCM

Establish touch protection using one of the following measures:

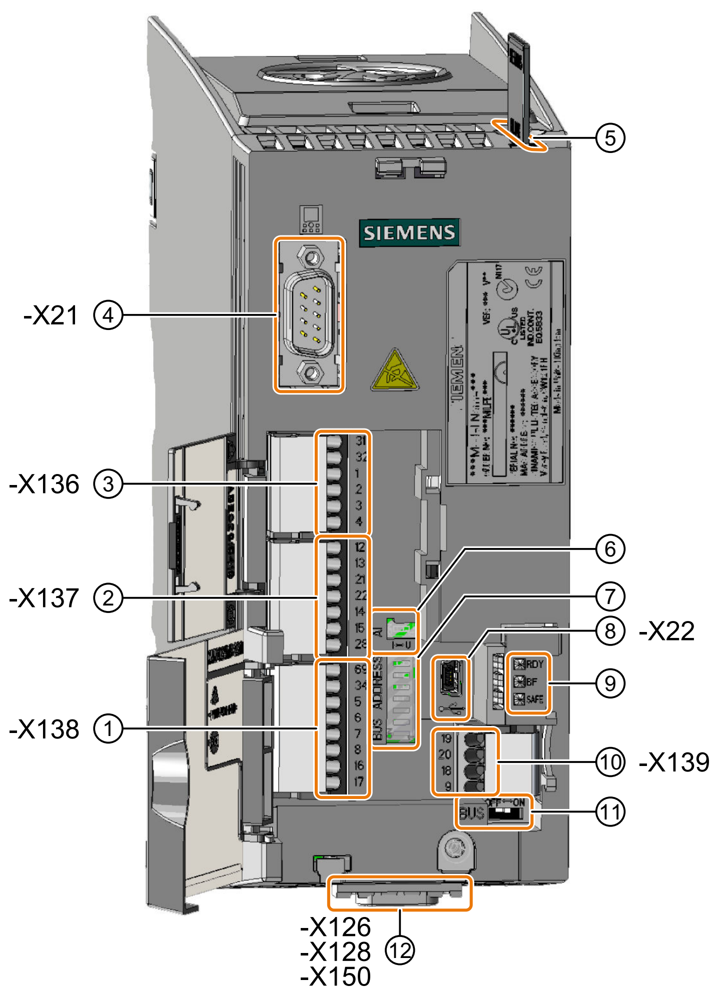
- Double insulation
- Transformer for isolating the inverter from the line supply

4.9 Connecting the interfaces for the inverter control

4.9.1 Overview of the interfaces

Frame sizes FSAA … FSC

To access the interfaces at the front of the Control Unit, you must lift the Operator Panel (if one is being used) and open the front doors.



① Terminal strip -X138

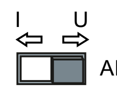
② Terminal strip -X137

③ Terminal strip -X136

④ Interface -X21 to the Operator Panel

⑤ Memory card slot

⑥ Switch for AI 0



- I 0/4 mA … 20 mA
- U -10/0 V … 10 V

⑦ Switch for the bus address

Only on G120C DP and G120C USS/MB

Bit 6 (64)	■
Bit 5 (32)	■
Bit 4 (16)	■
Bit 3 (8)	■
Bit 2 (4)	■
Bit 1 (2)	■
Bit 0 (1)	■
On	Off

G120C PN: No function

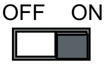
⑧ USB interface -X22 for connection to a PC

⑨ LNK1 LNK2 RDY BF SAFE Status LED

LNK1/2 only for G120C PN

⑩ Terminal strip -X139

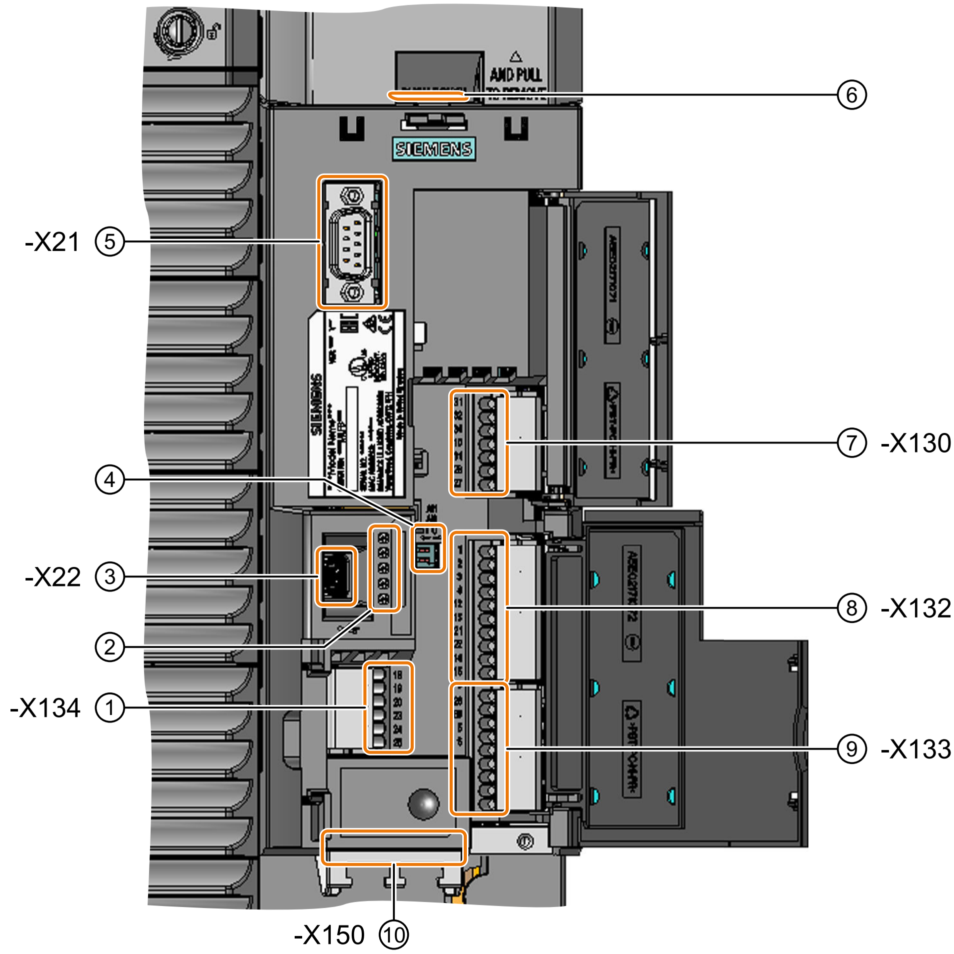
⑪ OFF ON Switch for bus termination, only on G120C USS/MB



G120 DP and G120C PN: No function

⑫ Fieldbus interface at the bottom

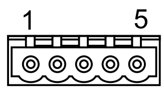
Frame sizes FSD … FSF



①	Terminal strip -X134	⑤	Interface -X21 to the Operator Panel
②	RDY, BF, SAFE, LNK1, LNK2 — Status LED	⑥	Memory card slot The memory card slot is located under a cover. You must temporarily remove the cover to insert or withdraw the memory card.
③	USB interface -X22 for connection to a PC	⑦	Terminal strip -X130
④	AI1 / AI0, I U — Switch for analog inputs (AI 0 and AI 1) • I 0/4 mA … 20 mA • U -10/0 V … 10 V	⑧	Terminal strip -X132
		⑨	Terminal strip -X133
		⑩	Fieldbus interface -X150 at the bottom

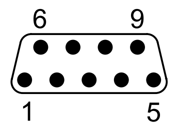
4.9.2 Fieldbus interface assignment

The fieldbus interface is on the underside of the inverter.



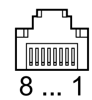
X128
Modbus RTU
USS

1 0 V
2 RS485P, receive and transmit (+)
3 RS485N, receive and transmit (-)
4 Shield
5 ---



X126
PROFIBUS

1 ---
2 ---
3 RxD/TxD-P, receive and transmit (B/B')
4 CNTR-P, control signal
5 GND, reference for data (C/C')
6 + 5 V power supply
7 ---
8 RxD/TxD-N, receive and transmit (A/A')
9 ---



X150 P1
X150 P2
PROFINET
EtherNet/IP

1	RX+	Receive data +
2	RX-	Receive data -
3	TX+	Transmit data +
4	---	
5	---	
6	TX-	Transmit data -
7	---	
8	---	

4.9.3 Terminal strips

Terminal strips for FSAA … FSC with wiring example

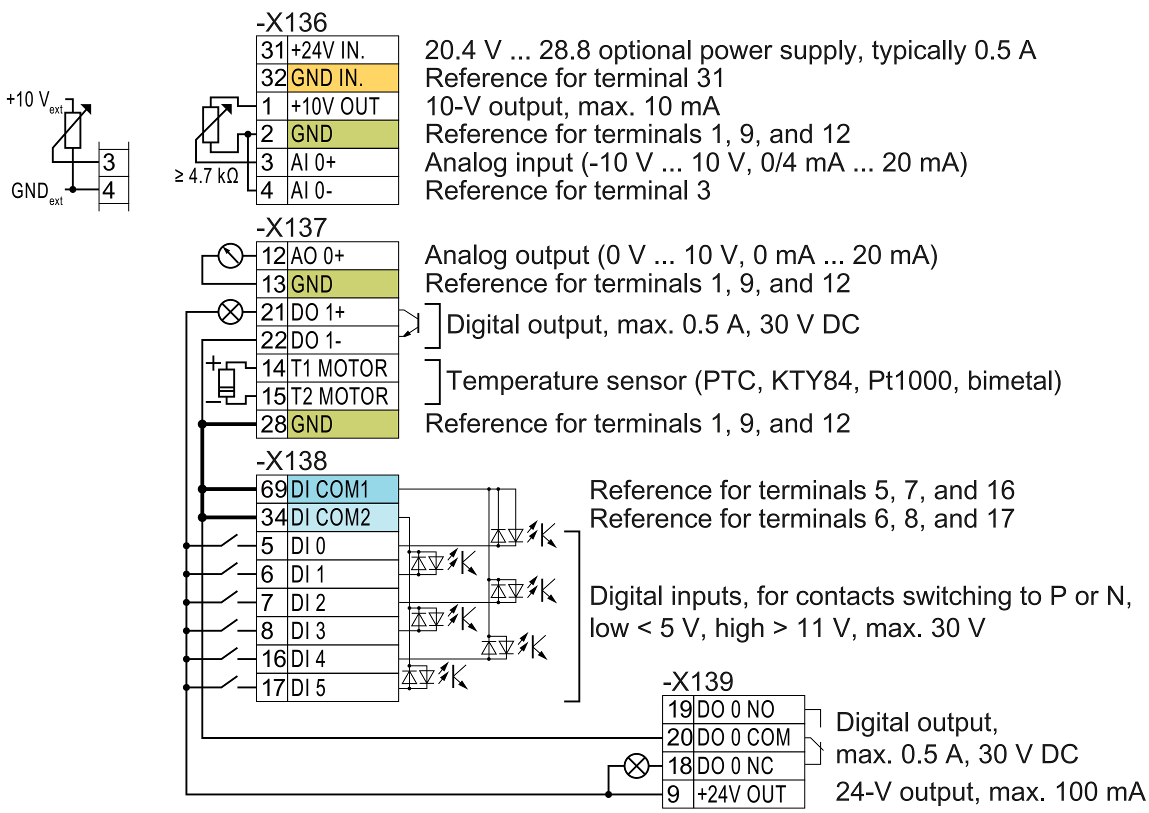
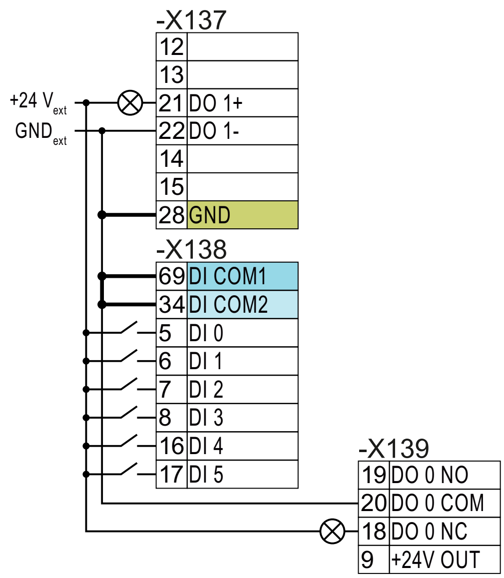


Figure 4-24 Wiring example of the digital inputs with the internal inverter 24 V power supply

GND	All terminals with the reference potential "GND" are connected to each other inside the inverter.
DI COM1 DI COM2	Reference potentials "DI COM1" and "DI COM2" are electrically isolated from "GND". → if, as described above, you use the 24-V power supply from terminal 9 to supply the digital inputs, then you must connect "GND" with "DI COM1" and "DI COM2" at the terminals.
31 +24 V IN 32 GND IN	When an optional 24-V power supply is connected to terminals 31, 32, the Control Unit remains in operation even after the Power Module has been disconnected from the line supply. The Control Unit thus maintains fieldbus communication, for example. → for terminals 31, 32 only use a 24 VDC power supply with PELV (Protective Extra Low Voltage). → for applications in the USA and Canada: Use a 24 VDC power supply, NEC Class 2. → connect the 0 V of the power supply with the protective conductor. → if you also wish to use the power supply at terminals 31, 32 for the digital inputs, then you must connect "DI COM1/2" and "GND IN" with one another at the terminals.
3 AI 0+ 4 AI 0-	For the analog input, you can use the internal 10-V power supply or an external voltage source. Typical current consumption: 10 mA … 20 mA.

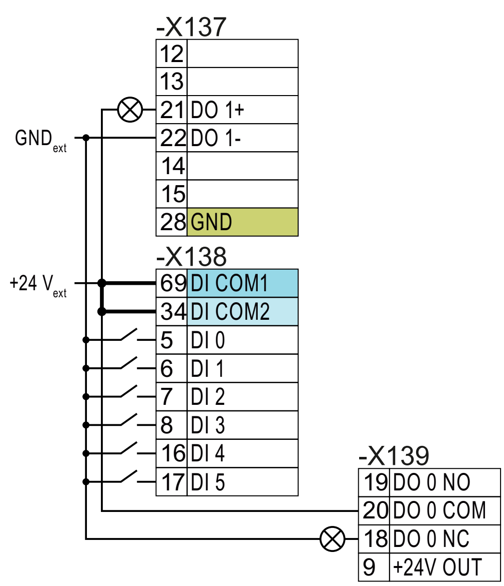
→ If you use the internal 10-V supply, you must connect AI 0- to GND.

Further wiring options of digital inputs for FSAA … FSC



Connection of contacts switching to P potential with an external power source

If you wish to connect the external and the internal inverter power supply voltages with one another, then you must connect "GND" with terminals 34 and 69 at the terminals.



Connection of contacts switching to N potential with an external power source

Connect terminals 69 and 34 at the terminals.

Terminal strips for FSD … FSF with wiring example

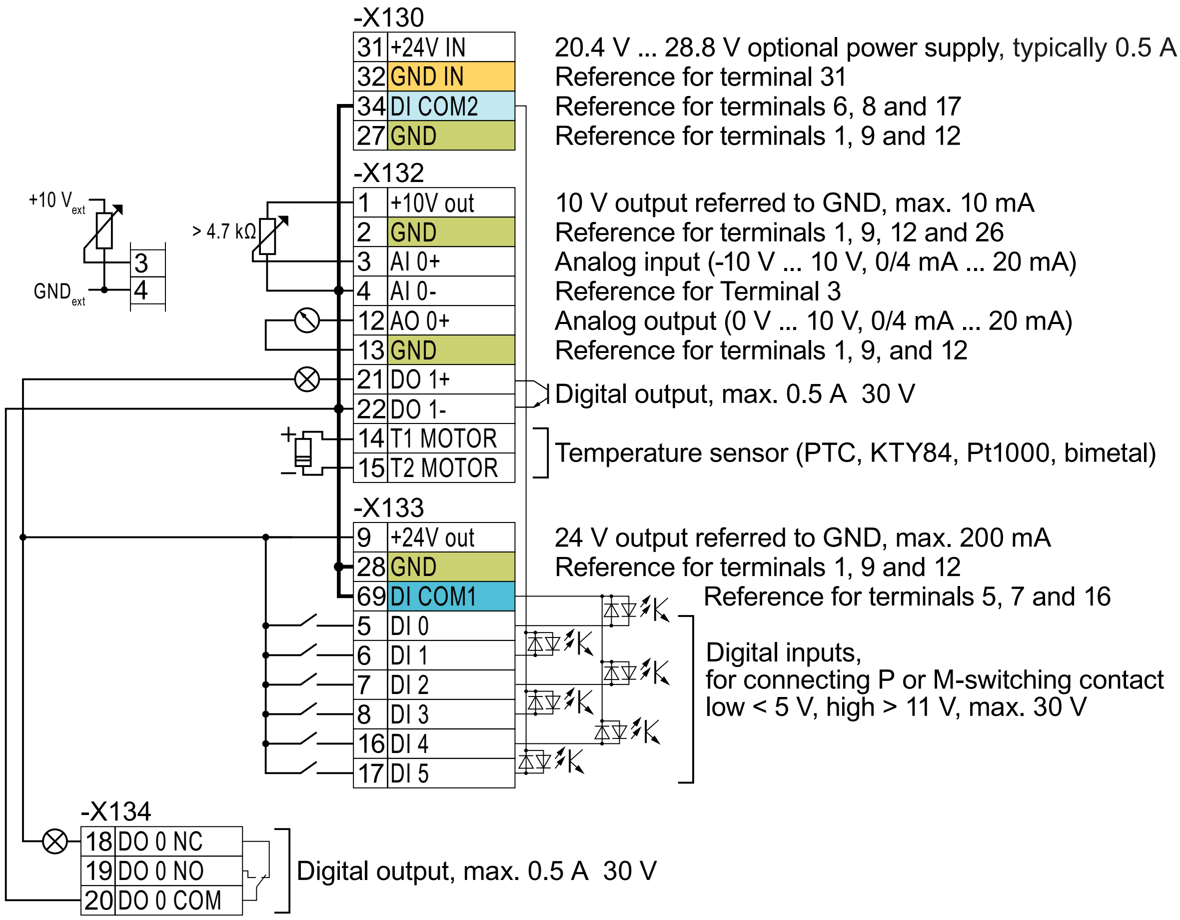


Figure 4-25 Wiring example of the digital inputs with the internal inverter 24 V power supply

GND

All terminals with the reference potential "GND" are connected to each other inside the inverter.

DI COM1
DI COM2

Reference potentials "DI COM1" and "DI COM2" are electrically isolated from "GND".

→ if, as described above, you use the 24-V power supply from terminal 9 to supply the digital inputs, then you must connect "GND" with "DI COM1" and "DI COM2" at the terminals.

31	+24 V IN
32	GND IN

When an optional 24 V power supply is connected to terminals 31, 32, the inverter remains in operation even after the Power Module has been disconnected from the line supply. As a consequence, the inverter maintains fieldbus communication, for example.

→ for terminals 31, 32 only use a 24 VDC power supply with PELV (Protective Extra Low Voltage).

→ for applications in the USA and Canada: Use a 24 VDC power supply, NEC Class 2.

→ connect the 0 V of the power supply with the protective conductor.

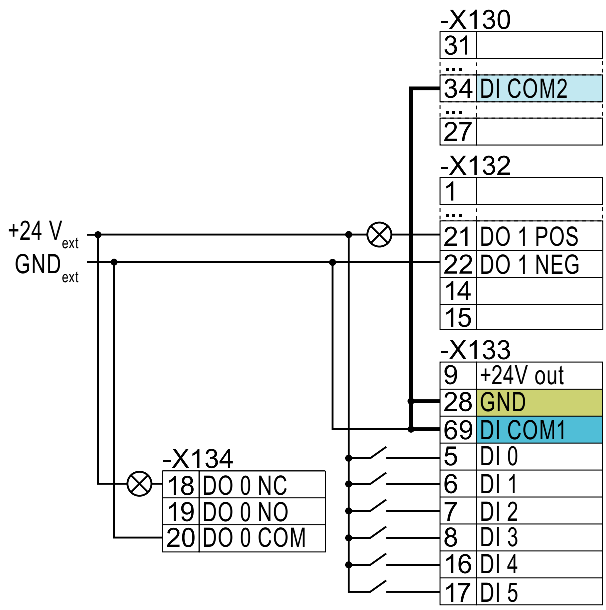
→ if you also wish to use the power supply at terminals 31, 32 for the digital inputs, then you must connect "DI COM1/2" and "GND IN" with one another at the terminals.

3	AI 0+
4	AI 0-

For the analog input, you can use the internal 10 V supply or an external voltage source.

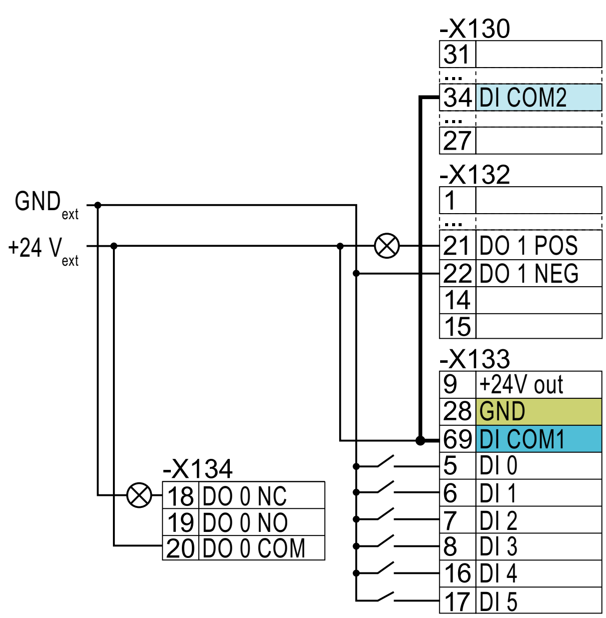
→ If you use the internal 10 V power supply, you must connect AI 0- or AI 1- to GND.

Further wiring options of digital inputs for FSD … FSF



Connection of contacts switching to P potential with an external power source

If you wish to connect the external and the internal inverter power supply voltages with one another, then you must connect "GND" with terminals 34 and 69 at the terminals.



Connection of contacts switching to N potential with an external power source

Connect terminals 69 and 34 at the terminals.

4.9.4 Factory setting of the interfaces

Inverters FSAA ... FSC

The factory setting of the interfaces depends on which fieldbus the inverter supports.

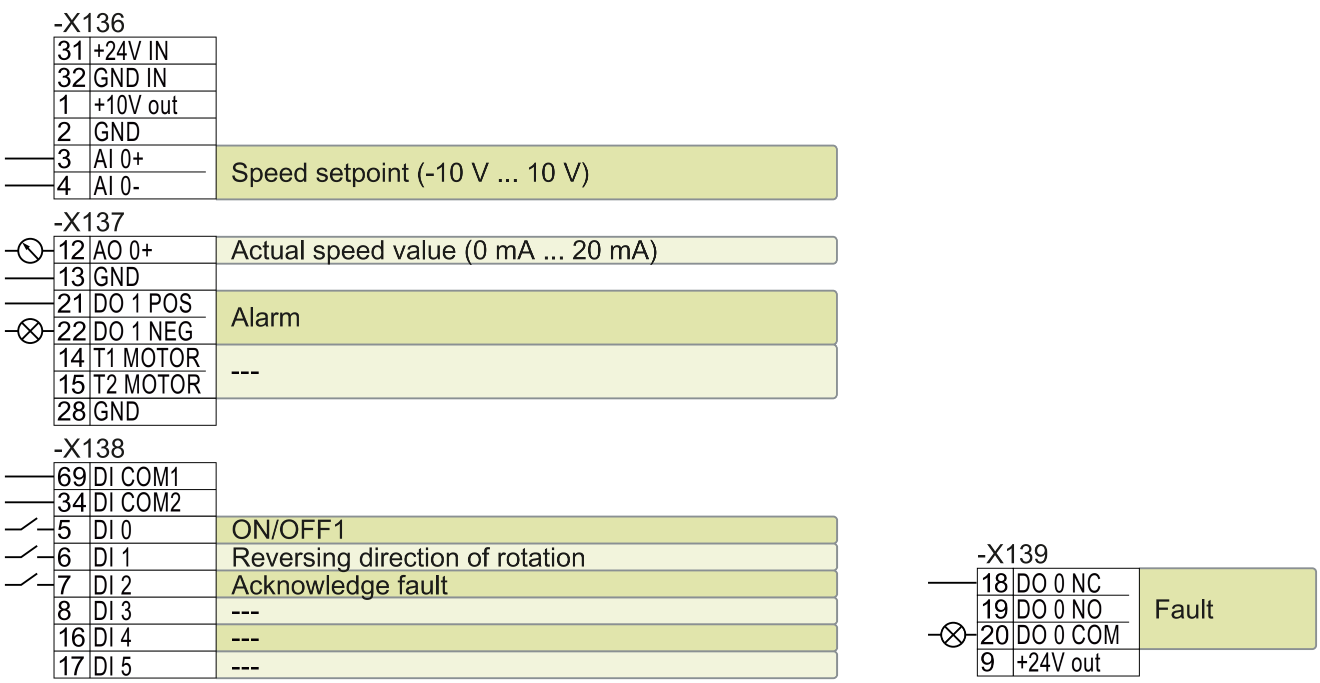


Figure 4-26 Factory settings for G120C USS, FSAA … FSC

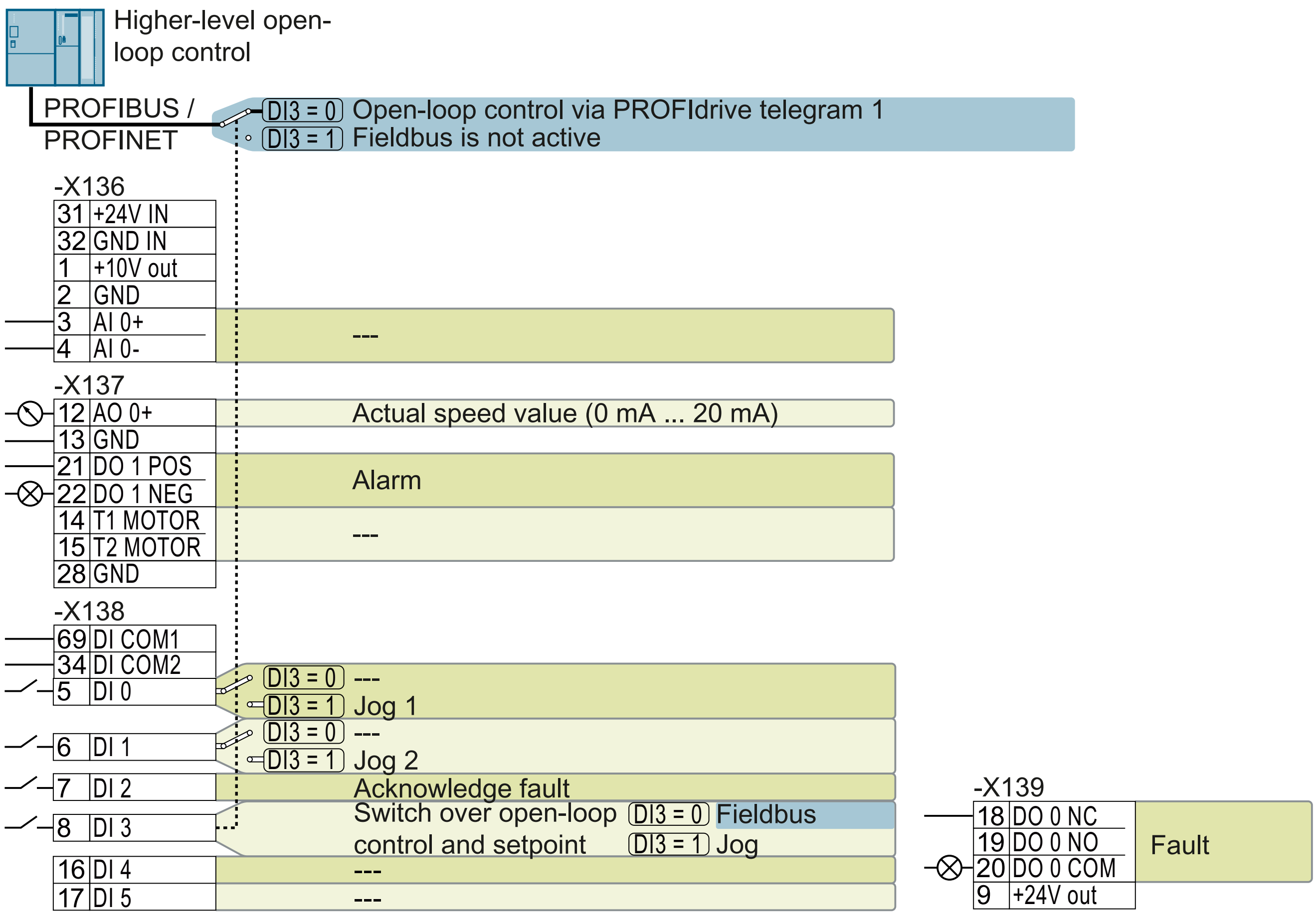


Figure 4-27 Factory settings for G120C DP and G120C PN, FSAA … FSC

Inverters FSD ... FSF

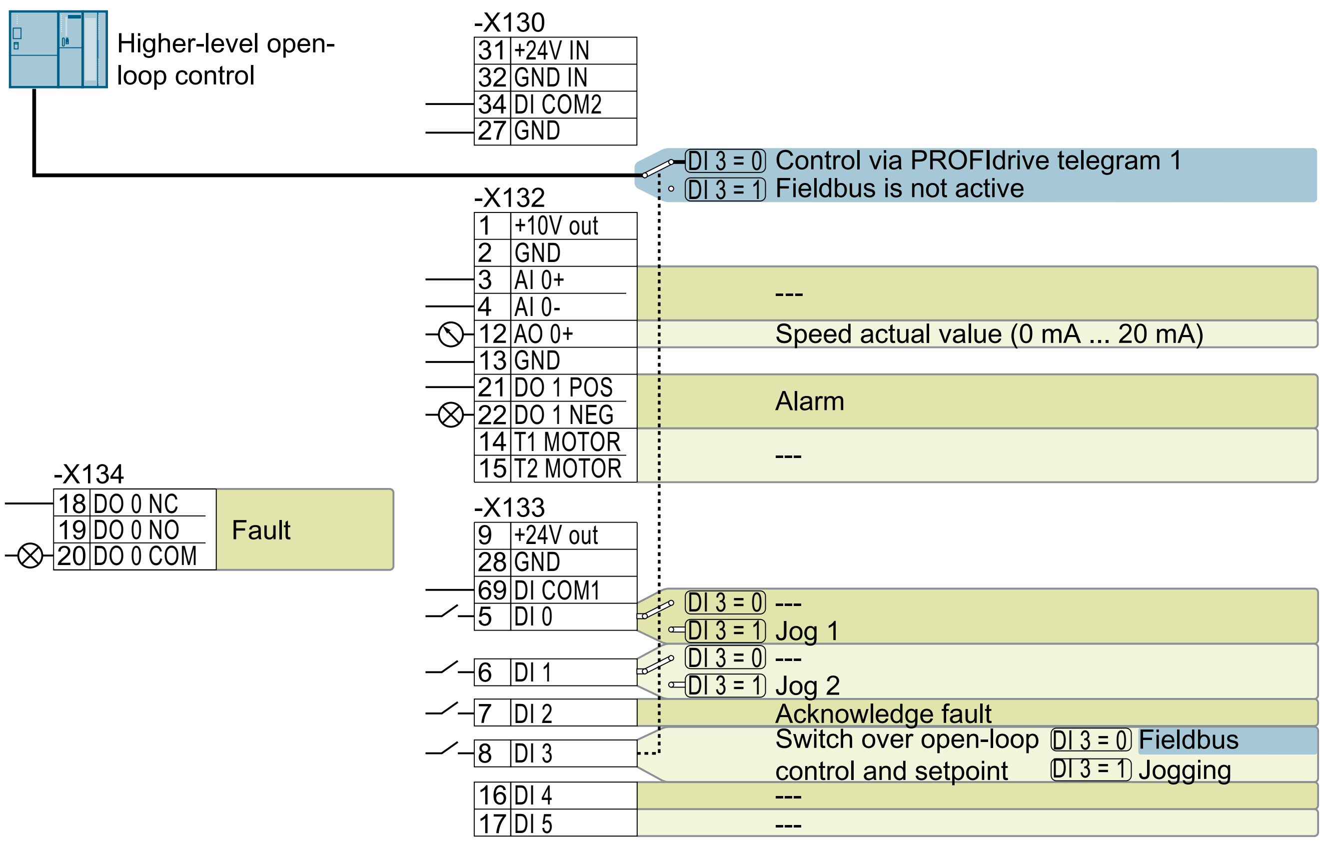
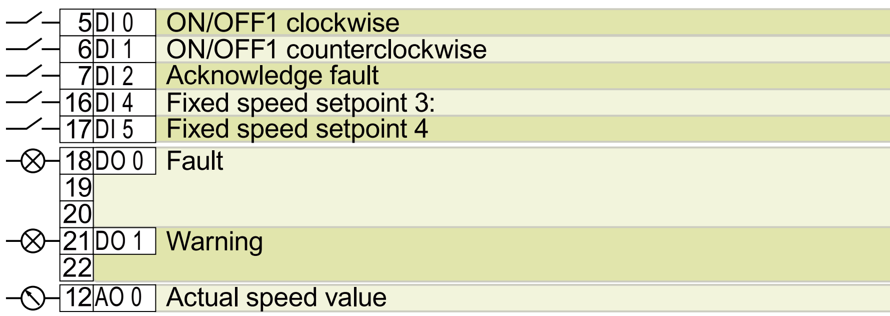


Figure 4-28 Factory setting for G120C PN, FSD … FSF

4.9.5 Default setting of the interfaces

Default setting 1: "Conveyor technology with 2 fixed frequencies"



DO 0: p0730, DO 1: p0731 AO 0: p0771[0] DI 0: r0722.0, …, DI 5: r0722.5

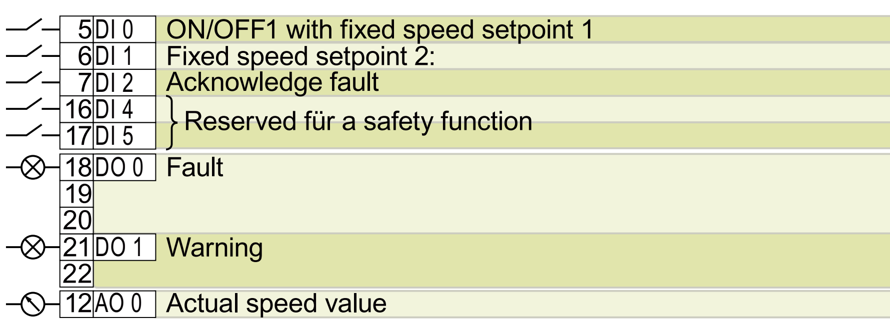
Fixed speed setpoint 3: p1003, fixed speed setpoint 4: p1004, fixed speed setpoint active: r1024

Speed setpoint (main setpoint): p1070[0] = 1024

DI 4 and DI 5 = high: The inverter adds both fixed speed setpoints

Designation in the BOP-2: coN 2 SP

Default setting 2: "Conveyor systems with Basic Safety"



DO 0: p0730, DO 1: p0731 AO 0: p0771[0] DI 0: r0722.0, …, DI 5: r0722.5

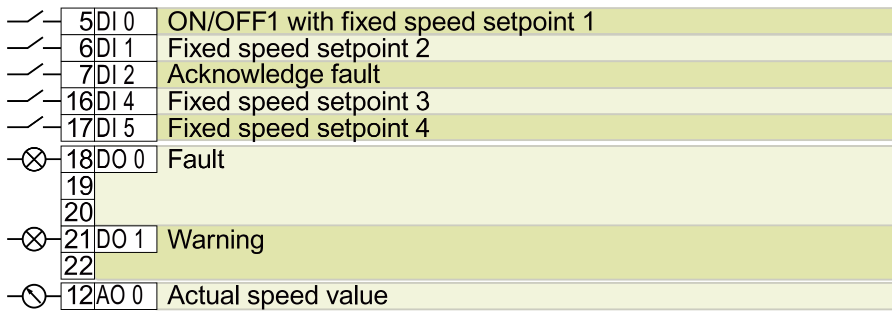
Fixed speed setpoint 1: p1001, fixed speed setpoint 2: p1002, fixed speed setpoint active: r1024

Speed setpoint (main setpoint): p1070[0] = 1024

DI 0 and DI 1 = high: The inverter adds both fixed speed setpoints.

Designation in the BOP-2: coN SAFE

Default setting 3: "Conveyor systems with 4 fixed frequencies"



DO 0: p0730, DO 1: p0731 AO 0: p0771[0] DI 0: r0722.0, …, DI 5: r0722.5

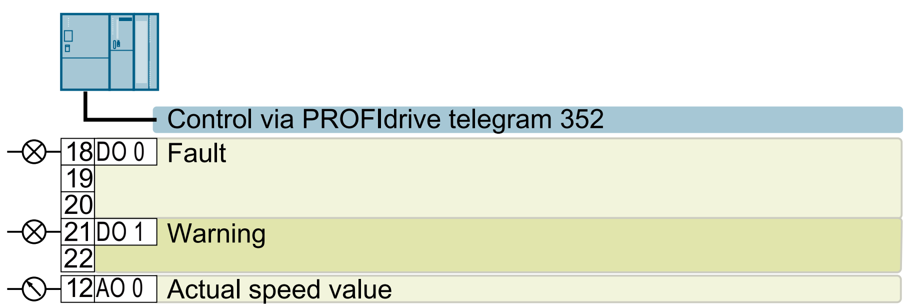
Fixed speed setpoint 1: p1001, … fixed speed setpoint 4: p1004, fixed speed setpoint active: r1024

Speed setpoint (main setpoint): p1070[0] = 1024

Several of the DI 0, DI 1, DI 4, and DI 5 = high: the inverter adds the corresponding fixed speed setpoints.

Designation in the BOP-2: coN 4 SP

Default setting 4: "Conveyor system with fieldbus"

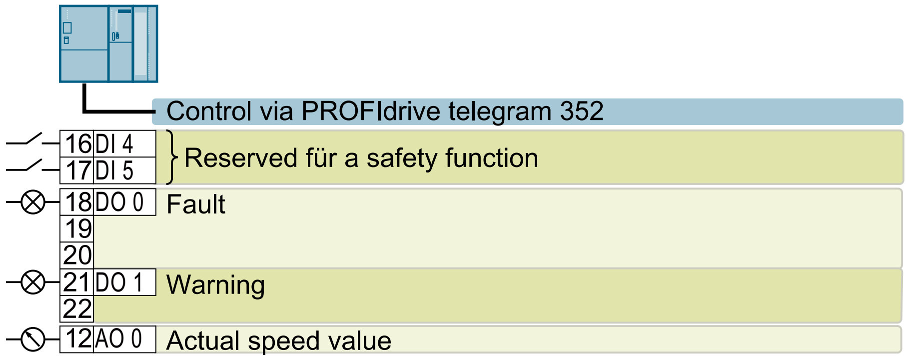


DO 0: p0730, DO 1: p0731 AO 0: p0771[0]

Speed setpoint (main setpoint): p1070[0] = 2050[1]

Designation in the BOP-2: coN Fb

Default setting 5: "Conveyor systems with fieldbus and Basic Safety"



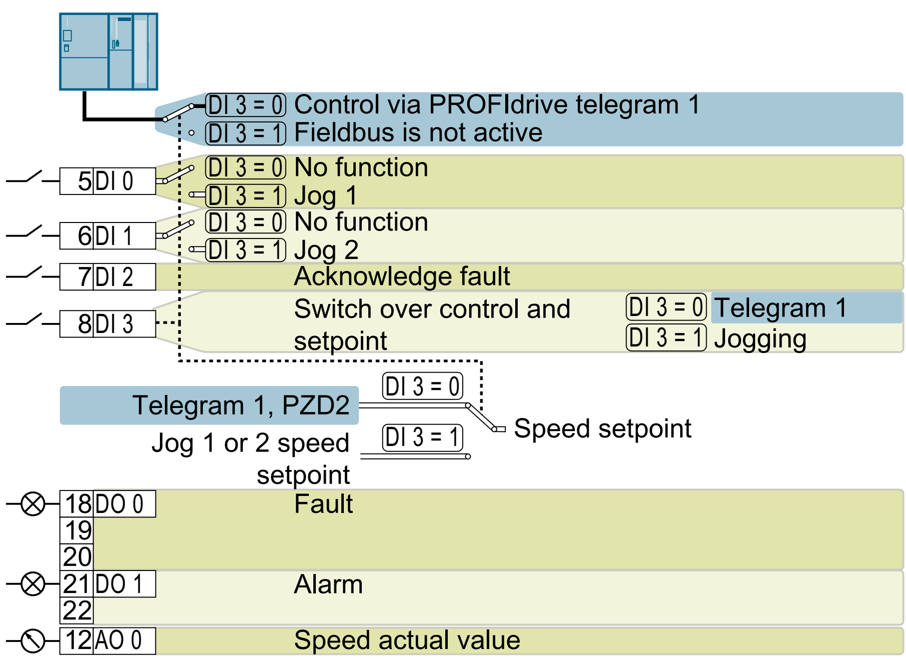
DO 0: p0730, DO 1: p0731 AO 0: p0771[0] DI 4: r0722.4, DI 5: r0722.5

Speed setpoint (main setpoint): p1070[0] = 2050[1]

Designation in the BOP-2: coN Fb S

Default setting 7: "Fieldbus with data set switchover"

Factory setting for inverters with PROFIBUS or PROFINET interface



DO 0: p0730, DO 1: p0731 AO 0: p0771[0] DI 0: r0722.0, …, DI 3: r0722.3

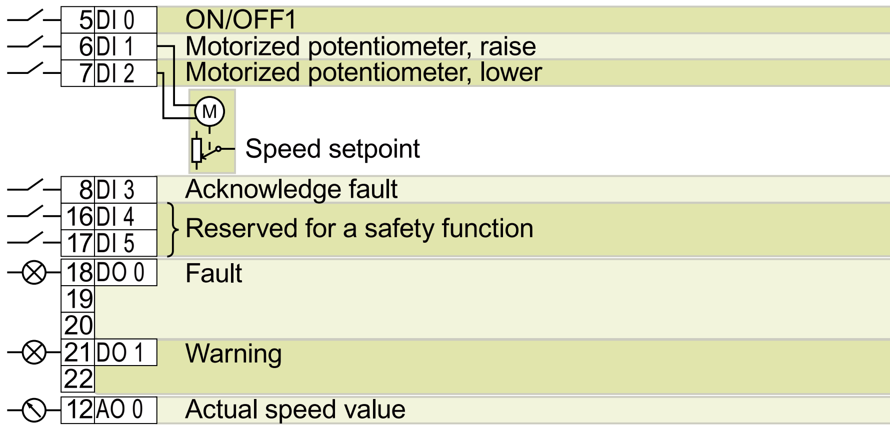
Speed setpoint (main setpoint): p1070[0] = 2050[1]

Jog 1 speed setpoint: p1058, factory setting: 150 rpm

Jog 2 speed setpoint: p1059, factory setting: -150 rpm

Designation in the BOP-2: FB cdS

Default setting 8: "MOP with Basic Safety"



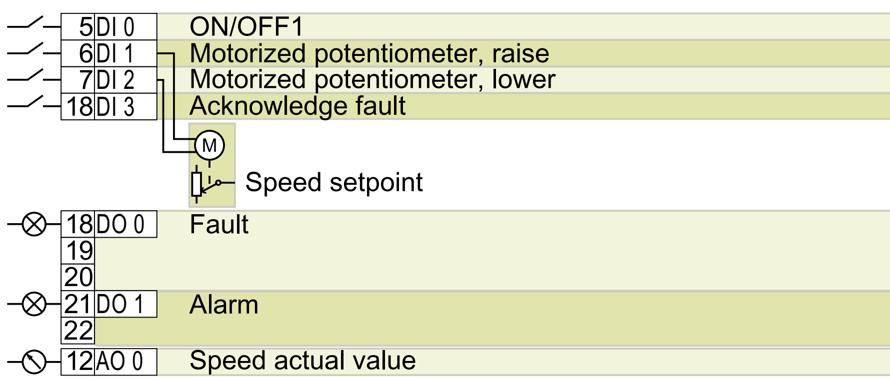
DO 0: p0730, DO 1: p0731 AO 0: p0771[0] DI 0: r0722.0, …, DI 5: r0722.5

Motorized potentiometer setpoint after ramp-function generator: r1050

Speed setpoint (main setpoint): p1070[0] = 1050

Designation in the BOP-2: MoP SAFE

Default setting 9: "Standard I/O with MOP"



DO 0: p0730, DO 1: p0731 AO 0: p0771[0] DI 0: r0722.0, …, DI 3: r0722.3

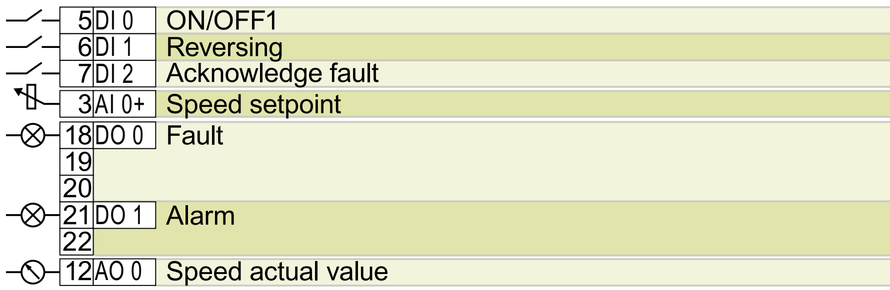
Motorized potentiometer setpoint after ramp-function generator: r1050

Speed setpoint (main setpoint): p1070[0] = 1050

Designation in the BOP-2: Std MoP

Default setting 12: "Standard I/O with analog setpoint"

Factory setting for inverters with USS interface

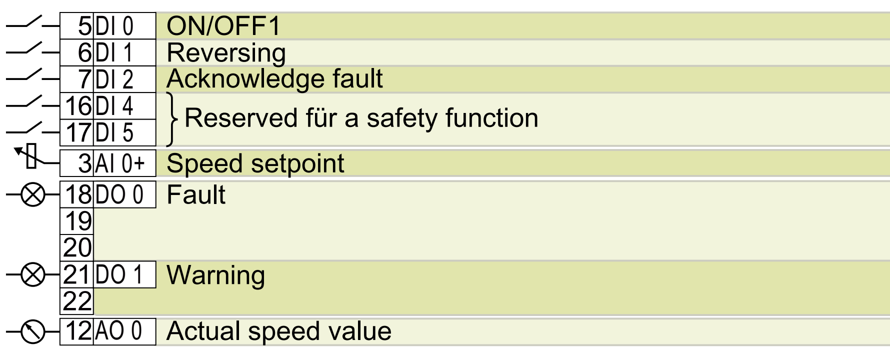


DO 0: p0730, DO 1: p0731   AO 0: p0771[0]   DI 0: r0722.0, …, DI 2: r0722.2   AI 0: r0755[0]

Speed setpoint (main setpoint): p1070[0] = 755[0]

Designation in the BOP-2: Std ASP

Default setting 13: "Standard I/O with analog setpoint and safety"

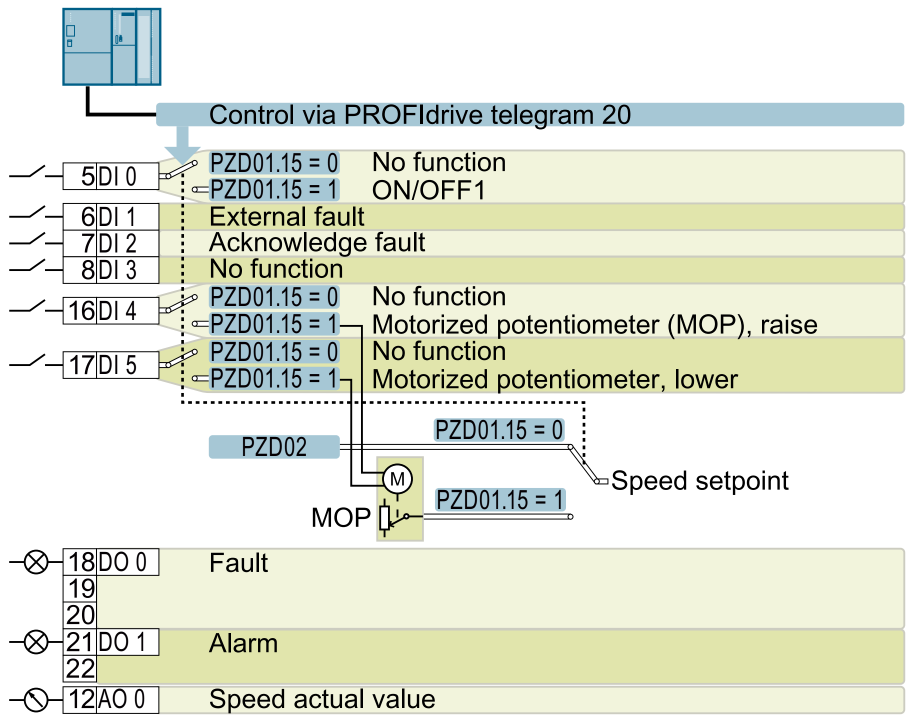


DO 0: p0730, DO 1: p0731   AO 0: p0771[0]   DI 0: r0722.0, …, DI 5: r0722.5   AI 0: r0755[0]

Speed setpoint (main setpoint): p1070[0] = 755[0]

Designation in the BOP-2: ASPS

Default setting 14: "Process industry with fieldbus"



DO 0: p0730, DO 1: p0731 AO 0: p0771[0] DI 0: r0722.0, …, DI 5: r0722.5

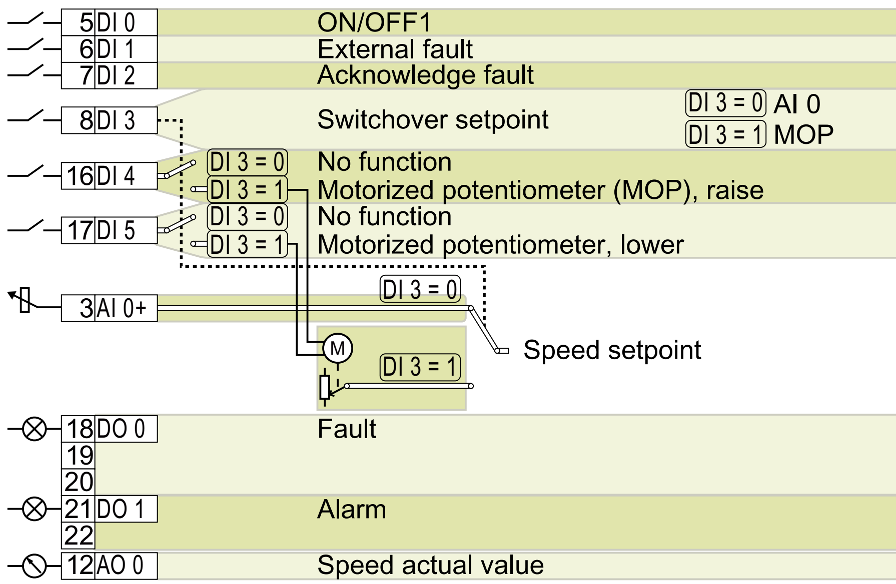
Motorized potentiometer setpoint after ramp-function generator: r1050

Speed setpoint (main setpoint): p1070[0] = 2050[1], p1070[1] = 1050

Switch controller via PZD01, bit 15: p0810 = r2090.15

Designation in the BOP-2: Proc Fb

Default setting 15: "Process industry"



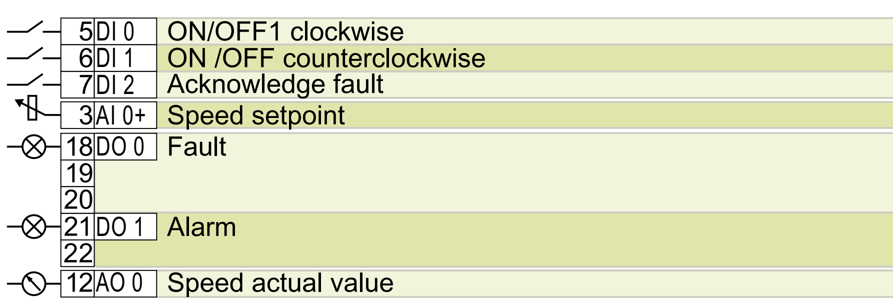
DO 0: p0730, DO 1: p0731 AO 0: p0771[0] DI 0: r0722.0, …, DI 5: r0722.5 AI 0: r0755[0]

Motorized potentiometer setpoint after ramp-function generator: r1050

Speed setpoint (main setpoint): p1070[0] = 755[0], p1070[1] = 1050

Designation in the BOP-2: Proc

Default setting 17: "2-wire (forw/backw1)"

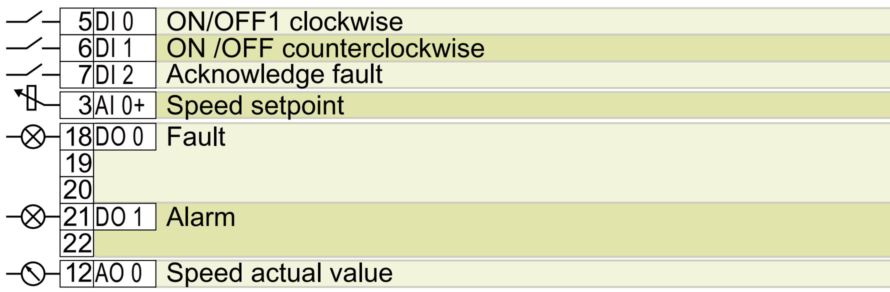


DO 0: p0730, DO 1: p0731 AO 0: p0771[0] DI 0: r0722.0, …, DI 2: r0722.2 AI 0: r0755[0]

Speed setpoint (main setpoint): p1070[0] = 755[0]

Designation in the BOP-2: 2-wIrE 1

Default setting 18: "2-wire (forw/backw2)"

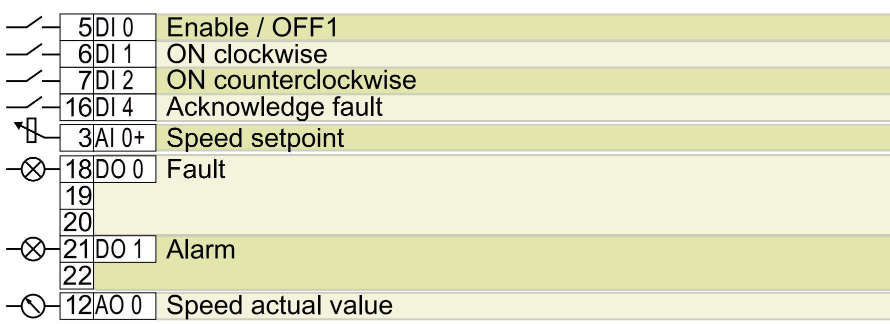


DO 0: p0730, DO 1: p0731	AO 0: p0771[0]	DI 0: r0722.0, …, DI 2: r0722.2	AI 0: r0755[0]

Speed setpoint (main setpoint): p1070[0] = 755[0]

Designation in the BOP-2: 2-wIrE 2

Default setting 19: "3-wire (enable/forw/backw)"

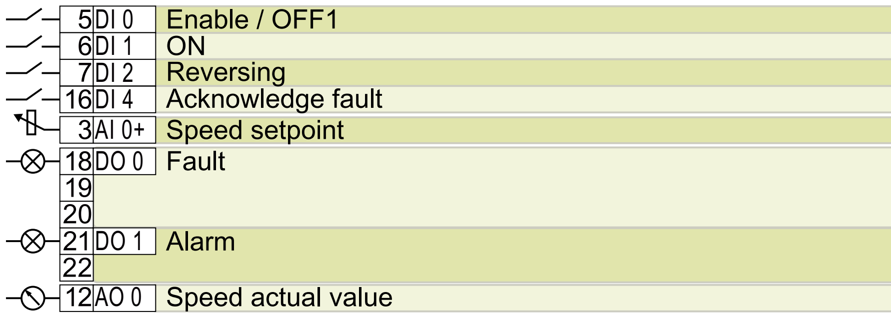


DO 0: p0730, DO 1: p0731	AO 0: p0771[0]	DI 0: r0722.0, …, DI 4: r0722.4	AI 0: r0755[0]

Speed setpoint (main setpoint): p1070[0] = 755[0]

Designation in the BOP-2: 3-wIrE 1

Default setting 20: "3-wire (enable/on/reverse)"

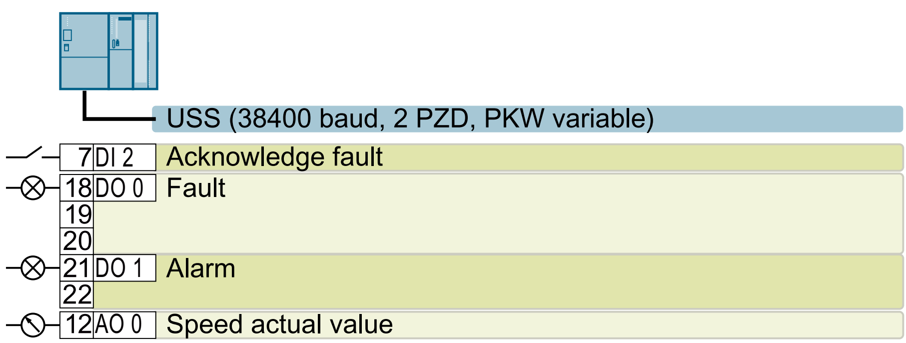


DO 0: p0730, DO 1: p0731 AO 0: p0771[0] DI 0: r0722.0, …, DI 4: r0722.4 AI 0: r0755[0]

Speed setpoint (main setpoint): p1070[0] = 755[0]

Designation in the BOP-2: 3-wIrE 2

Default setting 21: "USS fieldbus"



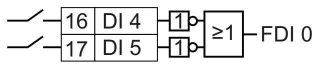
DO 0: p0730, DO 1: p0731 AO 0: p0771[0] DI 2: r0722.2

Speed setpoint (main setpoint): p1070[0] = 2050[1]

Designation in the BOP-2: FB USS

4.9.6 Fail-safe digital input

To enable a safety function via the terminal strip of the inverter, you need a fail-safe digital input.



For specific default settings of the terminal strip, e.g. default setting 2, the inverter combines two digital inputs to form one fail-safe digital input FDI 0.

Which devices are you allowed to connect?

The fail-safe digital input is designed for the following devices:

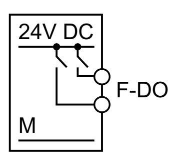
- Connection of safety sensors, e.g. emergency stop command devices or light curtains.
- Connection of pre-processing devices, e.g. fail-safe control systems and safety relays.

Signal state

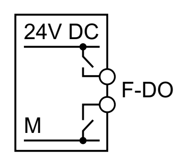
The inverter expects signals with the same state at its fail-safe digital input:

- High signal: The safety function is deselected.
- Low signal: The safety function is selected.

Connecting P/P and P/M-switching fail-safe digital outputs



PP-switching digital output



PM-switching digital output

It is permissible to connect PP and PM-switching safe outputs to a fail-safe digital input.

Fault detection

The inverter compares the two signals of the fail-safe digital input. The inverter thus detects, for example the following faults:

- Cable break
- Defective sensor

The inverter cannot detect the following faults:

- Cross-circuit of the two cables
- Short-circuit between signal cable and 24 V power supply

Special measures to prevent cross-circuits and short-circuits

The routing of cables over longer distances, e.g. between remote control cabinets, increases the risk of damaging cables. Damaged cables raise the risk of an undetected cross-circuit with power-conducting cables laid in parallel. A cross-circuit can cause interruption to the transfer of safety-related signals.

To reduce the risk of cable damage, you need to lay signal lines in steel pipes.

Special requirements placed on EMC-compliant installation

Use shielded signal cables. Connect the shield at both conductor ends.

In order to connect two or more inverter terminals, use the shortest possible jumpers directly at the terminals themselves.

Bright and dark test

The inverter filters signal changes using bright and dark tests at the fail-safe digital input using an adjustable software filter.

Connecting a fail-safe digital input (Page 451)

4.9.7 Wiring terminal strips

WARNING

Electric shock due to unsuitable power supply

Death or serious injury can result when live parts are touched in the event of a fault.

- For all connections and terminals of the electronic boards, only use power supplies that provide PELV (Protective Extra Low Voltage) or SELV (Safety Extra Low Voltage) output voltages.

WARNING

Electric shock due to unsuitable motor temperature evaluation system

Voltage flashovers to the electronics of the inverter can occur in motors without safe electrical separation of the temperature sensors in accordance with IEC 61800-5-1 when the motor develops a fault.

- Install a temperature monitoring relay 3RS1… or 3RS2…
- Evaluate the temperature monitoring relay output using a digital input of the inverter, e.g. using the "External fault" function.

You can find additional information about the temperature monitoring relay on the Internet:

Manual 3RS1 / 3RS2 temperature monitoring relays (https://support.industry.siemens.com/cs/ww/en/view/54999309)

Note

Malfunction caused by incorrect switching states as the result of diagnostic flows in the off state (logical state "0")

In contrast to mechanical switching contacts, e.g. emergency stop switches, diagnostic flows can also flow with semiconductor switches in the off state. If interconnection with digital inputs is faulty, the diagnostic flows can lead to incorrect switching states and thus to a malfunction of the drive.

- Observe the conditions for digital inputs and digital outputs specified in the relevant manufacturers documentation.
- Check the conditions of the digital inputs and digital outputs in regard to the flows in off state. If applicable, connect the digital inputs with suitably dimensioned, external resistors to protect against the reference potential of the digital inputs.

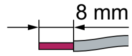
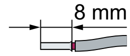
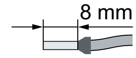
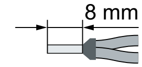
NOTICE

Overvoltages for long signal cables

Using long cables at the inverter's digital inputs and 24 V power supply can lead to overvoltage during switching operations. Overvoltages can damage the inverter.

- If you use cables of more than 30 m at the digital inputs and 24 V power supply, connect an overvoltage protection element between the terminal and the associated reference potential.
  We recommend using the Weidmüller overvoltage protection terminal with designation MCZ OVP TAZ DIODE 24VDC.

Table 4-9 Permissible cables and wiring options

Solid or finely stranded cable	Flexible conductor with non-insulated end sleeve	Flexible conductor with non-insulated end sleeve	Two finely stranded cables with the same cross-section with partially insulated twin end sleeves
 8 mm 0.5 ... 1.5 mm^2	 8 mm 0.5 ... 1.0 mm^2	 8 mm 0.5 mm^2	 8 mm 2 * 0.5 mm^2

Wiring the terminal strip to ensure EMC

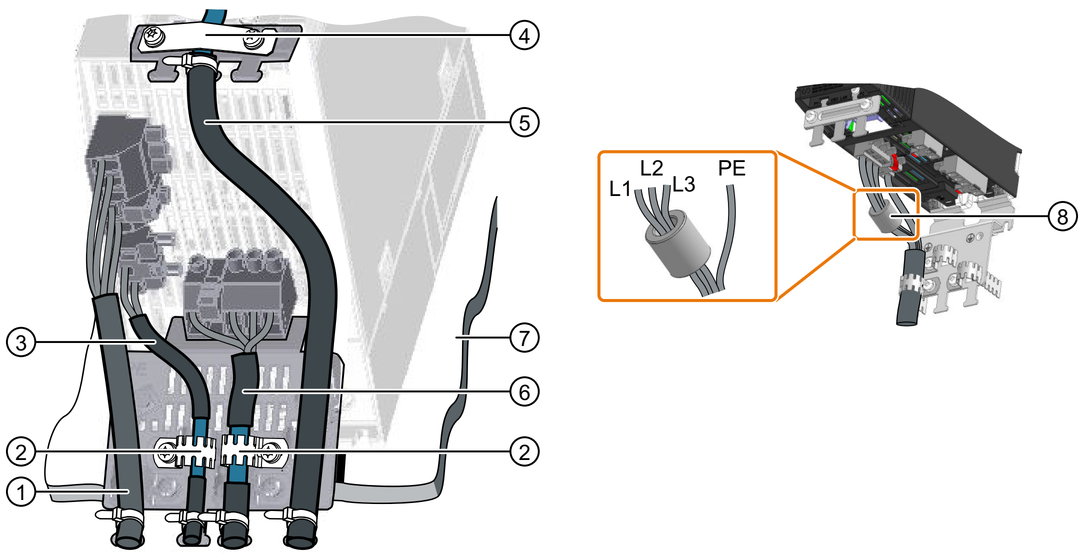
- If you use shielded cables, then you must connect the shield to the mounting plate of the control cabinet or with the shield support of the inverter through a good electrical connection and a large surface area.
- Use the shield connection plate of the inverter as strain relief.

Further information about EMC-compliant wiring is available in the Internet:EMC installation guideline (http://support.automation.siemens.com/WW/view/en/60612658)

4.9.7.1 Connecting the cable shields (FSAA … FSC)

For EMC-compatible wiring, you must use shielded cables to the motor and to the braking resistor. Connect the cable shields to the shield plate of the inverter. The shield support for inverter FSA is displayed as an example.

A ferrite core in the power cable is additionally required for the inverter FSAA, 2.2 kW.



① Unshielded line cable
② Toothed tapes on the shield plate of the inverter
③ Shielded cable to the braking resistor
④ Shield clamp for the cable to the terminal strip on the shield plate of the inverter
⑤ Shielded cables to the terminal strip, to the fieldbus and to the motor temperature sensor
⑥ Shielded motor cable
⑦ Unlacquered, good electrically conducting mounting plate
⑧ Supplied ferrite core in the line cable, relevant only for FSAA, 2.2 kW (6SL3210-1KE15-8A . 2)

Figure 4-29 EMC-compliant wiring shown using the example of a frame size A and frame size AA inverter

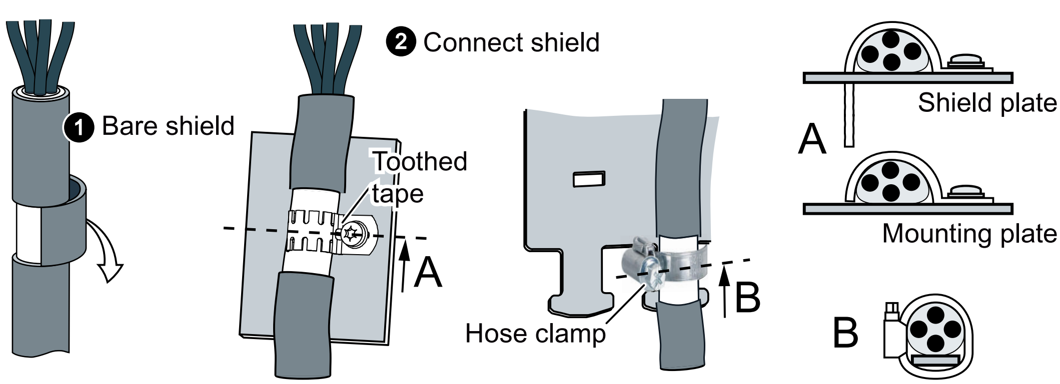


Figure 4-30 EMC-compliant shield connection

4.9.7.2 Connecting cable shields (FSD … FSF)

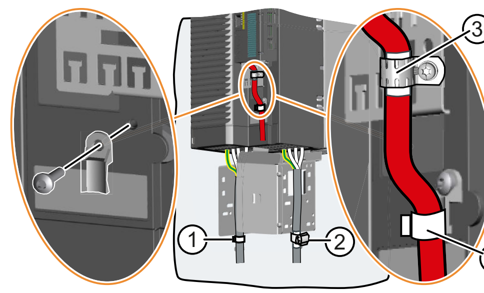
Connect cables at the inverter so that they are EMC compliant

Attach the cable tie holders to the Power Module as shown to the left in the diagram before you establish the connections.

Fix the line connecting cable using a cable tie as shown in ①.

Fix the shield of the motor connecting cable using a hose clamp (②).

Connect the shield of the control cable with the shield plate of the Control Unit (③) using a steel band. Also attach the control cable to the Power Module using a cable tie (④).



4.9.8 Fieldbus interfaces

Fieldbus interfaces of the Control Units

The Control Units are available in different versions for communication with higher-level controls with the subsequently listed fieldbus interfaces:

Fieldbus	Profiles			S7 communication[2)]	Control Unit
	PROFIdrive	PROFIsafe[1)]	PROFIenergy[2)]		
PROFINET	✓	✓	✓	✓	G120C PN
EtherNet/IP[2)]	---			---	
PROFIBUS	✓	✓	---	✓	G120C DP
USS[2)]	---			---	G120C USS/MB
Modbus RTU[2)]	---			---	

[1)]Information on PROFIsafe can be found in the "Safety Integrated" function manual.

[2)]Information about these fieldbuses, profiles and communication types can be found in the "Fieldbus" function manual.

Overview of the manuals (Page 459)

4.9.9 Connecting the inverter to PROFINET

4.9.9.1 Communication via PROFINET IO and Ethernet

You can either integrate the inverter in a PROFINET network or communicate with the inverter via Ethernet.

The inverter in PROFINET IO operation

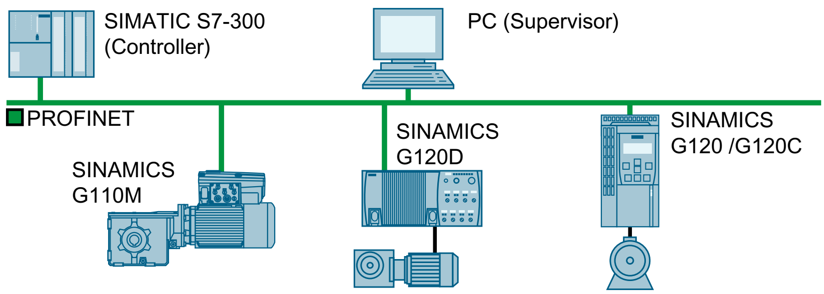


Figure 4-31 The inverter in PROFINET IO operation

The inverter supports the following functions:

- RT
- IRT: The inverter forwards the clock synchronism, but does not support clock synchronism.
- MRP: Media redundancy, impulsed with 200 ms. Requirement: Ring topology
- MRPD: Media redundancy, bumpless. Requirement: IRT and the ring topology created in the control
- Diagnostic alarms in accordance with the error classes specified in the PROFIdrive profile.
- Device replacement without removable data storage medium
- Shared Device for Control Units with fail-safe functions

The inverter as Ethernet node

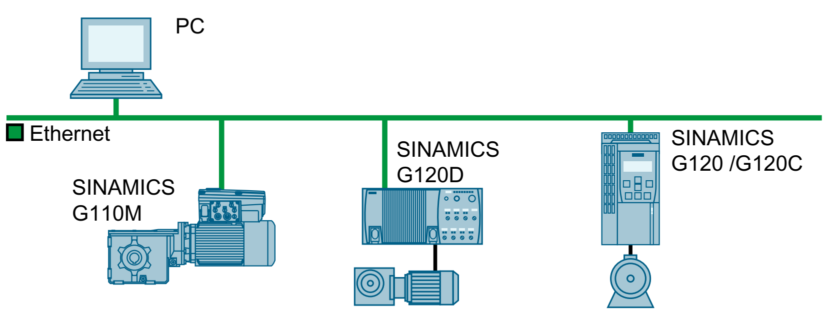


Figure 4-32 The inverter as Ethernet node

Further information on the operation as Ethernet nodes can be found in the Function Manual "Fieldbuses".

Overview of the manuals (Page 459)

Further information on PROFINET

Further information on PROFINET can be found on the Internet:

- PROFINET – the Ethernet standard for automation (http://w3.siemens.com/mcms/automation/en/industrial-communications/profinet/Pages/Default.aspx)
- PROFINET system description (https://support.industry.siemens.com/cs/ww/en/view/19292127)

4.9.9.2 Connecting the PROFINET cable to the inverter

Procedure

To connect the inverter to a control via PROFINET, proceed as follows:

1. Integrate the inverter in the bus system (e.g. ring topology) of the control using PROFINET cables and the two PROFINET sockets X150-P1 and X150-P2.
   Overview of the interfaces (Page 81)
   The maximum permitted cable length from the previous station and to the next one is 100 m.
2. Externally supply the inverter with 24 VDC through terminals 31 and 32.
   The external 24 V supply is only required if communications with the control should also run when the line voltage is switched off.

You have connected the inverter to the control using PROFINET.

Communication with the controller even when the supply voltage on the Power Module is switched off

You must supply the Control Unit with 24 V DC at terminals 31 and 32 if you wish to maintain communication with the control system when the line voltage is switched off.

In the case of brief interruptions of the 24 V power supply, the inverter may signal a fault without communications with the control system being interrupted.

4.9.9.3 What do you have to set for communication via PROFINET?

Configuring PROFINET communication

Proceed as follows to configure the PROFINET communication between the IO Controller and the inverter as IO Device:

1. Configure the IO Controller and the IO Device with an engineering system, e.g. with HW-Config.
   If required, install the GSDML file of the inverter in the engineering system.
   Installing GSDML (Page 107)
2. Load the configuration data into the IO Controller.

Device name

In addition to the MAC address and IP address, PROFINET also uses the device name to identify PROFINET devices. The device name must be unique across the PROFINET network.

To assign the device name, you need an engineering software, e.g. HW-Config or STARTER.

The inverter saves the device name on the inserted memory card.

IP address

In addition to the device name, PROFINET also uses an IP address.

You have the following options to specify the IP address of the inverter:

- You specify the IP address via an engineering software, e.g. via HW-Config or STARTER.
- The IO Controller assigns an IP address to the inverter.

Telegram

Set the same telegram in the inverter as in the IO Controller. Interconnect the telegrams in the control program of the IO Controller with the signals of your choosing.

Drive control via PROFIBUS or PROFINET (Page 179)

Application examples

You can find application examples for PROFINET communication on the Internet:

Controlling the speed of a SINAMICS G110M/G120/G120C/G120D with S7-300/400F via PROFINET, with Safety Integrated (via terminal) and HMI (https://support.industry.siemens.com/cs/ww/en/view/60441457)

Controlling the speed of a SINAMICS G110M/G120 (Startdrive) with S7-1500 (TO) via PROFINET, with Safety Integrated (via terminal) and HMI (https://support.industry.siemens.com/cs/ww/en/view/78788716)

4.9.9.4 Installing GSDML

Procedure

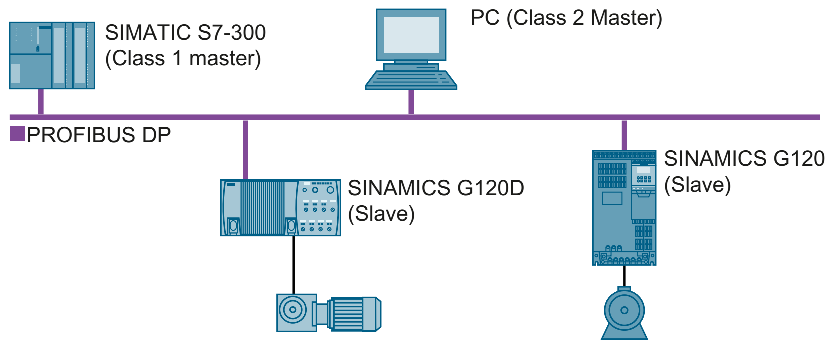
1.
2.

To install the GSDML of the inverter in the engineering system of the controller, proceed as follows:

1. Save the GSDML to your PC .
   - From the Internet: GSDML (https://support.industry.siemens.com/cs/ww/en/view/26641490)
   - From your inverter:
     Insert a memory card into the inverter.
     Set p0804 = 12.
     The inverter writes the GSDML as zipped file (*.zip) into directory /SIEMENS/SINAMICS/DATA/CFG on the memory card.
2. Unzip the GSDML file on your computer.
3. Import the GSDML into the engineering system of the controller.

You have now installed the GSDML in the engineering system of the controller.

4.9.10 Connecting the inverter to PROFIBUS



The PROFIBUS DP interface has the following functions:

- Cyclic communication
- Acyclic communication
- Diagnostic alarms

General information on PROFIBUS DP can be found in the Internet:

- PROFIBUS user organization (http://www.profibus.com/downloads/installation-guide/)
- Information about PROFIBUS DP (http://www.automation.siemens.com/net/html_76/support/printkatalog.htm)

4.9.10.1 Connecting the PROFIBUS cable to the inverter

Procedure

To connect the inverter to a control via PROFIBUS DP, proceed as follows:

1. Integrate the inverter into the bus system (e.g. line topology) of the control using PROFIBUS cables via socket X126.
   Overview of the interfaces (Page 81)
   The maximum permitted cable length to the previous station and the subsequent one is 100 m at a baud rate of 12 Mbit/s.
2. Externally supply the inverter with 24 VDC through terminals 31 and 32.
   The external 24 V supply is only required if communications with the control should also run when the line voltage is switched off.

You have now connected the inverter to the control using PROFIBUS DP.

Communication with the controller even when the supply voltage on the Power Module is switched off

You must supply the Control Unit with 24 V DC at terminals 31 and 32 if you wish to maintain communication with the control system when the line voltage is switched off.

In the case of brief interruptions of the 24 V power supply, the inverter may signal a fault without communications with the control system being interrupted.

4.9.10.2 What do you have to set for communication via PROFIBUS?

Configuring PROFIBUS communication

Proceed as follows to configure the communication between the PROFIBUS master and the inverter as PROFIBUS slave:

1. Configure the PROFIBUS master and the PROFIBUS slave with an engineering system, e.g. with HW-Config.
   If required, install the GSD file of the inverter in the engineering system.
   Installing the GSD (Page 110)
2. Load the configuration data into the PROFIBUS master.

Setting the address

Set the address of the PROFIBUS slave.

Setting the address (Page 110)

Setting the telegram

Set the telegram in the inverter as in the PROFIBUS master. Interconnect the telegrams in the control program of the PROFIBUS master with the signals of your choosing.

Drive control via PROFIBUS or PROFINET (Page 179)

Application examples

You can find application examples for PROFIBUS communication on the Internet:

Controlling the speed of a SINAMICS G110M/G120/G120C/G120D with S7-300/400F via PROFINET, with Safety Integrated (via terminal) and HMI (https://support.industry.siemens.com/cs/ww/en/view/60441457)

Controlling the speed of a SINAMICS G110M/G120 (Startdrive) with S7-1500 (TO) via PROFINET, with Safety Integrated (via terminal) and HMI (https://support.industry.siemens.com/cs/ww/en/view/78788716)

4.9.10.3 Installing the GSD

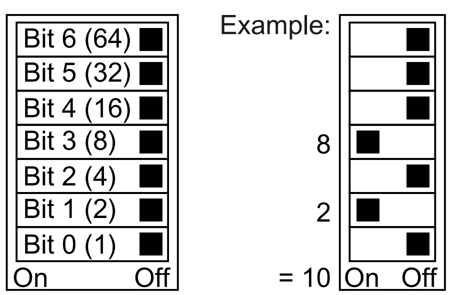
Procedure

To install the GSD of the inverter in the engineering system of the controller, proceed as follows:

1. Save the GSD on your PC via one of the following methods.
   - From the Internet:
     GSD (http://support.automation.siemens.com/WW/view/en/22339653/133100)
   - From your inverter:
     Insert a memory card into the inverter and then set p0804 = 12.
     The inverter writes the GSD as zipped file (*.zip) into directory /SIEMENS/SINAMICS/DATA/CFG on the memory card.
2. Unzip the GSD file on your computer.
3. Import the GSD in the engineering system of the controller.

You have now installed the GSD file in the engineering system of the controller.

4.9.10.4 Setting the address



Valid addresses: 1 … 125

You have the following options for setting the PROFIBUS address:

- Using the address switch on the Control Unit:
  The address switch has priority over the other settings.
- With the parameter p0918 (factory setting: p0918 = 126):
  It is only possible to change p0918 if an invalid address is set in the address switch.
- With STARTER or Startdrive:
  Setting is only possible if an invalid address is set in the address switch.

Overview of the interfaces (Page 81)

Procedure

Proceed as follows to set the PROFIBUS address:

1. Set the address using one of the subsequently listed options:
   - Via the address switch
   - On an operator panel via p0918
   - With STARTER or Startdrive
     After you have changed the address in STARTER, select the button "RAM to ROM" .
2. Switch off the inverter supply voltage.

3. Wait until all LEDs on the inverter go dark.
4. Switch on the inverter supply voltage again.
   Your settings become active after switching on.

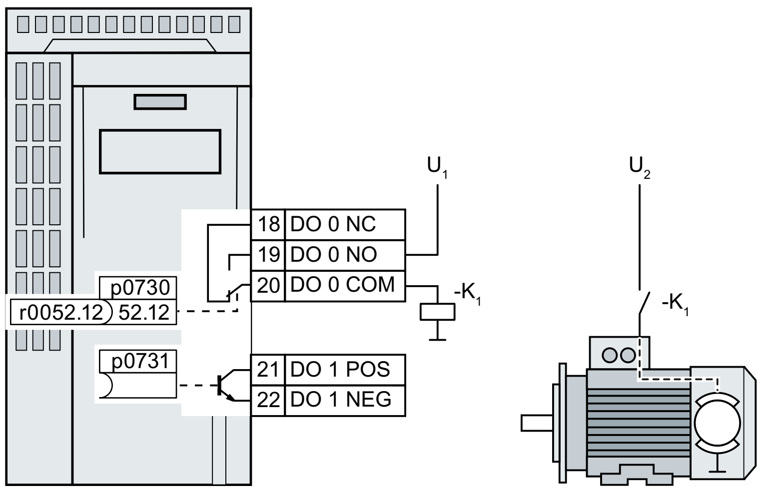
■ You set the PROFIBUS address.

4.10 Connecting a motor holding brake

Connecting a motor holding brake

You can use any inverter digital output to control the motor holding brake.

If the current or voltage rating of the digital output is not sufficient, then you must control the motor holding brake through a coupling relay.



U_1 Power supply for the interface relay

U_2 Power supply for the motor holding brake

Figure 4-33 Connect the motor holding brake to digital output DO 0 of the inverter via interface relay K1.

To define which of the digital outputs of the inverter is used to control the motor holding brake, you must interconnect the corresponding digital output with the brake control signal:

- Digital output DO 0: p0730 = 52.12
- Digital output DO 1: p0731 = 52.12

4.11 Monitoring the temperature of the braking resistor

⚠ WARNING

Fire caused by an unsuitable or incorrectly installed braking resistor

Using an unsuitable or improperly installed braking resistor can cause fires and smoke to develop. Fire and smoke development can cause severe personal injury or material damage.

- Only use braking resistors that are approved for the inverter.
- Install the braking resistor in accordance with regulations.
- Monitor the temperature of the braking resistor.

Procedure

Proceed as follows to monitor the braking resistor temperature:

1. Connect the temperature monitoring system of the braking resistor (terminals T1 and T2 on the braking resistor) to a free digital input on the inverter.

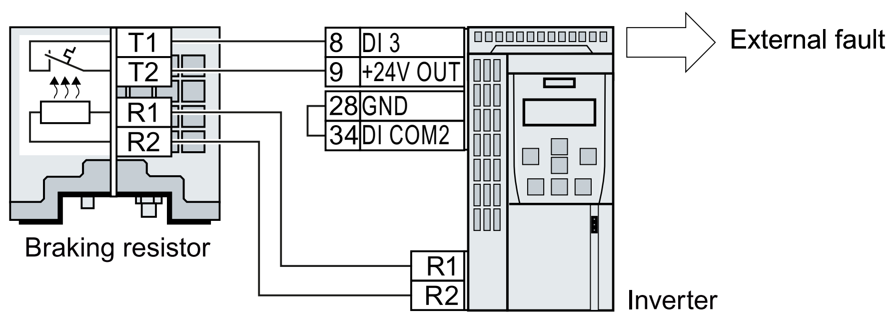


Figure 4-34 Example: Temperature monitoring of the braking resistor via digital input DI 3 on the Control Unit

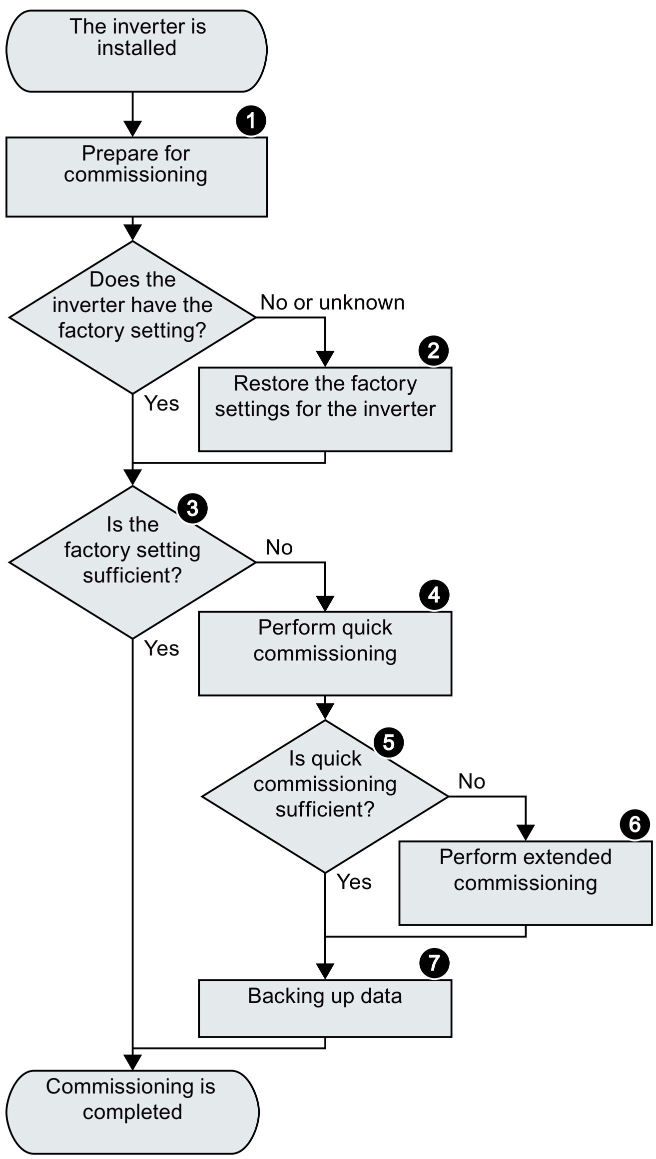
2. Define the function of the digital input used as an external fault with p2106.
   As an example with temperature monitoring via digital input DI 3: p2106 = 722.3.

You have ensured that the temperature is monitored.

Commissioning 5

5.1 Commissioning guidelines

Overview



1. Define the requirements to be met by the drive for your application.
   (Page 117)
2. Restore the factory settings of the inverter if necessary.
   (Page 151)
3. Check if the factory setting of the inverter is sufficient for your application.
   (Page 118)
4. Set the following for quick commissioning of the drive:
   – The closed-loop motor control
   – The inputs and outputs
   – The fieldbus interface
   (Page 120)
5. Check if additional inverter functions are required for the application.
   (Page 157)
6. If necessary, adapt the drive.
   (Page 157)
7. Save your settings.
   (Page 321)

5.2 Tools to commission the inverter

Operator panel

An operator panel is used to commission, troubleshoot and control the inverter, as well as to back up and transfer the inverter settings.

The **Intelligent Operator Panel (IOP-2)** can either be snapped onto an inverter, or is available as handheld device with a connecting cable to the inverter. The graphics-capable plain text display of the IOP-2 enables intuitive operation and diagnostics of the inverter.

Additional information on the IOP-2 is available in the Internet:

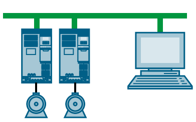
Compatibility of the IOP and Control Units (http://support.automation.siemens.com/WW/view/en/67273266)

The **Operator Panel BOP-2** for snapping onto the inverter has a two-line display for diagnostics and operating the inverter.

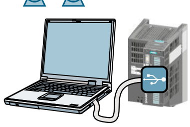
Operating Instructions of the BOP-2 and IOP-2 operator panels:

Overview of the manuals (Page 459)

PC tools



STARTER and **Startdrive** are PC tools that are used to commission, troubleshoot and control the inverter, as well as to back up and transfer the inverter settings. You can connect the PC with the inverter via USB or via the PROFIBUS / PROFINET fieldbus.



Connecting cable (3 m) between PC and inverter: Article number 6SL3255-0AA00-2CA0

STARTER DVD: Article number 6SL3072-0AA00-0AG0

Startdrive DVD: Article number 6SL3072-4CA02-1XG0

Startdrive, system requirements and download (http://support.automation.siemens.com/WW/view/en/68034568)

STARTER, system requirements and download (http://support.automation.siemens.com/WW/view/en/26233208)

Startdrive tutorial (http://support.automation.siemens.com/WW/view/en/73598459)

STARTER videos (http://www.automation.siemens.com/mcms/mc-drives/en/low-voltage-inverter/sinamics-g120/videos/Pages/videos.aspx)

5.3 Preparing for commissioning

5.3.1 Collecting motor data

Data for a standard induction motor

Before starting commissioning, you must know the following data:

- **Which motor is connected to the inverter?**
  Note down the Article No. of the motor and the motor's nameplate data.
  If available, note down the motor code on the motor's nameplate.

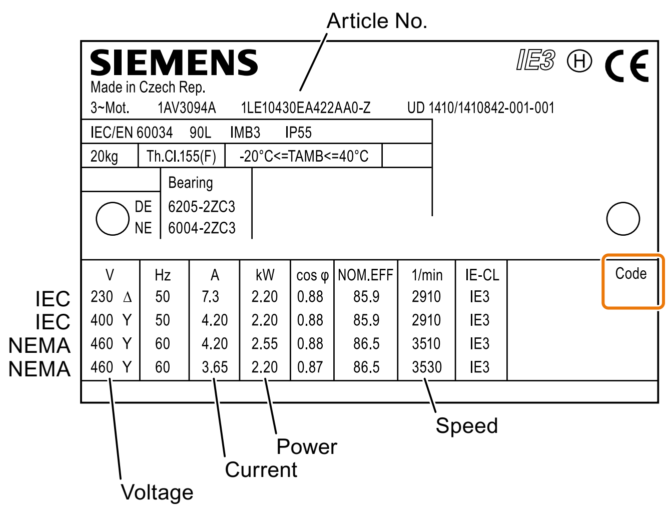


Figure 5-1 Example of the rating plate for a standard induction motor

- **In which region of the world is the motor to be used?**
  - Europe IEC: 50 Hz [kW]
  - North America NEMA: 60 Hz [hp] or 60 Hz [kW]
- **How is the motor connected?**
  Pay attention to the connection of the motor (star connection [Y] or delta connection [Δ]).
  Note the appropriate motor data for connecting.

5.3.2 Inverter factory setting

Motor

With its factory settings, the inverter is set up for an induction motor suitable for the power rating of the Power Module.

Inverter interfaces

The inputs and outputs and the fieldbus interface of the inverter have specific functions when set to the factory settings.

Factory setting of the interfaces (Page 88)

Switching the motor on and off

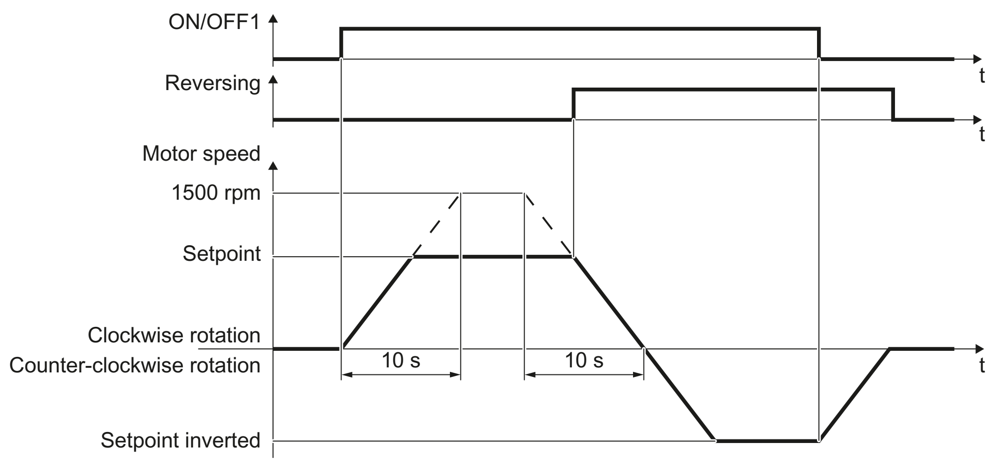


Figure 5-2 Switching on and switching off the motor and reversing in the factory setting

The inverter is set in the factory as follows:

- After the ON command, the motor accelerates with a ramp-up time of 10 s (referred to 1500 rpm) to its speed setpoint.
- After the OFF1 command, the motor brakes down to standstill with 10 s ramp-down time.
- The motor direction of rotation reverses with the reversing command.

The ramp-up and ramp-down times define the maximum motor acceleration when the speed setpoint changes. The ramp-up and ramp-down time is derived from the time between motor standstill and the maximum speed, or between the maximum speed and motor standstill.

Switching the motor on and off in the jog mode

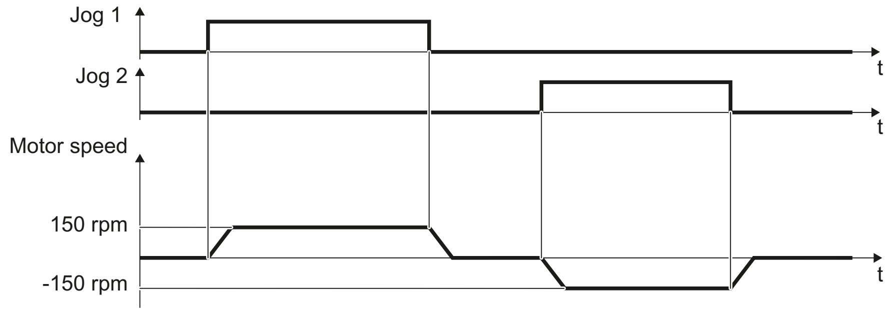


Figure 5-3 Jogging the motor with the factory settings

In the case of inverters with a PROFIBUS or PROFINET interface, operation can be switched via digital input DI 3. The motor is either switched on and off via PROFIBUS – or operated in jog mode via its digital inputs.

When a control command is received at the respective digital input, the motor rotates at ±150 rpm. The same ramp-up and ramp-down times as described above apply.

5.3.3 Minimum and maximum speed

Minimum and maximum speed

- Minimum speed - factory setting 0 [rpm]
  The minimum speed is the lowest speed of the motor independent of the speed setpoint. A minimum speed > 0 is, for example, useful for fans or pumps.
- Maximum speed - factory setting 1500 [rpm]
  The inverter limits the motor speed to the maximum speed.

Operate the inverter with the factory setting

We recommend that you execute quick commissioning. For quick commissioning, you must adapt the inverter to the connected motor by setting the motor data in the inverter.

In basic applications with a standard induction motor, you can attempt to operate the drive with a rated power of < 18.5 kW without carry out an additional commissioning steps. Check whether the control quality of the drive without commissioning is adequate for the requirements of the application.

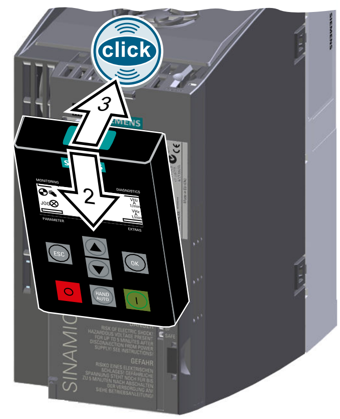
5.4 Quick commissioning using the BOP-2 operator panel

Plug Basic Operator Panel BOP-2 into the inverter

Procedure

To plug Basic Operator Panel BOP-2 onto the inverter, proceed as follows:

1. Remove the blanking cover of the inverter.
2. Locate the lower edge of the BOP-2 housing in the matching recess of the inverter housing.
3. Press the BOP-2 onto the inverter until you hear the latching mechanism on the inverter housing engage.



You have plugged the BOP-2 onto the inverter

When you power up the inverter, the BOP-2 will be ready for operation.

5.4.1 Overview of quick commissioning

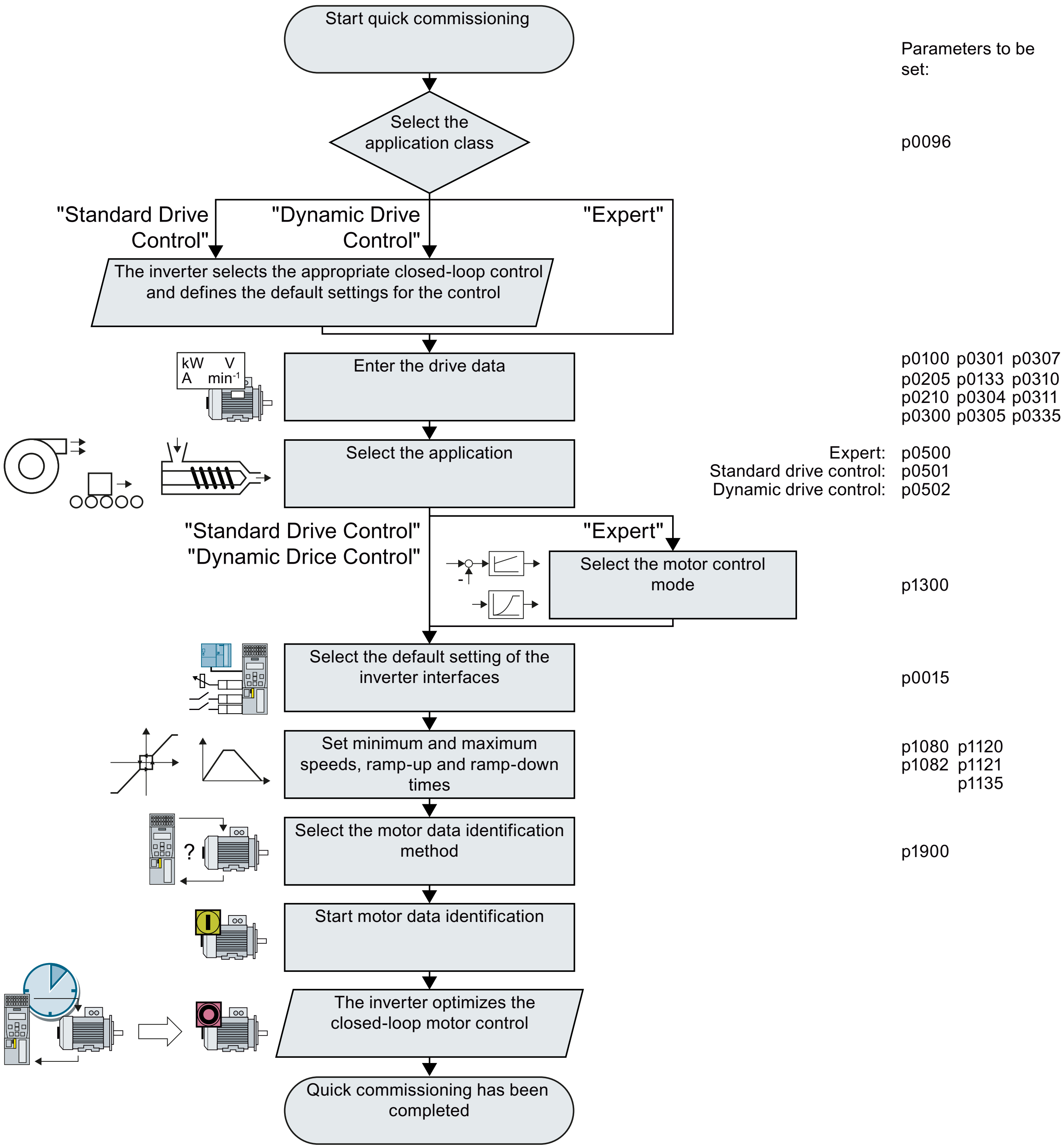


Figure 5-4 Quick commissioning using the BOP-2 operator panel

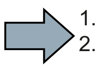
5.4.2 Start quick commissioning and select the application class

Starting quick commissioning

Requirements

- The power supply is switched on.
- The operator panel displays setpoints and actual values.

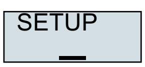
Procedure



Proceed as follows to carry out quick commissioning:

Press the ESC key.

Press one of the arrow keys until the BOP-2 displays the "SETUP" menu.



To start quick commissioning, in the "SETUP" menu, press the OK key.

If you wish to restore all of the parameters to the factory setting before the quick commissioning, proceed as follows:

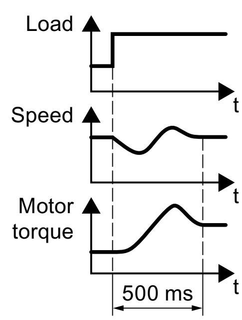
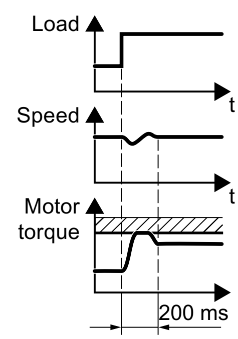
1. Press the OK key.
2. Switchover the display using an arrow key: nO → YES
3. Press the OK key.

When selecting an application class, the inverter assigns the motor control with the appropriate default settings:

- Standard Drive Control (Page 124)
- Dynamic Drive Control (Page 126)
- Expert (Page 128)

Select the suitable application class

When selecting an application class, the inverter assigns the appropriate settings to the motor control.

Application class	Standard Drive Control	Dynamic Drive Control
Motors that can be operated	Induction motors	Induction and synchronous motors
Application examples	• Pumps, fans, and compressors with flow characteristic • Wet or dry blasting technology • Mills, mixers, kneaders, crushers, agitators • Horizontal conveyor technology (conveyor belts, roller conveyors, chain conveyors) • Basic spindles	• Pumps and compressors with displacement machines • Rotary furnaces • Extruder • Centrifuges
Properties	• Typical settling time after a speed change: 100 ms … 200 ms • Typical settling time after a load surge: 500 ms  • Standard Drive Control is suitable for the following requirements: – All motor power ratings – Ramp-up time 0 → rated speed (depending on the motor power rating): 1 s (0.1 kW) … 10 s (45 kW) – Applications with increasing load torque without load surges • Standard Drive Control is insensitive with respect to imprecise setting of the motor data	• Typical settling time after a speed change: < 100 ms • Typical settling time after a load surge: 200 ms  • Dynamic Drive Control controls and limits the motor torque • Typically achieves a torque accuracy: ± 5 % for 15 % … 100 % of the rated speed • We recommend Dynamic Drive Control for the following applications: – Motor power ratings > 11 kW – For load surges 10 % … >100 % of the rated motor torque • Dynamic Drive Control is necessary for a ramp-up time 0 → rated speed (dependent on the rated motor power): < 1 s (0.1 kW) … < 10 s (132 kW).

Application class	Standard Drive Control	Dynamic Drive Control
Max. output frequency	550 Hz	240 Hz
Commissioning	• Unlike "Dynamic Drive Control," no speed controller needs to be set • In comparison to setting "EXPERT": – Simplified commissioning using predefined motor data – Reduced number of parameters • Standard Drive Control is preset for Power Modules, frame size A … frame size C	• Fewer number of parameters when compared to setting "EXPERT" • Dynamic Drive Control is preset for Power Modules, frame size D … frame size F

5.4.3 Standard Drive Control

EUR/USA
P100

Select the motor standard:

- KW 50HZ: IEC
- HP 60HZ: NEMA
- KW 60HZ: IEC 60 Hz

INV VOLT
P210

Set the inverter supply voltage.

MOT TYPE
P300

Select the motor type. If a 5-digit motor code is stamped on the motor rating plate, select the corresponding motor type with motor code.

Motors without motor code stamped on the rating plate:

- INDUCT: Third-party induction motor
- 1L… IND: 1LE1, 1LG6, 1LA7, 1LA9 induction motors

Motors with motor code stamped on the rating plate:

- 1LE1 IND 100: 1LE1 . 9
- 1PC1 IND: 1PC1
- 1PH8 IND: Induction motor

Depending on the inverter, the motor list in BOP-2 can deviate from the list shown above.

MOT CODE
P301

If you have selected a motor type with motor code, you must now enter the motor code. The inverter assigns the following motor data corresponding to the motor code.

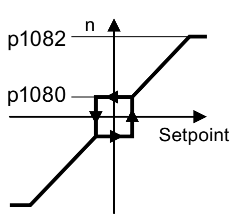
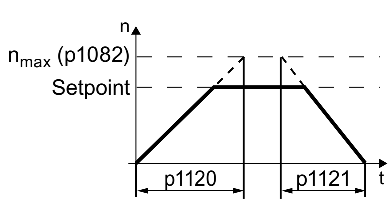
If you do not know the motor code, then you must set the motor code = 0, and enter motor data from p0304 and higher from the rating plate.

87 HZ

87 Hz motor operation The BOP-2 only indicates this step if you selected IEC as the motor standard (EUR/USA, P100 = KW 50HZ).

MOT VOLT
P304

Rated motor voltage

MOT CURR P305	Rated motor current
MOT POW P307	Rated motor power
MOT FREQ P310	Rated motor frequency
MOT RPM P311	Rated motor speed
MOT COOL P335	Motor cooling: • SELF: Natural cooling • FORCED: Forced-air cooling • LIQUID: Liquid cooling • NO FAN: Without fan
TEC APPL P501	Select the basic setting for the motor control: • VEC STD: Constant load; typical applications include conveyor drives • PUMP FAN: Speed-dependent load; typical applications include pumps and fans
MAc PAr P15	Select the default setting for the interfaces of the inverter that is suitable for your application. Default setting of the interfaces (Page 91)
MIN RPM P1080 MAX RPM P1082	 Figure 5-5 Minimum and maximum motor speed
RAMP UP P1120 RAMP DWN P1121	 Figure 5-6 Ramp-up and ramp-down time of the motor
OFF3 RP P1135	Ramp-down time after the OFF3 command

MOT ID
P1900

Motor data identification Select the method which the inverter uses to measure the data of the connected motor:

- OFF: No motor data identification
- STIL ROT: Measure the motor data at standstill and with the motor rotating.
  The inverter switches off the motor after the motor data identification has been completed.
- STILL: Recommended setting: Measure the motor data at standstill.
  The inverter switches off the motor after the motor data identification has been completed.
  Select this setting if the motor cannot freely rotate, e.g. for a mechanically limited traversing range.
- ROT: Measure the motor data while the motor is rotating.
  The inverter switches off the motor after the motor data identification has been completed.
- ST RT OP: setting same as STIL ROT.
  The motor accelerates to the currently set setpoint after the motor data identification.
- STILL OP: setting same as STILL.
  The motor accelerates to the currently set setpoint after the motor data identification.

FINISH

Complete quick commissioning as follows:

1. Switchover the display using an arrow key: nO → YES
2. Press the OK key.

You have completed quick commissioning.

5.4.4 Dynamic Drive Control

EUR/USA
P100

Select the motor standard:

- KW 50HZ: IEC
- HP 60HZ: NEMA
- KW 60HZ: IEC 60 Hz

INV VOLT
P210

Set the inverter supply voltage.

MOT TYPE
P300

Select the motor type. If a 5-digit motor code is stamped on the motor rating plate, select the corresponding motor type with motor code.

Motors without motor code stamped on the rating plate:

- INDUCT: Third-party induction motor
- 1L… IND: 1LE1, 1LG6, 1LA7, 1LA9 induction motors

Motors with motor code stamped on the rating plate:

- 1LE1 IND 100: 1LE1 . 9
- 1PC1 IND: 1PC1
- 1PH8 IND: Induction motor

Depending on the inverter, the motor list in BOP-2 can deviate from the list shown above.

MOT CODE P301__	If you have selected a motor type with motor code, you must now enter the motor code. The inverter assigns the following motor data corresponding to the motor code. If you do not know the motor code, then you must set the motor code = 0, and enter motor data from p0304 and higher from the rating plate.
87 HZ __	87 Hz motor operation The BOP-2 only indicates this step if you selected IEC as the motor standard (EUR/USA, P100 = KW 50HZ).
MOT VOLT P304__	Rated motor voltage
MOT CURR P305__	Rated motor current
MOT POW P307__	Rated motor power
MOT FREQ P310__	Rated motor frequency
MOT RPM P311__	Rated motor speed
MOT COOL P335__	Motor cooling: • SELF: Natural cooling • FORCED: Forced-air cooling • LIQUID: Liquid cooling • NO FAN: Without fan
TEC APPL P502__	Select the basic setting for the motor control: • OP LOOP: Recommended setting for standard applications • CL LOOP: Recommended setting for applications with short ramp-up and ramp-down times. • HVY LOAD: Recommended setting for applications with a high break loose torque.
MAc PAr P15 __	Select the default setting for the interfaces of the inverter that is suitable for your application. Default setting of the interfaces (Page 91)
MIN RPM P1080_ MAX RPM P1082_	

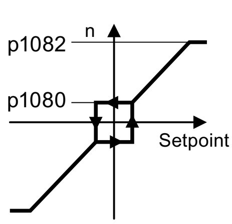


Figure 5-7 Minimum and maximum motor speed

RAMP UP
P1120

RAMP DWN
P1121

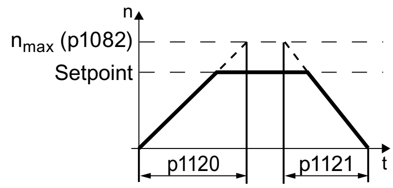


Figure 5-8 Ramp-up and ramp-down time of the motor

OFF3 RP
P1135

Ramp-down time after the OFF3 command

MOT ID
P1900

Motor data identification: Select the method which the inverter uses to measure the data of the connected motor:

- OFF: Motor data is not measured.
  STIL ROT: Recommended setting: Measure the motor data at standstill and with the motor rotating.
  The inverter switches off the motor after the motor data identification has been completed.
- STILL: Default setting: Measure the motor data at standstill.
  The inverter switches off the motor after the motor data identification has been completed.
  Select this setting if the motor cannot freely rotate, e.g. for a mechanically limited traversing range.
- ROT: Measure the motor data while it is rotating.
  The inverter switches off the motor after the motor data identification has been completed.
- ST RT OP: setting same as STIL ROT.
  The motor accelerates to the currently set setpoint after the motor data identification.
- STILL OP: setting same as STILL.
  The motor accelerates to the currently set setpoint after the motor data identification.

FINISH

Complete quick commissioning:

- Switch over the display using an arrow key: nO → YES
- Press the OK key.

You have completed quick commissioning.

5.4.5 Expert

EUR/USA
P100

Select the motor standard:

- KW / 50HZ: IEC
- HP / 60HZ: NEMA
- KW / 60HZ: IEC 60 Hz

LOAD TYP
P210

Specify the overload capability of the inverter:

- HIGH OVL: Load cycle with "High Overload"
- LOW OVL: Load cycle with "Low Overload"

High Overload and Low Overload (Page 403)

INV VOLT P210___	Set the supply voltage of the inverter.
MOT TYPE P300___	Select the motor type. If a 5-digit motor code is stamped on the motor rating plate, select the corresponding motor type with motor code. Motors without motor code stamped on the rating plate: • INDUCT: Third-party induction motor • 1L… IND: 1LE1, 1LG6, 1LA7, 1LA9 induction motors Motors with motor code stamped on the rating plate: • 1LE1 IND 100: 1LE1 . 9 • 1PC1 IND: 1PC1 • 1PH8 IND: Induction motor Depending on the inverter, the motor list in BOP-2 can deviate from the list shown above.
MOT CODE P301___	If you have selected a motor type with motor code, you must now enter the motor code. The inverter assigns the following motor data corresponding to the motor code. If you do not know the motor code, then you must set the motor code = 0, and enter motor data from p0304 and higher from the rating plate.
87 HZ ___	87 Hz motor operation The BOP-2 only indicates this step if you selected IEC as the motor standard (EUR/USA, P100 = KW 50HZ).
MOT VOLT P304___	Rated motor voltage
MOT CURR P305___	Rated motor current
MOT POW P307___	Rated motor power
MOT FREQ P310___	Rated motor frequency
MOT RPM P311___	Rated motor speed
MOT COOL P335___	Motor cooling: • SELF: Natural cooling • FORCED: Forced-air cooling • LIQUID: Liquid cooling • NO FAN: Without fan

TEC APPL
P500__

Select the application:

- VEC STD: In all applications, which do not fit the other setting options.
- PUMP FAN: Applications involving pumps and fans
- SLVC 0HZ: Applications with short ramp-up and ramp-down times. However, this setting is not suitable for hoisting gear and cranes/lifting gear.
- PUMP 0HZ: Setting only for steady-state operation with slow speed changes. We recommend setting VEC STD if load surges in operation cannot be ruled out.

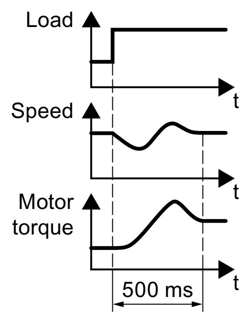
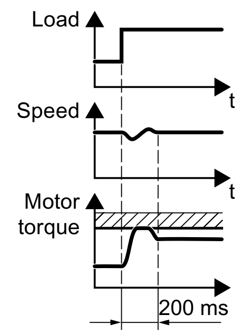
CTRL MOD
P1300_

Select the control mode:

- VF LIN: U/f control with linear characteristic
- VF LIN F: Flux current control (FCC)
- VF QUAD: U/f control with square-law characteristic
- SPD N EN: Encoderless vector control

Select a suitable control mode

Control mode	U/f control or flux current control (FCC)	Encoderless vector control
Motors that can be operated	Induction motors	Induction and synchronous motors
Application examples	• Pumps, fans, and compressors with flow characteristic • Wet or dry blasting technology • Mills, mixers, kneaders, crushers, agitators • Horizontal conveyor technology (conveyor belts, roller conveyors, chain conveyors) • Basic spindles	• Pumps and compressors with displacement machines • Rotary furnaces • Extruder • Centrifuges

Control mode	U/f control or flux current control (FCC)	Encoderless vector control
Properties	• Typical settling time after a speed change: 100 ms … 200 ms • Typical settling time after a load surge: 500 ms  • The control mode is suitable to address the following requirements: – All motor power ratings – Ramp-up time 0 → rated speed (depending on the motor power rating): 1 s (0.1 kW) … 10 s (45 kW) – Applications with increasing load torque without load surges • The control mode is insensitive with respect to imprecise setting of the motor data	• Typical settling time after a speed change: < 100 ms • Typical settling time after a load surge: 200 ms  • The control mode controls and limits the motor torque • Typically achieves a torque accuracy: ± 5 % for 15 % … 100 % of the rated speed • We recommend the control mode for the following applications: – Motor power ratings > 11 kW – For load surges 10 % … >100 % of the rated motor torque • The control mode is necessary for a ramp-up time 0 → rated speed (dependent on the rated motor power): < 1 s (0.1 kW) … < 10 s (132 kW).
Max. output frequency	550 Hz	240 Hz
Torque control	Without torque control	Speed control with lower-level torque control
Commissioning	• Contrary to vector control without encoder, a speed controller does not have to be set.	

MAc PAr
P15 _

Select the default setting for the interfaces of the inverter that is suitable for your application.

Default setting of the interfaces (Page 91)

MIN RPM
P1080_

MAX RPM
P1082_

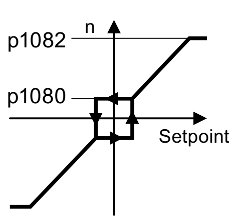


Figure 5-9 Minimum and maximum motor speed

RAMP UP
P1120_

RAMP DWN
P1121_

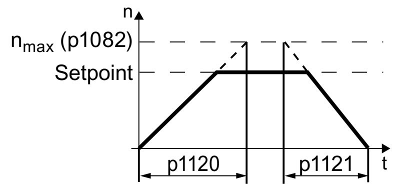


Figure 5-10 Ramp-up and ramp-down time of the motor

OFF3 RP
P1135_

Ramp-down time for the OFF3 command

MOT ID
P1900_

Motor data identification: Select the method which the inverter uses to measure the data of the connected motor:

- OFF: Motor data is not measured.
- STIL ROT: Recommended setting: Measure the motor data at standstill and with the motor rotating. The inverter switches off the motor after the motor data identification has been completed.
- STILL: Measure the motor data at standstill. The inverter switches off the motor after the motor data identification has been completed.
  Select this setting if one of the following cases is applicable:
  - You have selected control mode "SPD N EN", however, the motor cannot freely rotate - for a mechanically limited travel range, for example.
  - You have selected V/f control as control mode, e.g. "VF LIN" or "VF QUAD".
- ROT: Measure the motor data while it is rotating. The inverter switches off the motor after the motor data identification has been completed.
- ST RT OP: setting same as STIL ROT.
  The motor accelerates to the currently set setpoint after the motor data identification.
- STILL OP: setting same as STILL.
  The motor accelerates to the currently set setpoint after the motor data identification.

FINISH
_

Complete quick commissioning:

Switchover the display using an arrow key: nO → YES

Press the OK key.

You have completed quick commissioning.

5.4.6 Identifying the motor data and optimizing the closed-loop control

The inverter has several techniques to automatically identify the motor data and optimize the speed control.

To start the motor data identification routine, you must switch-on the motor via the terminal strip, fieldbus or from the operator panel.

> **WARNING**
>
> **Unexpected machine motion when the motor data identification is active**
>
> For the stationary measurement, the motor can make several rotations. The rotating measurement accelerates the motor up to its rated speed. Secure dangerous machine parts before starting motor data identification:
>
> - Before switching on, ensure that nobody is working on the machine or located within its working area.
> - Secure the machine's work area against unintended access.
> - Lower hanging/suspended loads to the floor.

Requirements

- You selected a method of motor data identification during quick commissioning, e.g. measuring motor data while the motor is stationary.
  When quick commissioning is complete, the inverter issues alarm A07991.
- The motor has cooled down to the ambient temperature.
  An excessively high motor temperature falsifies the motor data identification results.

Procedure when using the BOP-2 operator panel

1.
2.

To start the motor data identification, proceed as follows:

HAND
AUTO

Press the HAND/AUTO key.

The BOP-2 displays the symbol indicating manual operation.

Switch on the motor.

MOT-ID

During motor data identification, "MOT-ID" flashes on the BOP-2.

If the inverter again outputs alarm A07991, then it waits for a new ON command to start the rotating measurement.

If the inverter does not output alarm A07991, switch off the motor as described below, and switch over the inverter control from HAND to AUTO.

Switch on the motor to start the rotating measurement.

During motor data identification, "MOT-ID" flashes on the BOP-2.

The motor data identification can take up to 2 minutes depending on the rated motor power.

Depending on the setting, after motor data identification has been completed, the inverter switches off the motor - or it accelerates it to the setpoint.

If required, switch off the motor.

Switch the inverter control from HAND to AUTO.

You have completed the motor data identification.

5.5 Quick commissioning with a PC

The screen forms that are shown in this manual show generally valid examples. The number of setting options available in screen forms depends on the particular inverter type.

Requirements

To be able to perform quick commissioning using a PC, you need to do the following:

1. Creating a project
2. Integrating the inverter into the project
3. Go online and start the quick commissioning

5.5.1 Creating a project

Creating a new project

Procedure

To create a new project, proceed as follows:

1. Start the commissioning software STARTER or Startdrive.
2. In the menu, select "Project" → "New…".
3. Specify a name of your choice for the project.

You have created a new project.

5.5.2 Transfer inverters connected via USB into the project

Integrating the inverter into the project

Procedure

Proceed as follows to transfer an inverter connected via USB to your project:

1. Switch on the inverter supply voltage.
2. First insert a USB cable into your PC and then into the inverter.
3. The PC operating system installs the USB driver when you are connecting the inverter and PC together for the first time.
4. Press the "Accessible nodes" button.

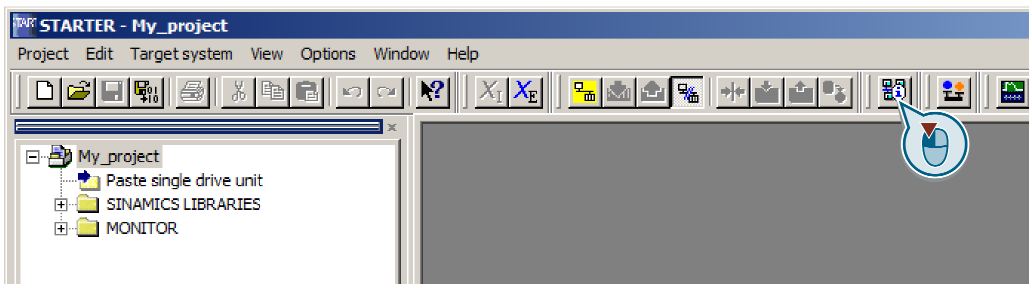


Figure 5-11 "Accessible nodes" in STARTER

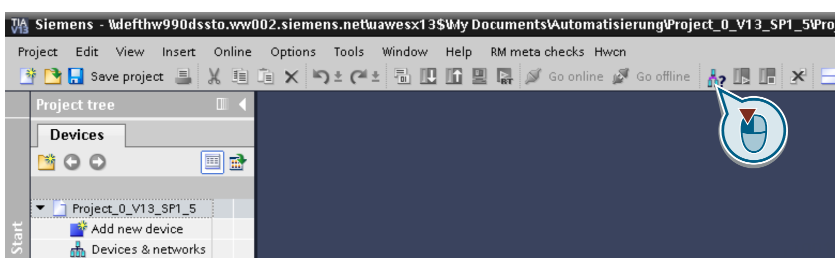


Figure 5-12 "Accessible nodes" in Startdrive

5. When the USB interface is appropriately set, then the "Accessible nodes" screen form shows the inverters that can be accessed.

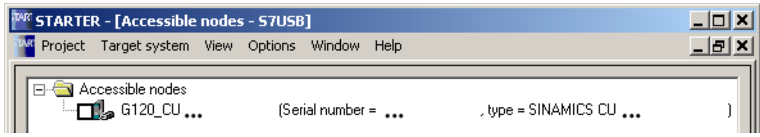


Figure 5-13 Inverters found in STARTER

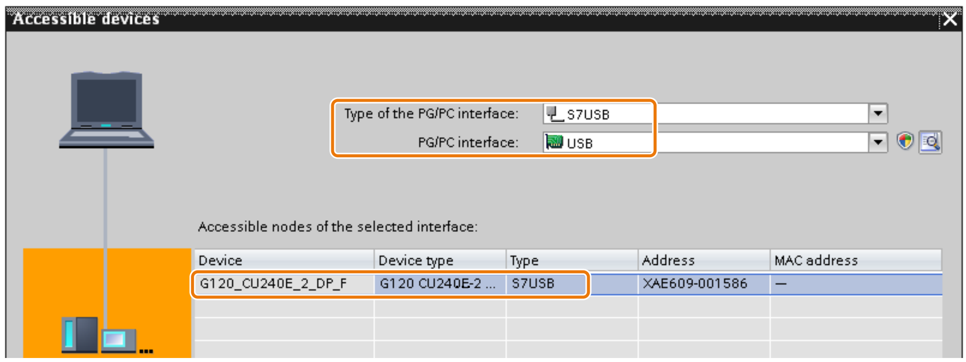


Figure 5-14 Inverters found in Startdrive

If you have not correctly set the USB interface, then the following "No additional nodes found" message is displayed. In this case, follow the description below.

6. Further procedure dependent on the commissioning software used:
   - STARTER:
     - Select the inverter ☑.
     - Press the "Accept" button.
   - Startdrive:
     Transfer the inverter into the project using the menu: "Online - Upload device as new station (hardware and software)".

■ You have transferred an inverter accessible via the USB interface into your project.

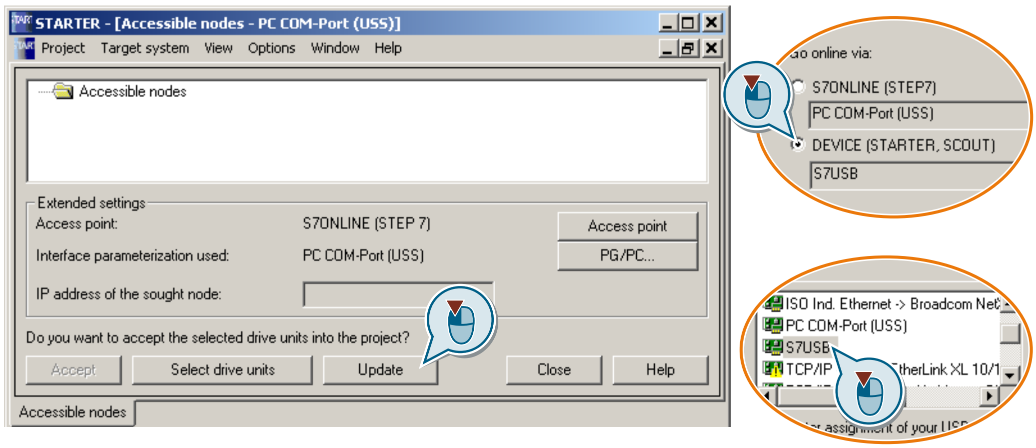
Setting the USB interface in STARTER

Procedure

1.
2.

Proceed as follows to set the USB interface in STARTER:

1. Set the "Access point" to "DEVICE (STARTER, Scout)" and the "PG/PC interface" to "S7USB".
2. Press the "Update" button.



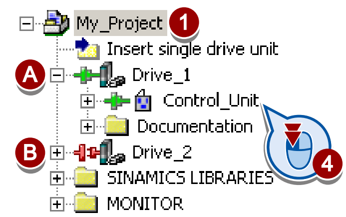
You have set the USB interface.

STARTER now shows the inverters connected via USB.

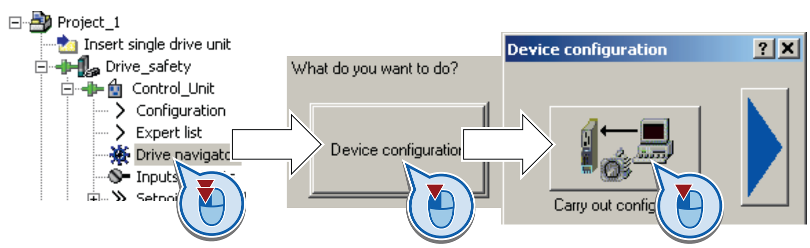
5.5.3 Go online and start quick commissioning

Procedure with STARTER

Proceed as follows to start the quick commissioning of the inverter:



1. Select your project and go online: .
2. In the following screen form, select the inverter with which you wish to go online.
3. Download the hardware configuration found online in your project (PG or PC).
   Significance of the symbol in front of the inverter:
   (A) The inverter is online.
   (B) The inverter is offline
4. When you are online, double-click on "Control Unit".
5. Start the commissioning wizard:

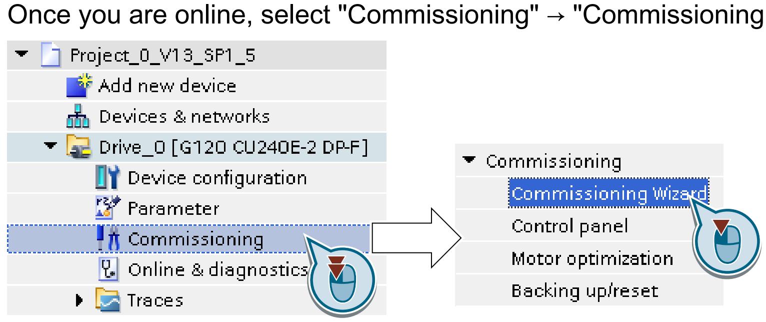


You have started the quick commissioning of the inverter.

Procedure with Startdrive

Proceed as follows to start the quick commissioning of the inverter:

1. Select your project and go online: Go online
2. In the following screen form, select the inverter with which you wish to go online.
3. Once you are online, select "Commissioning" → "Commissioning Wizard":



You have started the quick commissioning of the inverter.

5.5.4 Overview of quick commissioning

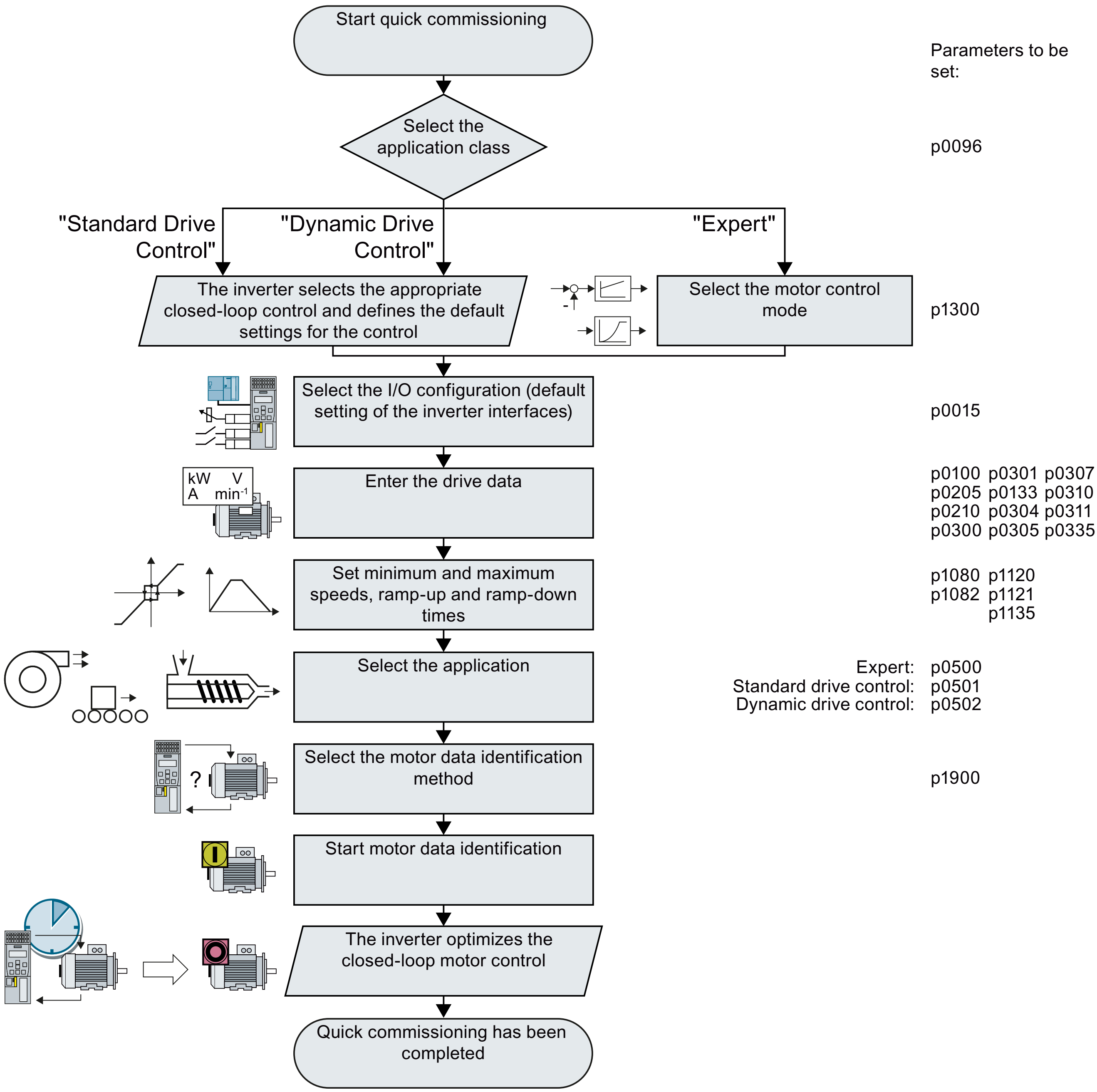


Figure 5-15 Quick commissioning with a PC

5.5.5 Select the application class

Starting quick commissioning

Procedure

1.
2.
Proceed as follows to start the quick commissioning:

Application class

When selecting an application class, the inverter assigns the motor control with the appropriate default settings:

- [1] Standard Drive Control (Page 143)
- [2] Dynamic Drive Control (Page 144)
- [0] Expert - or if no application class is listed:
  Expert (Page 145)

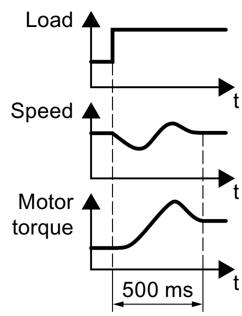
Select the suitable application class

When selecting an application class, the inverter assigns the appropriate settings to the motor control.

Application class	Standard Drive Control	Dynamic Drive Control
Motors that can be operated	Induction motors	Induction and synchronous motors
Application examples	• Pumps, fans, and compressors with flow characteristic • Wet or dry blasting technology • Mills, mixers, kneaders, crushers, agitators • Horizontal conveyor technology (conveyor belts, roller conveyors, chain conveyors) • Basic spindles	• Pumps and compressors with displacement machines • Rotary furnaces • Extruder • Centrifuges

<table>
<tr><th>Application class</th><th>Standard Drive Control</th><th>Dynamic Drive Control</th></tr>
<tr><td>Properties</td><td>

Typical settling time after a speed change:
100 ms … 200 ms
Typical settling time after a load surge: 500 ms



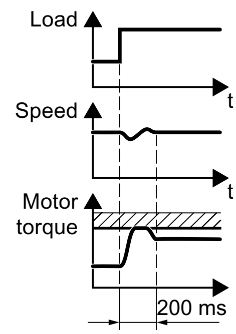
Standard Drive Control is suitable for the following requirements:

All motor power ratings
Ramp-up time 0 → rated speed (depending on the motor power rating):
1 s (0.1 kW) … 10 s (45 kW)
Applications with increasing load torque without load surges

Standard Drive Control is insensitive with respect to imprecise setting of the motor data

</td><td>

Typical settling time after a speed change:
< 100 ms
Typical settling time after a load surge: 200 ms



Dynamic Drive Control controls and limits the motor torque
Typically achieves a torque accuracy: ± 5 % for 15 % … 100 % of the rated speed
We recommend Dynamic Drive Control for the following applications:

Motor power ratings > 11 kW
For load surges 10 % … >100 % of the rated motor torque

Dynamic Drive Control is necessary for a ramp-up time 0 → rated speed (dependent on the rated motor power): < 1 s (0.1 kW) … < 10 s (132 kW).

</td></tr>
<tr><td>Max. output frequency</td><td>550 Hz</td><td>240 Hz</td></tr>
<tr><td>Commissioning</td><td>

Unlike "Dynamic Drive Control," no speed controller needs to be set
In comparison to setting "EXPERT":

Simplified commissioning using predefined motor data
Reduced number of parameters

Standard Drive Control is preset for Power Modules, frame size A … frame size C

</td><td>

Fewer number of parameters when compared to setting "EXPERT"
Dynamic Drive Control is preset for Power Modules, frame size D … frame size F

</td></tr>
</table>

5.5.6 Standard Drive Control

Procedure for application class [1]: Standard Drive Control

☑ Defaults of the setpoin — Select the I/O configuration to preassign the inverter interfaces.

Factory setting of the interfaces (Page 88)
Default setting of the interfaces (Page 91)

☑ Drive setting — Set the applicable motor standard and the inverter supply voltage.

☑ Motor — Select your motor.

☑ Motor data — Enter the motor data according to the rating plate of your motor.
If you have selected a motor based on its article number, the data has already been entered.

☑ Important parameters — Set the most important parameters to suit your application.

☑ Drive functions — Select the application:

- [0] Constant load: Typical applications include conveyor drives
- [1] Speed-dependent load: Typical applications include pumps and fans

Motor data identification (not all the following settings may be visible in Startdrive):

- [0]: No motor data identification
- [1]: Measure the motor data at standstill and with the motor rotating. The inverter switches off the motor after the motor data identification has been completed.
- [2]: Recommended setting. Measure the motor data at standstill. The inverter switches off the motor after the motor data identification has been completed.
  Select this setting if the motor cannot freely rotate, e.g. for a mechanically limited traversing range.
- [3]: Measure the motor data while the motor is rotating. The inverter switches off the motor after the motor data identification has been completed.
- [11]: The same setting as [1]. The motor accelerates to the currently set setpoint after the motor data identification.
- [12]: The same setting as [2]. The motor accelerates to the currently set setpoint after the motor data identification.

You have completed quick commissioning.

5.5.7 Dynamic Drive Control

Procedure for application class [2]: Dynamic Drive Control

☑ Defaults of the setpoin — Select the I/O configuration to preassign the inverter interfaces.

Factory setting of the interfaces (Page 88)
Default setting of the interfaces (Page 91)

☑ Drive setting — Set the applicable motor standard and the inverter supply voltage.

☑ Motor — Select your motor.

☑ Motor data — Enter the motor data according to the rating plate of your motor.
If you have selected a motor based on its article number, the data has already been entered.

☑ Important parameters — Set the most important parameters to suit your application.

☑ Drive functions — Application:

- [0]: Recommended setting for standard applications.
- [1]: Recommended setting for applications with ramp-up and ramp-down times < 10 s. This setting is not suitable for hoisting gear and cranes.
- [5] Recommended setting for applications with a high break loose torque.

Motor data identification:

- [0]: No motor data identification
- [1]: Recommended setting. Measure the motor data at standstill and with the motor rotating. The inverter switches off the motor after the motor data identification has been completed.
- [2]: Default setting: Measure the motor data at standstill. The inverter switches off the motor after the motor data identification has been completed.
  Select this setting if the motor cannot freely rotate, e.g. for a mechanically limited traversing range.
- [3]: Measure the motor data while it is rotating. The inverter switches off the motor after the motor data identification has been completed.
- [11]: The same setting as [1]. The motor accelerates to the currently set setpoint after the motor data identification.
- [12]: The same setting as [2]. The motor accelerates to the currently set setpoint after the motor data identification.

You have completed quick commissioning.

5.5.8 Expert

Procedure without application class or for the application class [0]: Expert

Control structure — Select the control mode.

Defaults of the setpoin — Select the I/O configuration to preassign the inverter interfaces.

Factory setting of the interfaces (Page 88)

Default setting of the interfaces (Page 91)

Drive setting — Set the applicable motor standard and the inverter supply voltage.

Application:

- "[0] Load cycle with high overload for applications requiring a high dynamic performance, e.g. conveyor systems.
- "[1] Load cycle with low overload ..." for applications that do not require a high dynamic performance, e.g. pumps or fans.

Motor — Select your motor.

Motor data — Enter the motor data according to the rating plate of your motor.
If you have selected a motor based on its article number, the data has already been entered.

Important parameters — Set the most important parameters to suit your application.

Drive functions — Application:

- [0]: In all applications that do not fall under [1] … [3]
- [1]: Applications involving pumps and fans
- [2]: Applications with short ramp-up and ramp-down times. However, this setting is not suitable for hoisting gear and cranes/lifting gear.
- [3]: Applications involving pumps and fans with optimized efficiency. The setting only makes sense for steady-state operation with slow speed changes. We recommend setting [1] if load surges in operation cannot be ruled out.
- [5]: Applications with high breakaway torques, e.g. extruders, mills and mixers

Motor identification:

- [1]: Recommended setting. Measure the motor data at standstill and with the motor rotating. The inverter switches off the motor after the motor data identification has been completed.
- [2]: Measure the motor data at standstill. The inverter switches off the motor after the motor data identification has been completed.
  Recommended setting for the following cases:
  - You have selected "Speed control" as control mode, however the motor cannot freely rotate, e.g. for mechanically limited traversing sections.
  - You have set "V/f control" as control mode.
- [3]: Measure the motor data while it is rotating. The inverter switches off the motor after the motor data identification has been completed.

- [11]: The same setting as [1]. The motor accelerates to the currently set setpoint after the motor data identification.
- [12]: The same setting as [2]. The motor accelerates to the currently set setpoint after the motor data identification.

Calculating the motor parameters: Select "Complete calculation".

Set the check mark for "RAM to ROM (save data in the drive)" to save your data in the inverter so that it is not lost when the power fails.

Select "Finish".

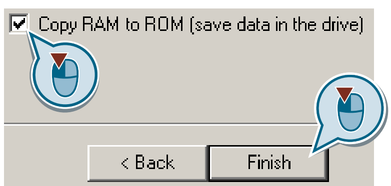


Figure 5-16 Exiting quick commissioning in STARTER

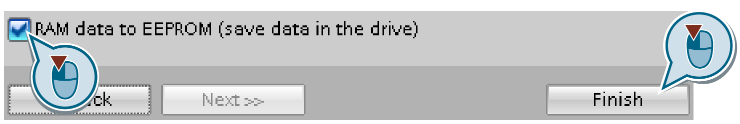
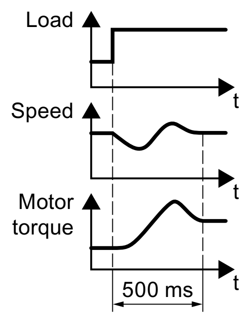
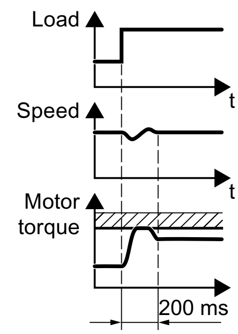


Figure 5-17 Exiting quick commissioning in Startdrive

You have completed quick commissioning.

Select a suitable control mode

Control mode	U/f control or flux current control (FCC)	Encoderless vector control
Motors that can be operated	Induction motors	Induction and synchronous motors
Application examples	• Pumps, fans, and compressors with flow characteristic • Wet or dry blasting technology • Mills, mixers, kneaders, crushers, agitators • Horizontal conveyor technology (conveyor belts, roller conveyors, chain conveyors) • Basic spindles	• Pumps and compressors with displacement machines • Rotary furnaces • Extruder • Centrifuges

Control mode	U/f control or flux current control (FCC)	Encoderless vector control
Properties	• Typical settling time after a speed change: 100 ms … 200 ms • Typical settling time after a load surge: 500 ms  • The control mode is suitable to address the following requirements: – All motor power ratings – Ramp-up time 0 → rated speed (depending on the motor power rating): 1 s (0.1 kW) … 10 s (45 kW) – Applications with increasing load torque without load surges • The control mode is insensitive with respect to imprecise setting of the motor data	• Typical settling time after a speed change: < 100 ms • Typical settling time after a load surge: 200 ms  • The control mode controls and limits the motor torque • Typically achieves a torque accuracy: ± 5 % for 15 % … 100 % of the rated speed • We recommend the control mode for the following applications: – Motor power ratings > 11 kW – For load surges 10 % … >100 % of the rated motor torque • The control mode is necessary for a ramp-up time 0 → rated speed (dependent on the rated motor power): < 1 s (0.1 kW) … < 10 s (132 kW).
Max. output frequency	550 Hz	240 Hz
Torque control	Without torque control	Speed control with lower-level torque control
Commissioning	• Contrary to vector control without encoder, a speed controller does not have to be set.	

5.5.9 Identify motor data

Identify motor data

⚠ WARNING

Unexpected machine motion while the motor data identification is in progress

The stationary measurement can turn the motor a number of revolutions. The rotating measurement accelerates the motor up to the rated speed. Secure dangerous machine parts before starting motor data identification:

- Before switching on, ensure that nobody is working on the machine or located within its working area.
- Secure the machine's working area against unintended access.
- Lower suspended loads to the floor.

Preconditions

- You selected a method of motor data identification during quick commissioning, e.g. measurement of the motor data while the motor is stationary.
  When quick commissioning is complete, the inverter issues alarm A07991.
- The motor has cooled down to the ambient temperature.
  An excessively high motor temperature distorts the results of motor data identification.
- The PC and inverter are connected to each other online.

Procedure with STARTER

To initiate motor data identification and optimize the motor control, proceed as follows:

1. Open the control panel.

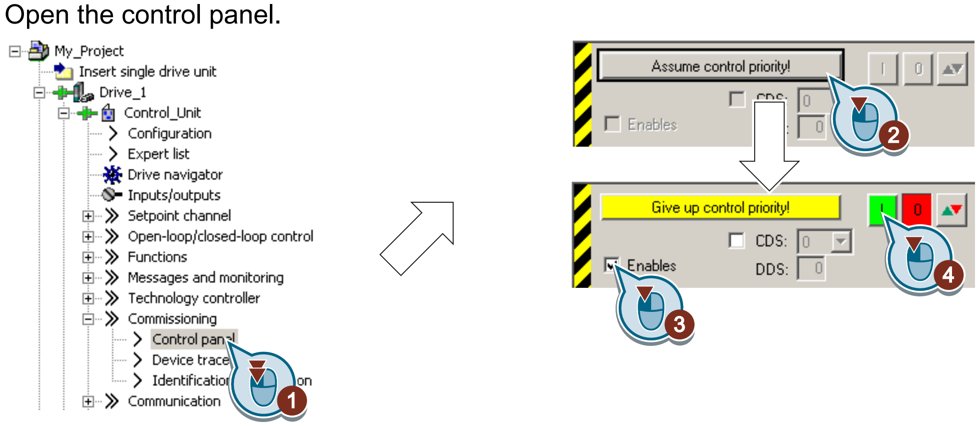


Figure 5-18 Control panel

2. Assume master control for the inverter.
3. Set the "Enable signals"

4. Switch on the motor.
   The inverter starts the motor data identification. This measurement can take several minutes.
   Depending on the setting, after motor data identification has been completed, the inverter switches off the motor - or it accelerates it to the currently set setpoint.
5. If required, switch off the motor.
6. Relinquish the master control after the motor data identification.
7. Press button (RAM to ROM).

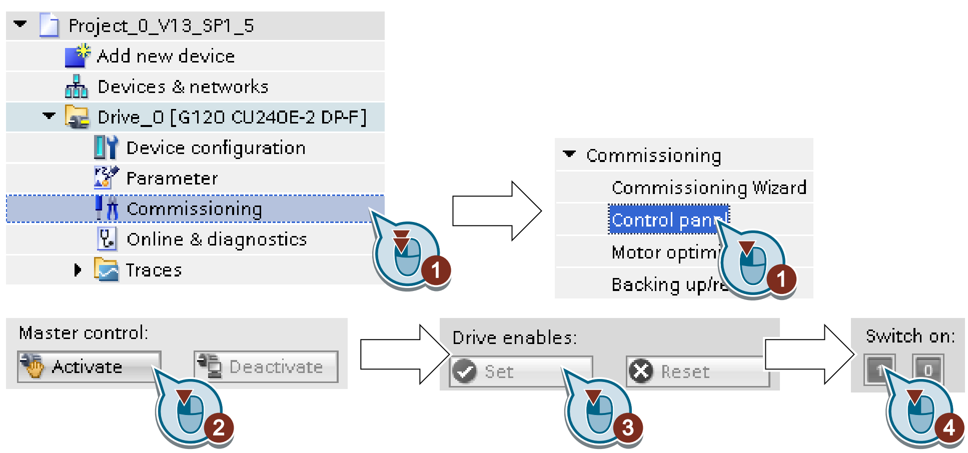
You have completed the motor data identification.

Procedure with Startdrive

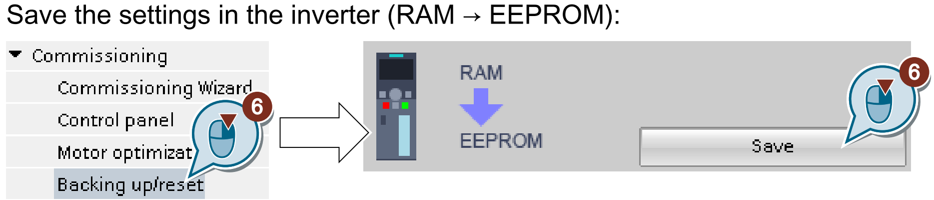
1.
2.

To initiate motor data identification and optimize the motor control, proceed as follows:

1. Open the control panel.



2. Assume master control for the inverter.
3. Set the "Drive enables"
4. Switch on the motor.
   The inverter starts the motor data identification. This measurement can take several minutes.
   Depending on the setting, after motor data identification has been completed, the inverter switches off the motor - or it accelerates it to the currently set setpoint.
5. If required, switch off the motor.
6. Relinquish the master control after the motor data identification.
7. Save the settings in the inverter (RAM → EEPROM):



You have completed the motor data identification.

Self-optimization of the speed control

If you have selected not only motor data identification but also rotating measurement with self-optimization of the speed control, you must switch on the motor again as described above and wait for the optimization run to finish.

5.6 Restoring the factory setting

When must you reset the inverter to the factory settings?

Reset the inverter to the factory settings in the following cases:

- The line voltage was interrupted during commissioning and you were not able to complete commissioning.
- You can no longer trace the settings that you made during commissioning.
- You do not know whether the inverter was already operational.

Restoring the factory settings when the safety functions are enabled

If you are using the integrated safety functions of the inverter, e.g. "Safe Torque Off", you must reset the safety functions separately from the remaining inverter settings.

The settings of the safety functions are protected by a password.

Settings that are not changed when restoring the factory setting

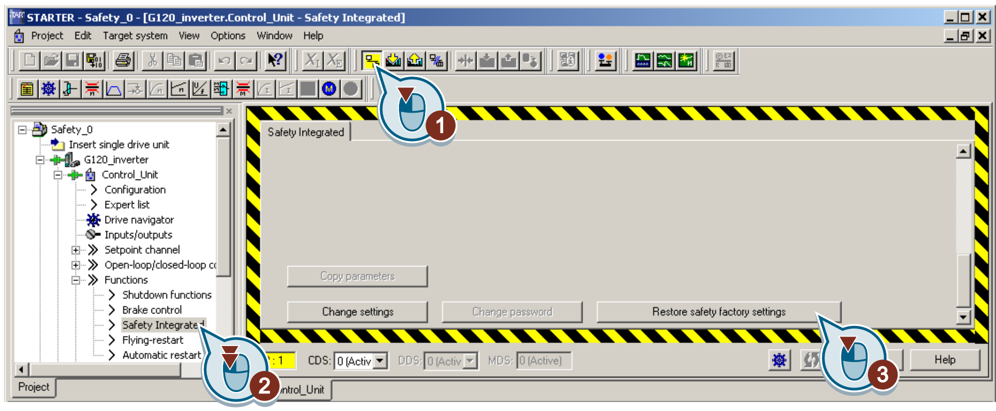
The communication settings and the settings of the motor standard (IEC/NEMA) are kept when restoring the factory setting.

5.6.1 Resetting the safety functions to the factory setting

Procedure with STARTER

To reset the safety function settings to the factory setting without changing the standard settings, proceed as follows:

1. Go online.



2. Open the screen form of the safety functions.
3. Select the button to restore the factory settings.
4. Enter the password for the safety functions.
5. Confirm that the parameters have been saved (RAM to ROM).
6. Go offline.
7. Switch off the inverter supply voltage.
8. Wait until all LEDs on the inverter go dark.
9. Switch on the inverter supply voltage again.

You have restored the safety functions in the inverter to the factory settings.

Exception: The password for the safety functions is not reset.

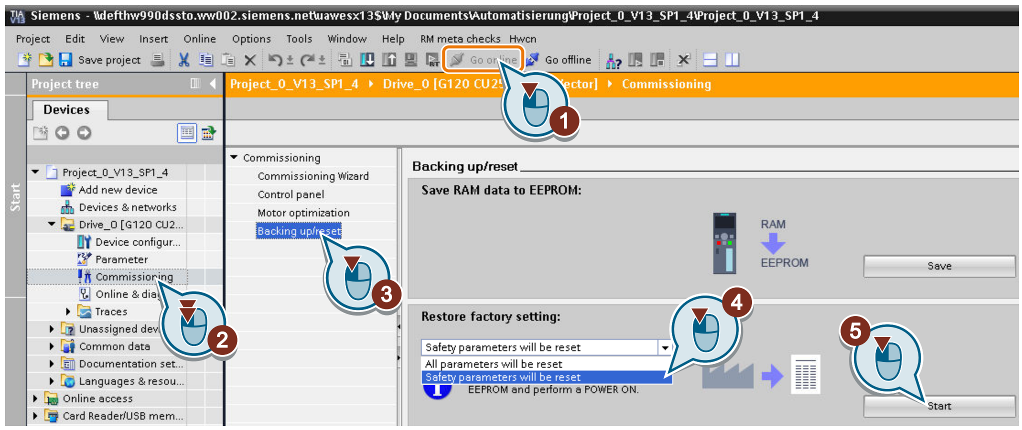
Safety functions password (Page 217)

Procedure with Startdrive

1.
2.

To reset the safety function settings to the factory setting without changing the standard settings, proceed as follows:

1. Go online.



2. Select "Commissioning".
3. Select "Backing up/reset".
4. Select "Safety parameters are reset".
5. Press the "Start" button.
6. Enter the password for the safety functions.
7. Confirm that the parameters have been saved (RAM to ROM).
8. Go offline.
9. Switch off the inverter supply voltage.
10. Wait until all LEDs on the inverter go dark.
11. Switch on the inverter supply voltage again.

You have restored the safety functions in the inverter to the factory settings.

Exception: The password for the safety functions is not reset.

Safety functions password (Page 217)

Procedure with an operator panel

1
2

Proceed as follows to restore the inverter safety functions to the factory settings:

1. p0010 = 30Set
   Activate reset settings.
2. p9761 = …
   Enter the password for the safety functions
3. Start the reset with p0970 = 5.
4. Wait until the inverter sets p0970 = 0.
5. Set p0971 = 1.

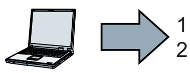
6. Wait until the inverter sets p0971 = 0.
7. Switch off the inverter supply voltage.
8. Wait until all LEDs on the inverter go dark.
9. Switch on the inverter supply voltage again.

You have restored the safety function settings of your inverter to the factory settings.

5.6.2 Restore the factory settings (without safety functions)

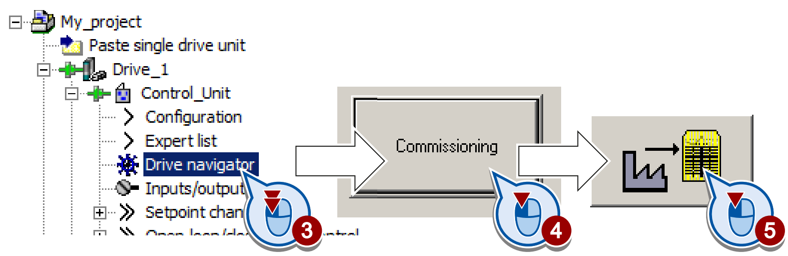
Restore the factory inverter settings

Procedure with STARTER



Proceed as follows to reset the inverter to factory settings:

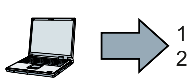
1. Select your drive.
2. Go online.
3. Open "Drive Navigator".



4. Select the "Commissioning" button.
5. Press the "Factory setting" button.
6. ☑ In the screen form, select "After loading copy RAM to ROM".
7. Start the reset.
8. Wait until the inverter has been reset to the factory setting.

You have reset the inverter to factory settings.

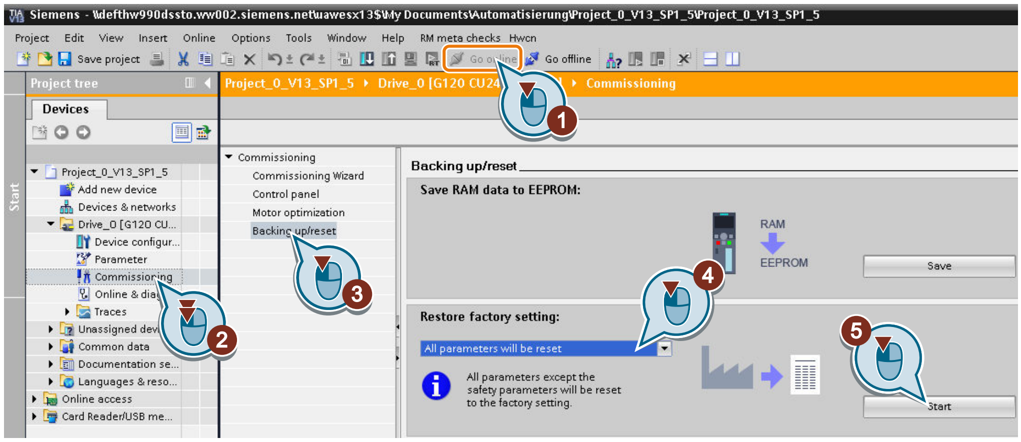
Procedure with Startdrive



Proceed as follows to reset the inverter to factory settings:

1. Go online.
2. Select "Commissioning".
3. Select "Backing up/reset".
4. Select "All parameters are reset".

5. Press the "Start" button.



6. Wait until the inverter has been reset to the factory setting.

☐ You have reset the inverter to factory settings.

Procedure with the BOP-2 operator panel

Proceed as follows to reset the inverter to factory settings:

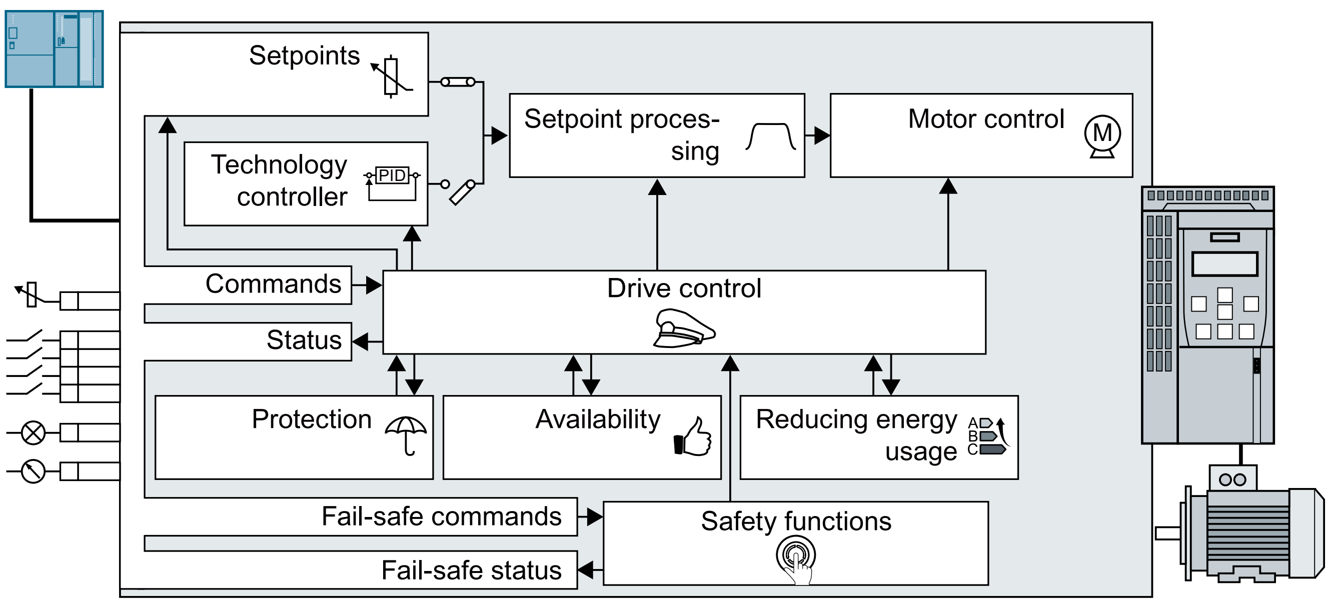
1. In the "Options" menu, select the "DRVRESET" entry
2. Confirm the reset using the OK key.
3. Wait until the inverter has been reset to the factory setting.

☐ You have reset the inverter to factory settings.

Advanced commissioning

6

6.1 Overview of the inverter functions



Drive control

The inverter receives its commands from the higher-level control via the terminal strip or the fieldbus interface of the Control Unit. The drive control defines how the inverter responds to the commands.

Sequence control when switching the motor on and off (Page 160)

Adapt the default setting of the terminal strip (Page 162)

Controlling clockwise and counter-clockwise operation via digital inputs (Page 173)

Drive control via PROFIBUS or PROFINET (Page 179)

Drive control via Modbus RTU (Page 194)

Drive control via USS (Page 197)

Drive control via Ethernet/IP (Page 200)

Jogging (Page 201)

Limit position control (Page 202)

The inverter can switch between different settings of the drive control.

Switching over the drive control (command data set) (Page 204)

The inverter provides a motor holding brake control. The motor holding brake holds the motor in position when it is switched off.

Motor holding brake (Page 206)

The free function blocks permit configurable signal processing within the inverter.

Free function blocks (Page 210)

You can select in which physical units the inverter represents its associated values.

Selecting physical units (Page 211)

Safety functions

The safety functions fulfill increased requirements regarding the functional safety of the drive.

Safe Torque Off (STO) safety function (Page 215)

Setpoints and setpoint conditioning

The setpoint generally determines the motor speed.

Setpoints (Page 235)

The setpoint processing uses a ramp-function generator to prevent speed steps occurring and to limit the speed to a permissible maximum value.

Setpoint calculation (Page 243)

Technology controller

The technology controller controls process variables, e.g. pressure, temperature, level or flow. The motor closed-loop control either receives its setpoint from the higher-level control - or from the technology controller.

PID technology controller (Page 252)

Motor control

The motor closed-loop control ensures that the motor follows the speed setpoint. You can choose between various control modes.

Motor control (Page 258)

The inverter has various methods to electrically brake the motor. When electrically braking, the motor develops a torque, which reduces the speed down to standstill.

Electrically braking the motor (Page 283)

Drive protection

The protection functions prevent damage to the motor, inverter and driven load.

Overcurrent protection (Page 292)

Inverter protection using temperature monitoring (Page 293)

Motor protection with temperature sensor (Page 296)

Motor protection by calculating the temperature (Page 299)

Motor and inverter protection by limiting the voltage (Page 301)

Increasing the drive availability

The kinetic buffering converts the kinetic energy of the load into electrical energy to buffer short-term power failures.

Kinetic buffering (Vdc min control) (Page 309)

The "Flying restart" function permits the fault-free switching on of the motor while it is still turning.

Flying restart – switching on while the motor is running (Page 303)

For active automatic restart, after a power failure, the inverter attempts to automatically restart the motor and to acknowledge any faults that occur.

Automatic restart (Page 305)

Energy saving

For standard induction motors, the efficiency optimization reduces the motor losses in the partial load range.

Efficiency optimization (Page 311)

If necessary, the main contactor control disconnects the inverter from the power system and so reduces the inverter losses.

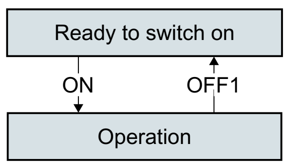
Line contactor control (Page 314)

The inverter calculates how much energy controlled inverter operation saves when compared to mechanical flow control (e.g. throttle).

Calculating the energy saving for fluid flow machines (Page 316)

6.2 Sequence control when switching the motor on and off

After switching the supply voltage on, the inverter normally goes into the "ready to start" state. In this state, the inverter waits for the command to switch on the motor:



The inverter switches on the motor with the ON command. The inverter changes to the "Operation" state.

The inverter brakes the motor to standstill after the OFF1 command. The inverter switches off the motor once standstill has been reached. The inverter is again "ready to start".

Inverter states and commands for switching the motor on and off

In addition to ON/OFF1, "Ready to switch on" and "Ready", there are no additional inverter states and commands to switch on and switch off the motor:

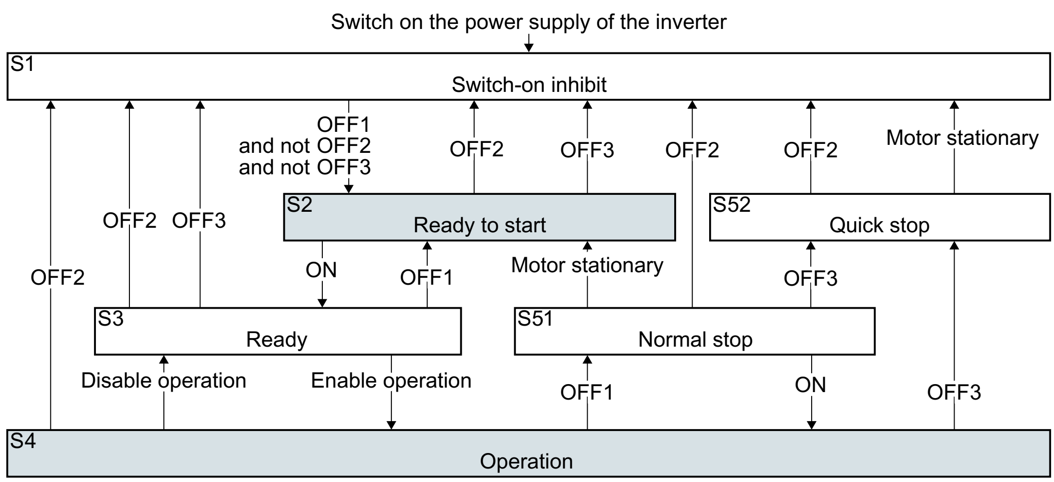


Figure 6-1 Internal sequence control of the inverter when the motor is switched on and off

Table 6-1 Commands for switching the motor on and off

OFF2	The inverter switches off the motor immediately without first braking it.
OFF3	The inverter changes from the "Operation" state to the "Quick stop" state. During "Quick stop", the inverter brakes the motor with the OFF3 ramp-down time. The inverter switches off the motor once standstill has been reached. The command is frequently used for exceptional operating situations where it is necessary to brake the motor very fast, e.g. for collision protection.
Disable operation	The inverter switches the motor OFF.
Enable operation	The inverter switches the motor ON.

Table 6-2 Inverter states

S1	In this state, the inverter does not respond to the ON command. The inverter goes into this state under the following conditions: • ON was active when switching on the inverter. Exception: When the automatic start function is active, ON must be active after switching on the power supply. • OFF2 or OFF3 is selected.
S2	The prerequisites for switching the motor on are satisfied.
S3	The inverter waits for "enable operation".
S4	The motor is switched on.
S51	The inverter brakes the motor with the ramp-down time of the ramp-function generator.
S52	The inverter brakes the motor with the OFF3 ramp-down time.

The abbreviations S1 … S5b to identify the inverter states are defined in the PROFIdrive profile.

6.3 Adapt the default setting of the terminal strip

In the inverter, the input and output signals are interconnected with specific inverter functions using special parameters. The following parameters are available to interconnect signals:

- Binectors BI and BO are parameters to interconnect binary signals.
- Connectors CI and CO are parameters to interconnect analog signals.

This chapter describes how you adapt the function of individual inverter inputs and outputs using binectors and connectors.

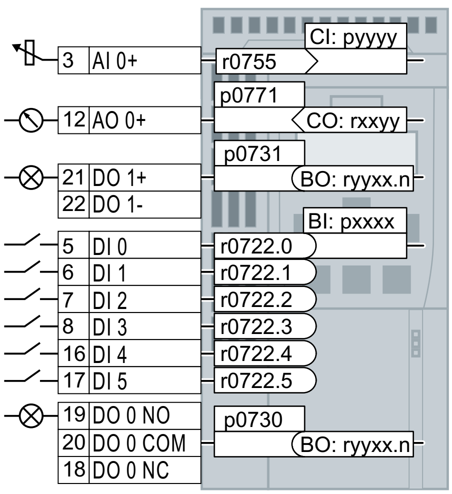
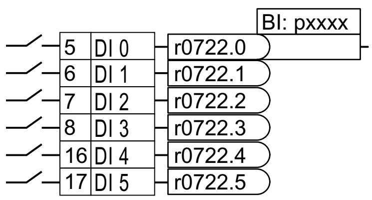


Figure 6-2 Interconnecting the inputs and outputs in the inverter

6.3.1 Digital inputs

Changing the function of a digital input



To change the function of a digital input, you must interconnect the status parameter of the digital input with a binector input of your choice.

Binector inputs are marked with "BI" in the parameter list of the List Manual.

Interconnecting signals in the converter (Page 447)

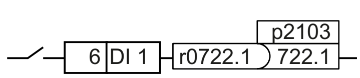
Table 6-3 Binector inputs (BI) of the inverter (selection)

BI	Meaning	BI	Meaning
p0810	Command data set selection CDS bit 0	p1055	Jog bit 0
p0840	ON/OFF1	p1056	Jog bit 1
p0844	OFF2	p1113	Setpoint inversion
p0848	OFF3	p1201	Flying restart enable signal source
p0852	Enable operation	p2103	1. Acknowledge faults
p1020	Fixed speed setpoint selection bit 0	p2106	External fault 1
p1021	Fixed speed setpoint selection bit 1	p2112	External alarm 1
p1022	Fixed speed setpoint selection bit 2	p2200	Technology controller enable
p1023	Fixed speed setpoint selection bit 3	p3330	Two/three-wire control, control command 1
p1035	Motorized potentiometer setpoint higher	p3331	Two/three-wire control, control command 2
p1036	Motorized potentiometer setpoint lower	p3332	Two/three-wire control, control command 3

A complete list of the binector outputs is provided in the List Manual.

Overview of the manuals (Page 459)

Application example: Changing the function of a digital input



To acknowledge inverter fault messages, using digital input DI 1 you must interconnect DI 1 with the command to acknowledge faults (p2103).

Set p2103 = 722.1.

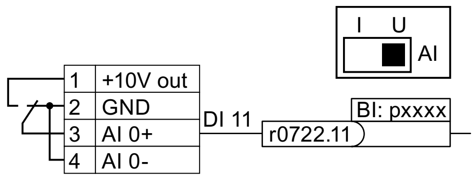
Advanced settings

You can debounce the digital input signal using parameter p0724.

For more information, please see the parameter list and the function block diagrams 2220 f of the List Manual.

Overview of the manuals (Page 459)

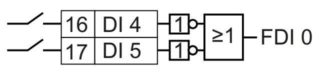
Analog input as digital input



To use the analog input as additional digital input, you must connect the analog input as shown, and interconnect status parameter r0722.11 with a binector input of your choice.

Defining the safety-related input

You require a safety-related input to activate a safety function via the inverter terminal strip.



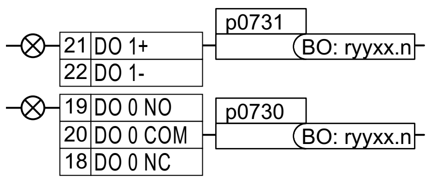
The inverter combines two digital inputs to create a safety-related input.

You can find additional information on safety-related inputs in the description of the STO safety function.

Safe Torque Off (STO) safety function (Page 215)

6.3.2 Digital outputs

Changing the function of a digital output



To change the function of a digital output, you must interconnect the digital output with a binector output of your choice.

Binector outputs are marked with "BO" in the parameter list of the List Manual.

Interconnecting signals in the converter (Page 447)

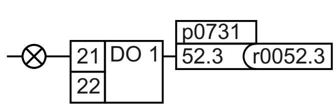
Table 6-4 Frequently used binector outputs (BO) of the inverter

0	Deactivating digital output	r0052.08	0 signal: Deviation, setpoint/actual speed
r0052.00	1 signal: Ready for switching on	r0052.09	1 signal: Control requested
r0052.01	1 signal: Ready for operation	r0052.10	1 signal: Maximum speed (p1082) reached
r0052.02	1 signal: Operation enabled	r0052.11	0 signal: I, M, P limit reached
r0052.03	1 signal: Fault active	r0052.13	0 signal: Alarm overtemperature motor
	The inverter inverts signal r0052.03 if it is interconnected to a digital output.	r0052.14	1 signal: Motor CW rotation
r0052.04	0 signal: OFF2 active	r0052.15	0 signal: Alarm inverter overload
r0052.05	0 signal: OFF3 active	r0053.00	1 signal: DC braking active
r0052.06	1 signal: Closing lockout active	r0053.02	1 signal: Speed > minimum speed (p1080)
r0052.07	1 signal: Alarm active	r0053.06	1 signal: Speed ≥ setpoint speed (r1119)

The complete list of binector outputs is provided in the List Manual.

Overview of the manuals (Page 459)

Application example: Changing the function of a digital output



To output inverter fault messages via digital output DO 1, you must interconnect DO1 with these fault messages.

Set p0731 = 52.3

Advanced settings

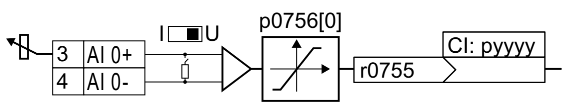
You can invert the signal of the digital output using parameter p0748.

For more information, please see the parameter list and the function block diagrams 2230 f of the List Manual.

Overview of the manuals (Page 459)

6.3.3 Analog input

Overview



The parameter p0756[x] and the switch on the inverter specify the analog input type.

You define the analog input function by interconnecting parameter p0755[x] with a connector input CI of your choice.

Interconnecting signals in the converter (Page 447)

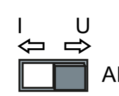
Define the analog input type

The inverter offers a series of default settings, which you can select using parameter p0756[0]:

AI 0	Unipolar voltage input	0 V … +10 V	p0756[0] =	0
	Unipolar voltage input monitored	+2 V … +10 V		1
	Unipolar current input	0 mA … +20 mA		2
	Unipolar current input monitored	+4 mA … +20 mA		3
	Bipolar voltage input	-10 V … +10 V		4
	No sensor connected	---		8

In addition, you must also set the switch associated with the analog input. You can find the switch on the Control Unit behind the front doors.

- Voltage input: Switch position U (factory setting)
- Current input: Switch position I



Characteristics

If you change the analog input type using p0756, then the inverter automatically selects the appropriate scaling of the analog input. The linear scaling characteristic is defined using two points (p0757, p0758) and (p0759, p0760). Parameters p0757 … p0760 are assigned to an analog input via their index, e.g. parameters p0757[0] … p0760[0] belong to analog input 0.

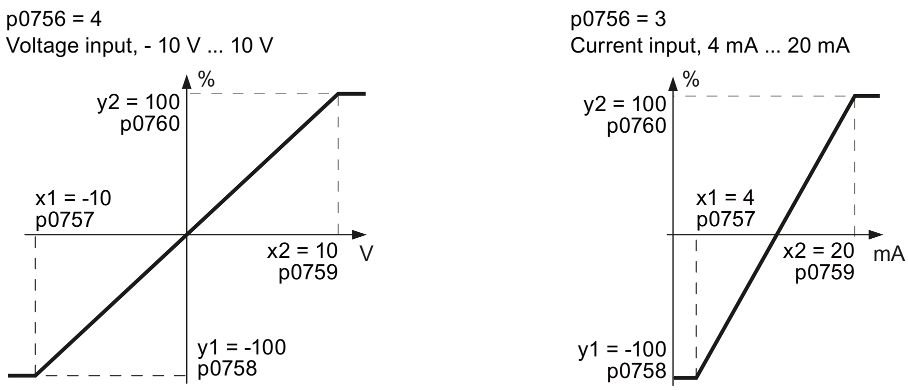


Figure 6-3 Examples for scaling characteristics

Parameter	Description
p0757	**x coordinate of the 1st characteristic point [p0756 defines the unit]**
p0758	**y coordinate of the 1st characteristic point [% of p200x]** p200x are the parameters of the reference variables, e.g. p2000 is the reference speed
p0759	**x coordinate of the 2nd point characteristic point [p0756 defines the unit]**
p0760	**y coordinate of the 2nd characteristic point [% of p200x]**
p0761	**Wire breakage monitoring response threshold**

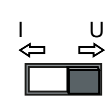
Adapting the characteristic

You must define your own characteristic if none of the default types match your particular application.

Application example

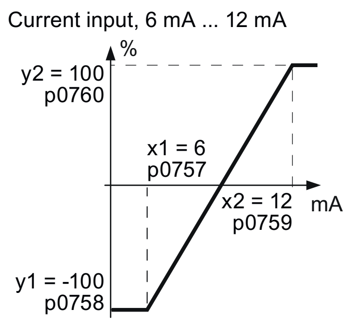
The inverter should convert a 6 mA … 12 mA signal into the value range -100 % … 100 % via analog input 0. The wire break monitoring of the inverter should respond when 6 mA is fallen below.

Requirement



You have set analog input 0 as a current input ("I") via the DIP switch on the Control Unit.

Procedure



Set the following parameters to set the analog input as current input with monitoring:

1. set p0756[0] = 3
   You have defined analog input 0 as current input with wire break monitoring.
2. Set p0757[0] = 6.0 (x1)
3. Set p0758[0] = -100.0 (y1)
4. Set p0759[0] = 12.0 (x2)
5. Set p0760[0] = 100.0 (y2)
6. Set p0761[0] = 6
   An input current < 6 mA results in fault F03505.

Defining the function of an analog input

You define the analog input function by interconnecting a connector input of your choice with parameter p0755. Parameter p0755 is assigned to the particular analog input based on its index, e.g. parameter p0755[0] is assigned to analog input 0.

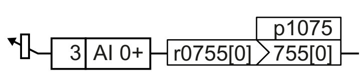
Table 6-5 Frequently used connector inputs (CI) of the inverter

CI	Significance	CI	Significance
p1070	Main setpoint	p2253	Technology controller setpoint 1
p1075	Supplementary setpoint	p2264	Technology controller actual value

A complete list of the connector inputs is provided in the List Manual.

Overview of the manuals (Page 459)

Defining the function of an analog input - example

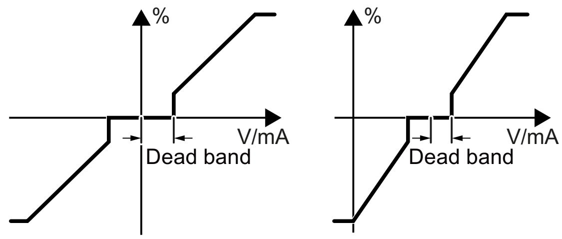


In order to enter the supplementary setpoint via analog input AI 0, you must interconnect AI 0 with the signal source for the supplementary setpoint.

Set p1075 = 755[0].

Dead band

With the control enabled, electromagnetic interference on the signal cable can cause the motor to slowly rotate in one direction in spite of a speed setpoint = 0.



The dead band acts on the zero crossover of the analog input characteristic. Internally, the inverter sets its speed setpoint = 0, even if the signal at the analog input terminals is slightly positive or negative. This prevents the inverter from rotating the motor at a speed setpoint = 0.

p0764[0]	**Analog input dead band** (factory setting: 0)

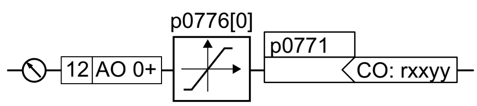
Using an analog input as digital input

An analog input can also be used as digital input.

Digital inputs (Page 163)

6.3.4 Analog output

Overview



Define the analog output type using parameter p0776.

You define the analog output function by interconnecting parameter p0771 with a connector output CO of your choice.

Connector outputs are marked with "CO" in the parameter list of the List Manual.

Interconnecting signals in the converter (Page 447)

Define the analog output type

The inverter offers a series of default settings, which you can select using parameter p0776[0]:

Current output (factory setting)	0 mA … +20 mA	p0776[0] =	0
Voltage output	0 V … +10 V		1
Current output	+4 mA … +20 mA		2

Characteristics

If you change the analog output type, then the inverter automatically selects the appropriate scaling of the analog output. The linear scaling characteristic is defined using two points (p0777, p0778) and (p0779, p0780).

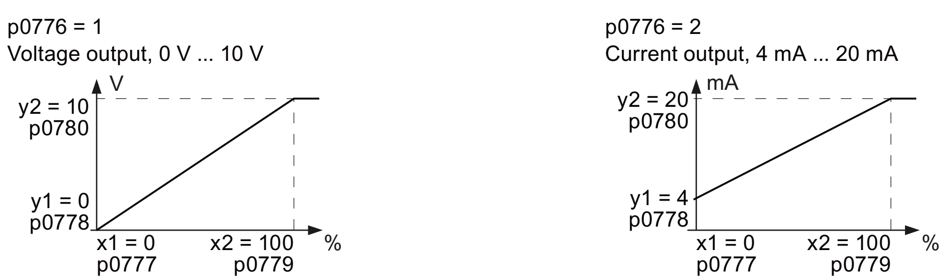


Figure 6-4 Examples for scaling characteristics

Parameters p0777 … p0780 are assigned to an analog output via their index, e.g. parameters p0777[0] … p0770[0] belong to analog output 0.

Table 6-6 Parameters for the scaling characteristic

Parameter	Description
p0777	**x coordinate of the 1st characteristic point [% of p200x]** p200x are the parameters of the reference variables, e.g. p2000 is the reference speed.
p0778	**y coordinate of the 1st characteristic point [V or mA]**

Parameter	Description
p0779	**x coordinate of the 2nd characteristic point [% of p200x]**
p0780	**y coordinate of the 2nd characteristic point [V or mA]**

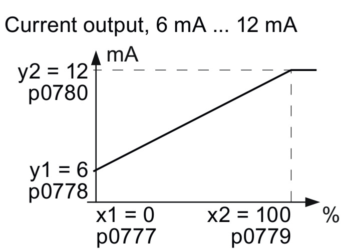
Setting the characteristic

You must define your own characteristic if none of the default types match your particular application.

Example:

Via analog output 0, the inverter should convert a signal in the value range 0 % … 100 % into an output signal 6 mA … 12 mA.

Procedure



Set the following parameters to set the characteristic to match the example:

1. Set p0776[0] = 2
   This defines analog output 0 as a current output.
2. Set p0777[0] = 0.0 (x1)
3. Set p0778[0] = 6.0 (y1)
4. Set p0779[0] = 100.0 (x2)
5. Set p0780[0] = 12.0 (y2)

Defining the function of an analog output

You define the analog output function by interconnecting parameter p0771 with a connector output of your choice. Parameter p0771 is assigned to the particular analog output via its index, e.g. parameter p0771[0] is assigned to analog output 0.

Table 6-7 Connector outputs (CO) of the inverter (selection)

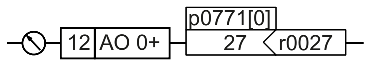
CO	Meaning	CO	Meaning
r0021	Actual speed smoothed	r0026	DC link voltage smoothed
r0024	Output frequency, smoothed	r0027	Absolute actual current smoothed
r0025	Output voltage smoothed		

A complete list of the connector outputs is provided in the List Manual.

Additional information is provided in the parameter list and in function diagram 2261 of the List Manual.

Overview of the manuals (Page 459)

Application example: Defining the function of an analog output



To output the inverter output current via analog output 0, you must interconnect AO 0 with the signal for the output current.

Set p0771 = 27.

Advanced settings

You can manipulate the signal that you output via an analog output, as follows:

- Absolute-value generation of the signal (p0775)
- Signal inversion (p0782)

Additional information is provided in the parameter list of the List Manual.

6.4 Controlling clockwise and counter-clockwise operation via digital inputs

The inverter has a different methods for controlling the motor using two or three commands.

Overview

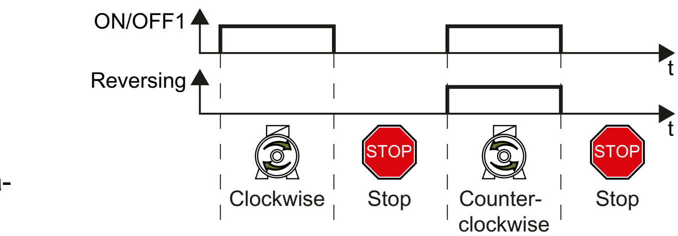
Two wire control, method 1

ON/OFF1:

Switches the motor on or off

Reversing:

Reverses the motor direction of rotation



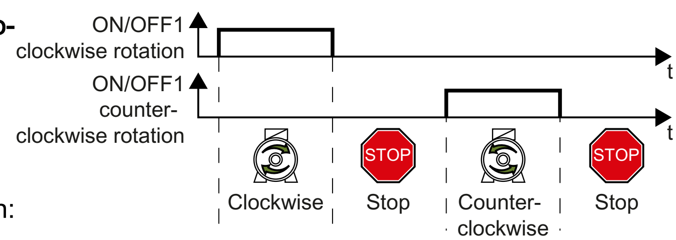
Two wire control, method 2 - and two-wire control, method 3

ON/OFF1 clockwise rotation:

Switches the motor on or off, clockwise rotation

ON/OFF1 counter-clockwise rotation:

Switches the motor on or off, counter-clockwise rotation



Three wire control, method 1

Enable/OFF1:

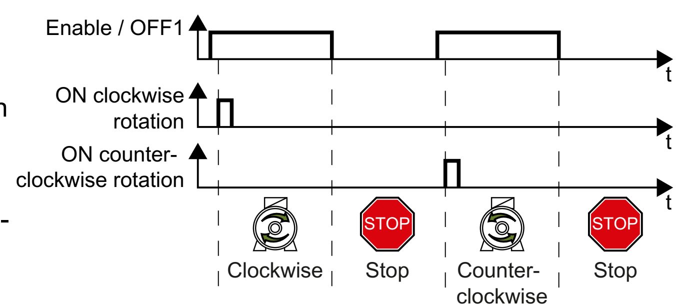
Enables the motor to be switched on or switched off

ON clockwise rotation:

Switches on the motor, clockwise rotation

ON counter-clockwise rotation:

Switches on the motor, counter-clockwise rotation



Three wire control, method 2

Enable/OFF1:

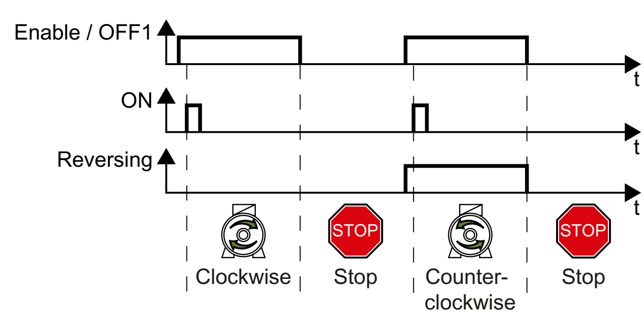
Enables the motor to be switched on or switched off

ON:

Switches on the motor

Reversing:

Reverses the motor direction of rotation



6.4.1 Two-wire control, method 1

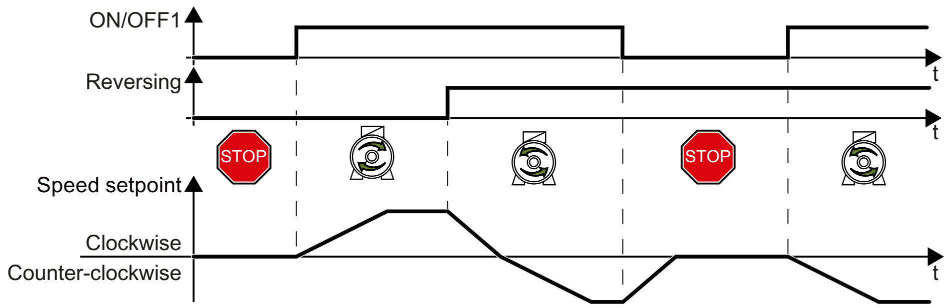


Figure 6-5 Two-wire control, method 1

Command "ON/OFF1" switches the motor on and off. The "Reversing" command inverts the motor direction of rotation.

Table 6-8 Function table

ON/OFF1	Reversing	Function
0	0	OFF1: The motor stops
0	1	
1	0	ON: Clockwise motor rotation
1	1	ON: Counter-clockwise motor rotation

Table 6-9 Select two-wire control, method 1

Parameter	Description
p0015 = 12	**Macro drive unit** You must carry out quick commissioning in order to set parameter p0015. Assigning digital inputs DI to the commands: DI 0: ON/OFF1 DI 1: Reversing

Table 6-10 Changing the assignment of the digital inputs

Parameter	Description
p0840[0 … n] = 722.x	**BI: ON/OFF1** (ON/OFF1) Example: p0840 = 722.3 ⇒ DI 3: ON/OFF1
p1113[0 … n] = 722.x	**BI: Setpoint inversion** (reversing)

6.4.2 Two-wire control, method 2

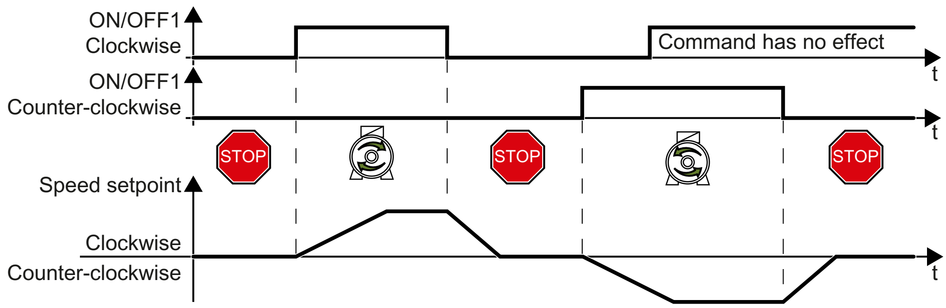


Figure 6-6 Two-wire control, method 2

Commands "ON/OFF1 clockwise rotation" and "ON/OFF1 counter-clockwise rotation" switch on the motor - and simultaneously select a direction of rotation. The inverter only accepts a new command when the motor is at a standstill.

Table 6-11 Function table

ON/OFF1 clockwise rotation	ON/OFF1 counter-clockwise rotation	Function
0	0	OFF1: The motor stops.
1	0	ON: Clockwise motor rotation.
0	1	ON: Counter-clockwise motor rotation.
1	1	ON: The motor direction of rotation is defined by the command that first reaches state "1".

Table 6-12 Select two-wire control, method 2

Parameter	Description
p0015 = 12	**Macro drive unit** You must carry out quick commissioning in order to set parameter p0015. Assigning digital inputs DI to the commands: DI 0: ON/OFF1 clockwise rotation DI 1: ON/OFF1 counter-clockwise rotation

Table 6-13 Changing the assignment of the digital inputs

Parameter	Description
p3330[0 … n] = 722.x	**BI: 2/3 wire control command 1** (ON/OFF1 clockwise rotation)
p3331[0 … n] = 722.x	**BI: 2/3 wire control command 2** (ON/OFF1 counter-clockwise rotation) Example: p3331 = 722.0 ⇒ DI 0: ON/OFF1 counter-clockwise rotation

6.4.3 Two-wire control, method 3

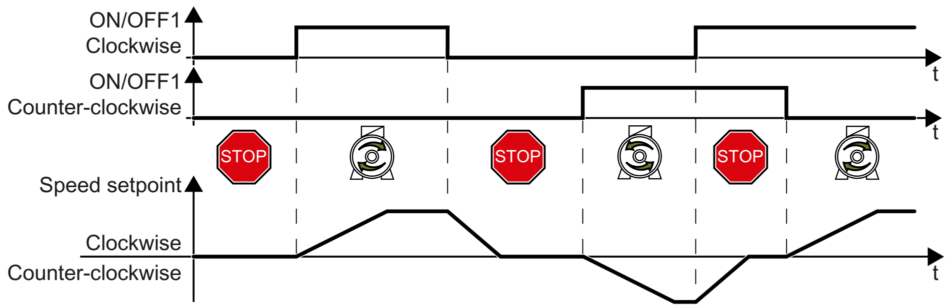


Figure 6-7 Two-wire control, method 3

Commands "ON/OFF1 clockwise rotation" and "ON/OFF1 counter-clockwise rotation" switch on the motor - and simultaneously select a direction of rotation. The inverter accepts a new command at any time, independent of the motor speed.

Table 6-14 Function table

ON/OFF1 clockwise rotation	ON/OFF1 counter-clockwise rotation	Function
0	0	OFF1: The motor stops.
1	0	ON: Clockwise motor rotation.
0	1	ON: Counter-clockwise motor rotation.
1	1	OFF1: The motor stops.

Table 6-15 Select two-wire control, method 3

Parameter	Description
p0015 = 18	**Macro drive unit** You must carry out quick commissioning in order to set parameter p0015. Assigning digital inputs DI to the commands: DI 0: ON/OFF1 clockwise rotation DI 1: ON/OFF1 counter-clockwise rotation

Table 6-16 Changing the assignment of the digital inputs

Parameter	Description
p3330[0 … n] = 722.x	**BI: 2/3 wire control command 1** (ON/OFF1 clockwise rotation)
p3331[0 … n] = 722.x	**BI: 2/3 wire control command 2** (ON/OFF1 counter-clockwise rotation) Example: p3331 = 722.0 ⇒ DI 0: ON/OFF1 counter-clockwise rotation

6.4.4 Three-wire control, method 1

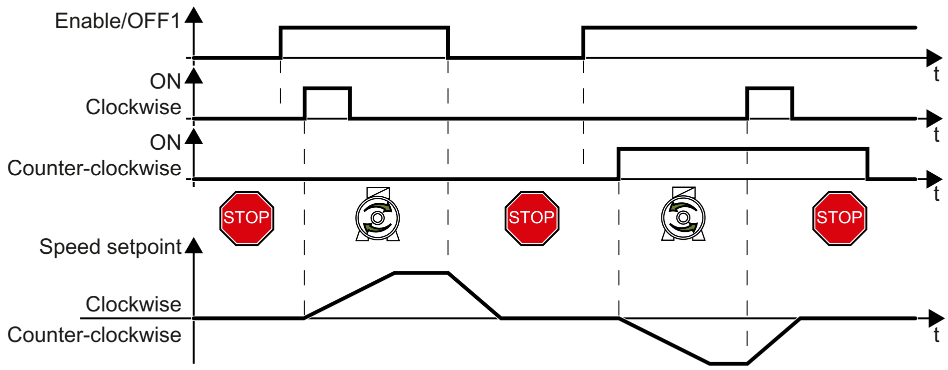


Figure 6-8 Three-wire control, method 1

The "Enable" command is a precondition for switching on the motor. Commands "ON clockwise rotation" and "ON counter-clockwise rotation" switch on the motor - and simultaneously select a direction of rotation. Removing the enable switches the motor off (OFF1).

Table 6-17 Function table

Enable / OFF1	ON clockwise rotation	ON counter-clockwise rotation	Function
0	0 or 1	0 or 1	OFF1: The motor stops.
1	0→1	0	ON: Clockwise motor rotation.
1	0	0→1	ON: Counter-clockwise motor rotation.
1	1	1	OFF1: The motor stops.

Table 6-18 Select three-wire control, method 1

Parameter	Description
p0015 = 19	**Macro drive unit** You must carry out quick commissioning in order to set parameter p0015. Assigning digital inputs DI to the commands: DI 0: Enable / OFF1 DI 1: ON clockwise rotation DI 2: ON counter-clockwise rotation

Table 6-19 Changing the assignment of the digital inputs

Parameter	Description
p3330[0 … n] = 722.x	**BI: 2/3 wire control command 1** (enable/OFF1)
p3331[0 … n] = 722.x	**BI: 2/3 wire control command 2** (ON clockwise rotation)
p3332[0 … n] = 722.x	**BI: 2/3 wire control command 3** (ON counter-clockwise rotation) Example: p3332 = 722.0 ⇒ DI 0: ON counter-clockwise rotation

6.4.5 Three-wire control, method 2

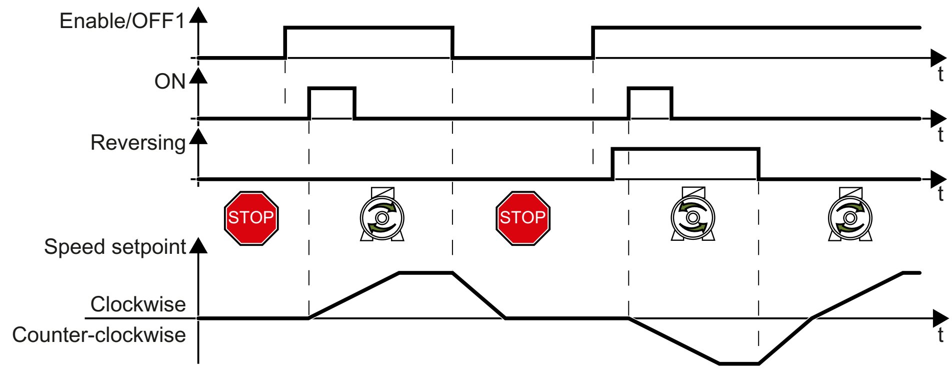


Figure 6-9 Three-wire control, method 2

The "Enable" command is a precondition for switching on the motor. The "ON" command switches the motor on. The "Reversing" command inverts the motor direction of rotation. Removing the enable switches the motor off (OFF1).

Table 6-20 Function table

Enable / OFF1	ON	Reversing	Function
0	0 or 1	0 or 1	OFF1: The motor stops.
1	0→1	0	ON: Clockwise motor rotation.
1	0→1	1	ON: Counter-clockwise motor rotation.

Table 6-21 Select three-wire control, method 2

Parameter	Description
p0015 = 20	**Macro drive unit** You must carry out quick commissioning in order to set parameter p0015. Assigning digital inputs DI to the commands: DI 0: Enable / OFF1 DI 1: ON DI 2: Reversing

Table 6-22 Changing the assignment of the digital inputs

Parameter	Description
p3330[0 … n] = 722.x	**BI: 2/3 wire control command 1** (enable/OFF1)
p3331[0 … n] = 722.x	**BI: 2/3 wire control command 2** (ON) Example: p3331 = 722.0 ⇒ DI 0: ON command
p3332[0 … n] = 722.x	**BI: 2/3 wire control command 3** (reversing)

6.5 Drive control via PROFIBUS or PROFINET

6.5.1 Receive data and send data

Cyclic data exchange

The inverter receives cyclic data from the higher-level control - and returns cyclic data to the control.

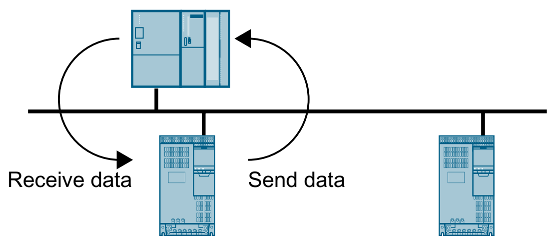


Figure 6-10 Cyclic data exchange

Inverter and control system pack their data in telegrams.

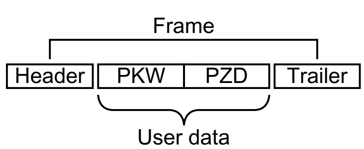


Figure 6-11 Telegram structure

Every telegram for cyclic data exchange has the following basic structure:

- Header and trailer form the protocol frame.
- User data is located within the frame:
  - PKW: The control can read or change every parameter in the inverter via "PKW data". Not every telegram has a "PKW range".
  - PZD: The inverter receives control commands and setpoints from the higher-level control - and sends status messages and actual values via "PZD data".

PROFIdrive and telegram numbers

For typical applications, certain telegrams are defined in the PROFIdrive profile and are assigned a fixed PROFIdrive telegram number. As a consequence, behind a PROFIdrive telegram number, there is a defined signal composition. As a consequence, a telegram number uniquely describes cyclic data exchange.

The telegrams are identical for PROFIBUS and PROFINET.

6.5.2 Telegrams

Telegrams that are available

The user data of the telegrams that are available are described in the following.

Telegram 1

PZD01	PZD02
STW1	NSOLL _A
ZSW1	NIST_A

Receive user data
Send user data

16-bit speed setpoint

Telegram 20

PZD01	PZD02	PZD03	PZD04	PZD05	PZD06
STW1	NSOLL_ A				
ZSW1	NIST_A GLATT	IAIST_ GLATT	MIST_ GLATT	PIST_ GLATT	MELD_ NAMUR

16-bit speed setpoint for VIK-Namur

Telegram 350

PZD01	PZD02	PZD03	PZD04
STW1	NSOLL _A	M_LIM	STW3
ZSW1	NIST_A GLATT	IAIST_ GLATT	ZSW3

16-bit speed setpoint with torque limiting

Telegram 352

PZD01	PZD02	PZD03	PZD04	PZD05	PZD06
STW1	NSOLL _A	Process data for PCS7			
ZSW1	NIST_A GLATT	IAIST_ GLATT	MIST_ GLATT	WARN_ CODE	FAULT_ CODE

16-bit speed setpoint for PCS7

Telegram 353

	PZD01	PZD02
PKW	STW1	NSOLL _A
	ZSW1	NIST_A GLATT

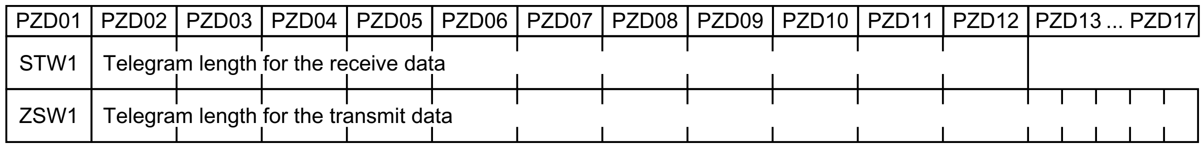
16-bit speed setpoint with reading and writing to parameters

Telegram 354

	PZD01	PZD02	PZD03	PZD04	PZD05	PZD06
PKW	STW1	NSOLL _A	Process data for PCS7			
	ZSW1	NIST_A GLATT	IAIST_ GLATT	MIST_ GLATT	WARN_ CODE	FAULT_ CODE

16-bit speed setpoint for PCS7 with reading and writing to parameters

Telegram 999

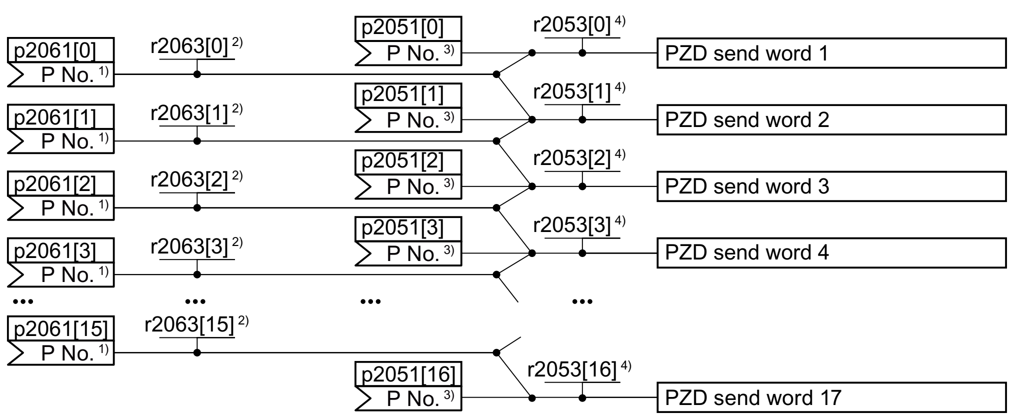


Unassigned interconnection and length

Table 6-23 Explanation of the abbreviations

Abbreviation	Explanation	Abbreviation	Explanation
PZD	Process data	PKW	Parameter channel
STW	Control word	MIST_GLATT	Actual smoothed torque
ZSW	Status word	PIST_GLATT	Actual smoothed active power
NSOLL_A	Speed setpoint	M_LIM	Torque limit value
NIST_A	Speed actual value	FAULT_CODE	Fault code
NIST_A_GLATT	Smoothed actual speed value	WARN_CODE	Alarm code
IAIST_GLATT	Smoothed current actual value	MELD_NAMUR	Message according to the VIK-NAMUR definition

Interconnection of the process data



1) Send word parameter number, doubleword
2) Send word value, doubleword
3) Send word parameter number, word
4) Send word value, word

Figure 6-12 Interconnection of the send data

In the inverter, the send data are available in the "Word" format (p2051) - and in the "Double word" format (p2061). If you set a specific telegram, or you change the telegram, then the inverter automatically interconnects parameters p2051 and p2061 with the appropriate signals.

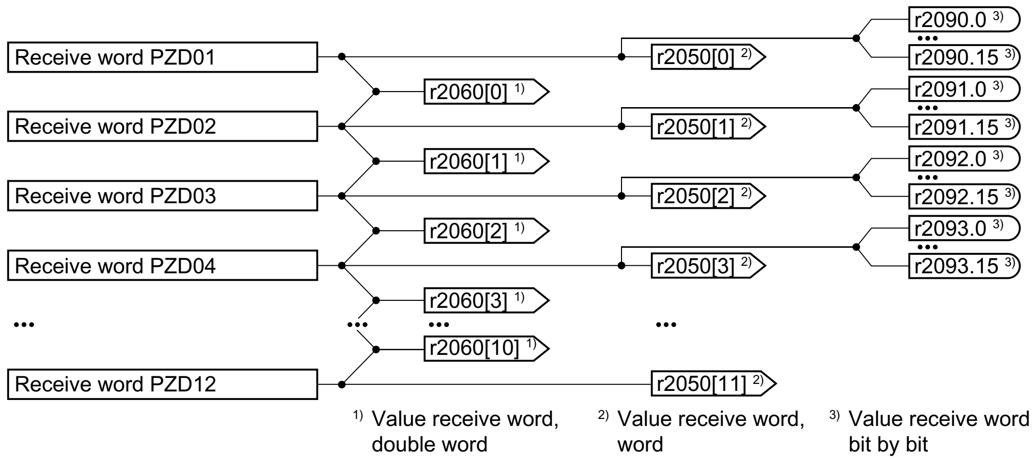


Figure 6-13 Interconnection of the receive data

The inverter saves the receive data in the "Word" format (r2050), in the "Double word" format (r2060) and bit by bit (r2090 …r2093). If you set a specific telegram, or you change the telegram, then the inverter automatically interconnects parameters r2050, r2060 and r2090 … r2093 with the appropriate signals.

If you wish to adapt a predefined telegram, then you must interconnect the send and receive data with the appropriate signals. To facilitate manual interconnection of send and receive data, you must first adapt parameters p0922 and p2079.

Extend telegrams and change signal interconnection (Page 191)

For additional details relating to freely interconnecting process data, refer to the List Manual, function diagrams 2420 and 2472.

Overview of the manuals (Page 459)

6.5.3 Control and status word 1

Control word 1 (STW1)

Bit	Significance		Explanation	Signal interconnection in the inverter
	Telegram 20	All other telegrams		
0	0 = OFF1		The motor brakes with the ramp-down time p1121 of the ramp-function generator. The inverter switches off the motor at standstill.	p0840[0] = r2090.0
	0 → 1 = ON		The inverter goes into the "ready" state. If, in addition bit 3 = 1, then the inverter switches on the motor.	
1	0 = OFF2		Switch off the motor immediately, the motor then coasts down to a standstill.	p0844[0] = r2090.1
	1 = No OFF2		The motor can be switched on (ON command).	

Bit	Significance		Explanation	Signal interconnection in the inverter
	Telegram 20	All other telegrams		
2	0 = Quick stop (OFF3)		Quick stop: The motor brakes with the OFF3 ramp-down time p1135 down to standstill.	p0848[0] = r2090.2
	1 = No quick stop (OFF3)		The motor can be switched on (ON command).	
3	0 = Inhibit operation		Immediately switch-off motor (cancel pulses).	p0852[0] = r2090.3
	1 = Enable operation		Switch-on motor (pulses can be enabled).	
4	0 = Disable RFG		The inverter immediately sets its ramp-function generator output to 0.	p1140[0] = r2090.4
	1 = Do not disable RFG		The ramp-function generator can be enabled.	
5	0 = Stop RFG		The output of the ramp-function generator stops at the actual value.	p1141[0] = r2090.5
	1 = Enable RFG		The output of the ramp-function generator follows the setpoint.	
6	0 = Inhibit setpoint		The inverter brakes the motor with the ramp-down time p1121 of the ramp-function generator.	p1142[0] = r2090.6
	1 = Enable setpoint		Motor accelerates with the ramp-up time p1120 to the setpoint.	
7	0 → 1 = Acknowledge faults		Acknowledge fault. If the ON command is still active, the inverter switches to"closing lockout" state.	p2103[0] = r2090.7
8, 9	Reserved			
10	0 = No control via PLC		Inverter ignores the process data from the fieldbus.	p0854[0] = r2090.10
	1 = Control via PLC		Control via fieldbus, inverter accepts the process data from the fieldbus.	
11	1 = Direction reversal		Invert setpoint in the inverter.	p1113[0] = r2090.11
12	Not used			
13	---[1]	1 = MOP up	Increase the setpoint saved in the motorized potentiometer.	p1035[0] = r2090.13
14	---[1]	1 = MOP down	Reduce the setpoint saved in the motorized potentiometer.	p1036[0] = r2090.14
15	CDS bit 0	Reserved	Changes over between settings for different operation interfaces (command data sets).	p0810 = r2090.15

[1] If you change over from another telegram to telegram 20, then the assignment of the previous telegram is kept.

Status word 1 (ZSW1)

Bit	Significance		Comments	Signal interconnection in the inverter
	Telegram 20	All other telegrams		
0	1 = Ready to start		Power supply switched on; electronics initialized; pulses locked.	p2080[0] = r0899.0
1	1 = Ready		Motor is switched on (ON/OFF1 = 1), no fault is active. With the command "Enable operation" (STW1.3), the inverter switches on the motor.	p2080[1] = r0899.1
2	1 = Operation enabled		Motor follows setpoint. See control word 1, bit 3.	p2080[2] = r0899.2
3	1 = Fault active		The inverter has a fault. Acknowledge fault using STW1.7.	p2080[3] = r2139.3
4	1 = OFF2 inactive		Coast down to standstill is not active.	p2080[4] = r0899.4
5	1 = OFF3 inactive		Quick stop is not active.	p2080[5] = r0899.5
6	1 = Closing lockout active		It is only possible to switch on the motor after an OFF1 followed by ON.	p2080[6] = r0899.6
7	1 = Alarm active		Motor remains switched on; no acknowledgement is necessary.	p2080[7] = r2139.7
8	1 = Speed deviation within the tolerance range		Setpoint / actual value deviation within the tolerance range.	p2080[8] = r2197.7
9	1 = Master control requested		The automation system is requested to accept the inverter control.	p2080[9] = r0899.9
10	1 = Comparison speed reached or exceeded		Speed is greater than or equal to the corresponding maximum speed.	p2080[10] = r2199.1
11	1 = current or torque limit reached	1 = torque limit reached	Comparison value for current or torque has been reached or exceeded.	p2080[11] = r0056.13 / r1407.7
12	---[1)]	1 = Holding brake open	Signal to open and close a motor holding brake.	p2080[12] = r0899.12
13	0 = Alarm, motor overtemperature		--	p2080[13] = r2135.14
14	1 = Motor rotates clockwise		Internal inverter actual value > 0	p2080[14] = r2197.3
	0 = Motor rotates counterclockwise		Internal inverter actual value < 0	
15	1 = CDS display	0 = Alarm, inverter thermal overload		p2080[15] = r0836.0 / r2135.15

1) If you change over from another telegram to telegram 20, then the assignment of the previous telegram is kept.

6.5.4 NAMUR message word

Fault word according to the VIK-NAMUR definition (MELD_NAMUR)

Table 6-24 Fault word according to the VIK-NAMUR definition and interconnection with parameters in the inverter

Bit	Significance	P no.
0	1 = Control Unit signals a fault	p2051[5] = r3113
1	1 = line fault: Phase failure or inadmissible voltage	
2	1 = DC link overvoltage	
3	1 = Power Module fault, e.g. overcurrent or overtemperature	
4	1 = inverter overtemperature	
5	1 = ground fault/phase fault in the motor cable or in the motor	
6	1 = motor overload	
7	1 = communication error to the higher-level control system	
8	1 = fault in a safety-relevant monitoring channel	
10	1 = fault in the internal inverter communication	
11	1 = line fault	
15	1 = other fault	

6.5.5 Parameter channel

Structure of the parameter channel

The parameter channel consists of four words. The 1st and 2nd words transfer the parameter number, index and the type of task (read or write). The 3rd and 4th words contain the parameter content. The parameter contents can be 16-bit values (such as baud rate) or 32-bit values (e.g. CO parameters).

Bit 11 in the 1st word is reserved and is always assigned 0.

Parameter channel						
PKE (1st word)			IND (2nd word)		PWE (3rd and 4th words)	
15...12	11	10 ... 0	15 ... 8	7 ... 0	15 ... 0	15 ... 0
AK	SPM	PNU	Subindex	Page index	PWE 1	PWE 2

You can find application examples relating to the parameter channel at the end of this section.

AK: Request and response IDs

Bits 12 … 15 of the 1st The parameter channel words contain the request and response identifier AK.

Table 6-25 Request identifiers, control → inverter

AK	Description	Response identifier	
		positive	negative
0	No request	0	7 / 8
1	Request parameter value	1 / 2	7 / 8
2	Change parameter value (word)	1	7 / 8
3	Change parameter value (double word)	2	7 / 8
4	Request descriptive element [1)]	3	7 / 8
6 [2)]	Request parameter value (field) [1)]	4 / 5	7 / 8
7 [2)]	Change parameter value (field, word) [1)]	4	7 / 8
8 [2)]	Change parameter value (field, double word) [1)]	5	7 / 8
9	Request number of field elements	6	7 / 8

1) The required element of the parameter is specified in IND (2nd word).

2) The following request IDs are identical: 1 ≡ 6, 2 ≡ 7 3 ≡ 8.
We recommend that you use identifiers 6, 7, and 8.

Table 6-26 Response identifiers, inverter → control

AK	Description
0	No response
1	Transfer parameter value (word)
2	Transfer parameter value (double word)

AK	Description
3	Transfer descriptive element [1)]
4	Transfer parameter value (field, word) [2)]
5	Transfer parameter value (field, double word) [2)]
6	Transfer number of field elements
7	Inverter cannot process the request. In the most significant word of the parameter channel, the inverter sends an error number to the control, refer to the following table.
8	No master controller status / no authorization to change parameters of the parameter channel interface

1) The required element of the parameter is specified in IND (2nd word).

2) The required element of the indexed parameter is specified in IND (2nd word).

Table 6-27 Error numbers for response identifier 7

No.	Description
00 hex	**Illegal parameter number** (access to a parameter that does not exist)
01 hex	**Parameter value cannot be changed** (change request for a parameter value that cannot be changed)
02 hex	**Lower or upper value limit exceeded** (change request with a value outside the value limits)
03 hex	**Incorrect subindex** (access to a subindex that does not exist)
04 hex	**No array** (access with a subindex to non-indexed parameters)
05 hex	**Incorrect data type** (change request with a value that does not match the data type of the parameter)
06 hex	**Setting not permitted, only resetting** (change request with a value not equal to 0 without permission)
07 hex	**Descriptive element cannot be changed** (change request to a descriptive element error value that cannot be changed)
0B hex	**No master control** (change request but with no master control, see also p0927.)
0C hex	**Keyword missing**
11 hex	**Request cannot be executed due to the operating state** (access is not possible for temporary reasons that are not specified)
14 hex	**Inadmissible value** (change request with a value that is within the limits but which is illegal for other permanent reasons, i.e. a parameter with defined individual values)
65 hex	**Parameter number is currently deactivated** (depending on the mode of the inverter)
66 hex	**Channel width is insufficient** (communication channel is too small for response)
68 hex	**Illegal parameter value** (parameter can only assume certain values)
6A hex	**Request not included / task is not supported** (the valid request identifications can be found in table "Request identifications controller → inverter")
6B hex	**No change access for a controller that is enabled**. (The operating state of the inverter pre-vents a parameter change)
86 hex	**Write access only for commissioning (p0010 = 15)** (operating state of the inverter prevents a parameter change)
87 hex	**Know-how protection active, access locked**
C8 hex	**Change request below the currently valid limit** (change request to a value that lies within the "absolute" limits, but is however below the currently valid lower limit)

No.	Description
C9 hex	**Change request above the currently valid limit** (example: a parameter value is too large for the inverter power)
CC hex	**Change request not permitted** (change is not permitted as the access code is not available)

PNU (parameter number) and page index

The parameter number is located in value PNU in the 1st word of the parameter channel (PKE).

The page index is located in the 2nd word of the parameter channel (IND bit 7 … 0).

Parameter number	PNU	Page index
0000 … 1999	0000 … 1999	0 hex
2000 … 3999	0000 … 1999	80 hex
6000 … 7999	0000 … 1999	90 hex
8000 … 9999	0000 … 1999	20 hex
10000 … 11999	0000 … 1999	A0 hex
20000 … 21999	0000 … 1999	50 hex
30000 … 31999	0000 … 1999	F0 hex
60000 … 61999	0000 … 1999	74 hex

Subindex

For indexed parameters, the parameter index is located in subindex (IND Bit 15 … 8) as hexadecimal value.

PWE: Parameter value or connector

Parameter values or connectors can be located in the PWE.

Table 6-28 Parameter value or connector

<table>
<tr><th></th><th>PWE 1</th><th colspan="2">PWE 2</th></tr>
<tr><td rowspan="4">Parameter value</td><td>Bit 15 … 0</td><td>Bit 15 … 8</td><td>Bit 7 … 0</td></tr>
<tr><td>0</td><td>0</td><td>8-bit value</td></tr>
<tr><td>0</td><td colspan="2">16-bit value</td></tr>
<tr><td colspan="3">32-bit value</td></tr>
<tr><td rowspan="2">Connector</td><td>Bit 15 … 0</td><td>Bit 15 … 10</td><td>Bit 9 … 0</td></tr>
<tr><td>Number of the connector</td><td>3F hex</td><td>The index or bit field number of the connector</td></tr>
</table>

6.5.6 Examples for using the parameter channel

Read request: Read out serial number of the Power Module (p7841[2])

To obtain the value of the indexed parameter p7841, you must fill the telegram of the parameter channel with the following data:

- **PKE, bit 12 … 15 (AK): = 6** (request parameter value (field))
- **PKE, bit 0 … 10 (PNU): = 1841** (Parameter number without offset)
  Parameter number = PNU + offset (page index)
  (7841 = 1841 + 6000)
- **IND, bit 8 … 15 (subindex): = 2** (Index of the parameter)
- **IND, bit 0 … 7 (page index): = 90 hex** (offset 6000 ≙ 90 hex)
- Because you want to read the parameter value, words 3 and 4 in the parameter channel for requesting the parameter value are irrelevant. They should be assigned a value of 0, for example.

Parameter channel							
PKE, 1st word			IND, 2nd word		PWE1 - high, 3rd word	PWE2 - low, 4th word	
15...12	11	10 ... 0	15 ... 8	7 ... 0	15 ... 0	15 ... 10	9 ... 0
AK		Parameter number	Subindex	Page index	Parameter value	Drive object	Index
0 1 1 0	0	1 1 1 0 0 1 1 0 0 0 1	0 0 0 0 0 0 1 0	1 0 0 1 0 0 0 0	0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0	0 0 0 0 0 0	0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0

Figure 6-14 Telegram for a read request from p7841[2]

Write request: Change restart mode (p1210)

The restart mode is inhibited in the factory setting (p1210 = 0). In order to activate the automatic restart with "acknowledge all faults and restart for an ON command", p1210 must be set to 26:

- **PKE, bit 12 … 15 (AK): = 7** (change parameter value (field, word))
- **PKE, bit 0 … 10 (PNU): = 4BA hex** (1210 = 4BA hex, no offset, as 1210 < 1999)
- **IND, bit 8 … 15 (subindex): = 0 hex** (parameter is not indexed)
- **IND, bit 0 … 7 (page index): = 0 hex** (offset 0 corresponds to 0 hex)
- **PWE1, bit 0 … 15: = 0 hex**
- **PWE2, bit 0 … 15: = 1A hex** (26 = 1A hex)

Parameter channel						
PKE, 1st word			IND, 2nd word		PWE1 - high, 3rd word	PWE2 - low, 4th word
15...12	11	10 ... 0	15 ... 8	7 ... 0	15 ... 0	15 ... 0
AK		Parameter number	Subindex	Page index	Parameter value (bit 16 ... 31)	Parameter value (bit 0 ... 15)
0 1 1 1	0	1 0 0 1 0 1 1 1 0 1 0	0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0	0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0	0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0	0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 1 1 0 1 0

Figure 6-15 Telegram, to activate the automatic restart with p1210 = 26

Write request: Assign digital input 2 with the function ON/OFF1 (p0840[1] = 722.2)

In order to link digital input 2 with ON/OFF1, you must assign parameter p0840[1] (source, ON/OFF1) the value 722.2 (DI 2). To do this, you must fill the telegram of the parameter channel as follows:

- **PKE, bit 12 … 15 (AK): = 7 hex** (change, parameter value (field, word))
- **PKE, bit 0 … 10 (PNU): = 348 hex** (840 = 348 hex, no offset, as 840 < 1999)

- **IND, bit 8 … 15 (subindex): = 1 hex** (CDS1 = index1)
- **IND, bit 0 … 7 (page index): = 0 hex** (offset 0 ≙ 0 hex)
- **PWE1, bit 0 … 15**: = **2D2 hex** (722 = 2D2 hex)
- **PWE2, bit 10 … 15: = 3F hex** (drive object - for SINAMICS G120, always 63 = 3f hex)
- **PWE2, bit 0 … 9: = 2 hex** (index of parameter (DI 2 = 2))

<table>
<tr><td colspan="64">Parameter channel</td></tr>
<tr><td colspan="16">PKE, 1st word</td><td colspan="16">IND, 2nd word</td><td colspan="16">PWE1 - high, 3rd word</td><td colspan="16">PWE2 - low, 4th word</td></tr>
<tr><td colspan="4">15...12</td><td>11</td><td colspan="11">10 ... 0</td><td colspan="8">15 ... 8</td><td colspan="8">7 ... 0</td><td colspan="16">15 ... 0</td><td colspan="6">15 ... 10</td><td colspan="10">9 ... 0</td></tr>
<tr><td colspan="4">AK</td><td></td><td colspan="11">Parameter number</td><td colspan="8">Subindex</td><td colspan="8">Page index</td><td colspan="16">Parameter value</td><td colspan="6">Drive Object</td><td colspan="10">Index</td></tr>
<tr><td>0</td><td>1</td><td>1</td><td>1</td><td>0</td><td>0</td><td>1</td><td>1</td><td>0</td><td>1</td><td>0</td><td>0</td><td>1</td><td>0</td><td>0</td><td>0</td><td>0</td><td>0</td><td>0</td><td>0</td><td>0</td><td>0</td><td>0</td><td>1</td><td>0</td><td>0</td><td>0</td><td>0</td><td>0</td><td>0</td><td>0</td><td>0</td><td>0</td><td>0</td><td>0</td><td>0</td><td>0</td><td>0</td><td>1</td><td>0</td><td>1</td><td>1</td><td>0</td><td>1</td><td>0</td><td>0</td><td>1</td><td>0</td><td>1</td><td>1</td><td>1</td><td>1</td><td>1</td><td>1</td><td>0</td><td>0</td><td>0</td><td>0</td><td>0</td><td>0</td><td>0</td><td>0</td><td>1</td><td>0</td></tr>
</table>

Figure 6-16 Telegram, to assign DI 2 with ON/OFF1

6.5.7 Extend telegrams and change signal interconnection

When you have selected a telegram, the inverter interconnects the corresponding signals with the fieldbus interface. Generally, these interconnections are protected so that they cannot be changed. With the appropriate inverter settings, these interconnections can be changed.

Extend telegram

Every telegram can be extended, by "attaching" additional signals.

Procedure

Proceed as follows to extend a telegram:

1. Using STARTER or an operator panel, set parameter p0922 = 999.
2. Set parameter p2079 to the appropriate value of the corresponding telegram.
3. Interconnect additional PZD send words and PZD receive words with signals of your choice via parameters r2050 and p2051.

You have extended the telegram.

Parameter	Description	
p0922	**PROFIdrive telegram selection**	
	999:	Free telegram (message frame) configuration
p2079	**PROFIdrive PZD telegram selection extended**	
	1: 20: 350: 352: 353: 354:	Standard telegram 1, PZD-2/2 Standard telegram 20, PZD-2/6 SIEMENS telegram 350, PZD-4/4 SIEMENS telegram 352, PZD-6/6 SIEMENS telegram 353, PZD-2/2, PKW-4/4 SIEMENS telegram 354, PZD-6/6, PKW-4/4
r2050[0…11]	**PROFIdrive PZD receive word** Connector output to interconnect the PZD (setpoints) in the word format received from the PROFIdrive controller.	
p2051[0…16]	**PROFIdrive PZD send word** Selection of the PZD (actual values) in the word format to be sent to the PROFIdrive controller.	

Selection of the PZD (actual values) in the word format to be sent to the PROFIdrive controller. For further information refer to the function block diagrams 2468 and 2470 of the List Manual.

Freely selecting the signal interconnection of the telegram

The signals in the telegram can be freely interconnected.

Procedure

Proceed as follows to change the signal interconnection of a telegram:

1. Using STARTER or an operator panel, set parameter p0922 = 999.
2. Using STARTER or an operator panel, set parameter p2079 = 999.
3. Interconnect additional PZD send words and PZD receive words with signals of your choice via parameters r2050 and p2051.

You have freely interconnected the signals transferred in the telegram.

Parameter	Description	
p0922	**PROFIdrive telegram selection**	
	999:	Free telegram (message frame) configuration
p2079	**PROFIdrive PZD telegram selection extended**	
	999:	Free telegram (message frame) configuration
r2050[0…11]	**PROFIdrive PZD receive word** Connector output to interconnect the PZD (setpoints) in the word format received from the PROFIdrive controller.	
p2051[0…16]	**PROFIdrive PZD send word** Selection of the PZD (actual values) in the word format to be sent to the PROFIdrive controller.	

For further information refer to the function block diagrams 2468 and 2470 of the List Manual.

6.5.8 Slave-to-slave communication

"Direct data exchange" is sometimes called "slave-to-slave communication" or "data exchange broadcast". With direct data exchange, slaves exchange data without any direct involvement of the master.

Further information about the "Direct data exchange" function is provided in the Fieldbus function manual.

Overview of the manuals (Page 459)

6.5.9 Acyclically reading and writing inverter parameters

The inverter supports the writing and reading of parameters via acyclic communication:

- For PROFIBUS: Up to 240 bytes per write or read request via data set 47
- For PROFINET: Write or read requests via B02E hex and B02F hex

Further information about acyclic communication is provided in the Fieldbus function manual.

Overview of the manuals (Page 459)

Application example, "Read and write to parameters"

Further information is provided in the Internet:

Application examples (https://support.industry.siemens.com/cs/ww/en/view/29157692)

6.6 Drive control via Modbus RTU

Modbus RTU is used to transfer cyclic process data and acyclic parameter data between precisely one master and up to 247 slaves. The inverter is always the slave, and sends data when requested to do so by the master. Slave-to-slave communication is not possible.

Settings for Modbus RTU

Parameter	Explanation		
p2020	**Fieldbus interface baudrate** (Factory setting: 7)	5: 4800 baud 6: 9600 baud 7: 19200 baud 8: 38400 baud 9: 57600 baud	10: 76800 baud 11: 93750 baud 12: 115200 baud 13: 187500 baud
p2021	**Fieldbus interface address** (Factory setting: 1) Valid addresses: 1 … 247. The parameter is only active if address 0 is set at the Control Unit address switch. A change only becomes effective after the inverter power supply has been switched off and switched on again.		
p2024	**Fieldbus interface times** (Factory setting: [0] 1000 ms, [2] 0 ms)	[0] Maximum permissible telegram processing time of the Modbus slave [2] dead time between two telegrams	
r2029	**Fieldbus interface error statistics**	[0] number of error-free telegrams [1] number of rejected telegrams [2] number of framing errors [3] number of overrun errors	[4] number of parity errors [5] number of starting character errors [6] number of checksum errors [7] number of length errors
p2030 = 2	**Fieldbus interface protocol selection:** Modbus RTU		
p2031	**Fieldbus interface Modbus parity** (Factory setting: 2)	0: No parity 1: Odd parity 2: Even parity	
p2040	**Fieldbus interface monitoring time** (Factory setting: 100 ms) p2040 = 0: The monitoring is deactivated		

Control word 1 (STW1)

Bit	Meaning	Explanation	Signal interconnection in the inverter
0	0 = OFF1	The motor brakes with the ramp-down time p1121 of the ramp-function generator. The inverter switches off the motor at standstill.	p0840[0] = r2090.0
	0 → 1 = ON	The inverter goes into the "ready" state. If, in addition bit 3 = 1, then the inverter switches on the motor.	

Bit	Meaning	Explanation	Signal interconnection in the inverter
1	0 = OFF2	Switch off the motor immediately, the motor then coasts down to a standstill.	p0844[0] = r2090.1
	1 = No OFF2	The motor can be switched on (ON command).	
2	0 = Quick stop (OFF3)	Quick stop: The motor brakes with the OFF3 ramp-down time p1135 down to standstill.	p0848[0] = r2090.2
	1 = No quick stop (OFF3)	The motor can be switched on (ON command).	
3	0 = Inhibit operation	Immediately switch-off motor (cancel pulses).	p0852[0] = r2090.3
	1 = Enable operation	Switch-on motor (pulses can be enabled).	
4	0 = Disable RFG	The inverter immediately sets its ramp-function generator output to 0.	p1140[0] = r2090.4
	1 = Do not disable RFG	The ramp-function generator can be enabled.	
5	0 = Stop RFG	The output of the ramp-function generator stops at the actual value.	p1141[0] = r2090.5
	1 = Enable RFG	The output of the ramp-function generator follows the setpoint.	
6	0 = Inhibit setpoint	The inverter brakes the motor with the ramp-down time p1121 of the ramp-function generator.	p1142[0] = r2090.6
	1 = Enable setpoint	Motor accelerates with the ramp-up time p1120 to the setpoint.	
7	0 → 1 = Acknowledge faults	Acknowledge fault. If the ON command is still active, the inverter switches to the "switch-on inhibit" state.	p2103[0] = r2090.7
8, 9	Reserved		
10	0 = No control via PLC	Inverter ignores the process data from the fieldbus.	p0854[0] = r2090.10
	1 = Control via PLC	Control via fieldbus, inverter accepts the process data from the fieldbus.	
11	1 = Direction reversal	Invert setpoint in the inverter.	p1113[0] = r2090.11
12	Reserved		
13	1 = MOP up	Increase the setpoint saved in the motorized potentiometer.	p1035[0] = r2090.13
14	1 = MOP down	Reduce the setpoint saved in the motorized potentiometer.	p1036[0] = r2090.14
15	Reserved		

Status word 1 (ZSW1)

Bit	Meaning	Remarks	Signal interconnection in the inverter
0	1 = Ready for switching on	Power supply switched on; electronics initialized; pulses locked.	p2080[0] = r0899.0
1	1 = Ready	Motor is switched on (ON/OFF1 = 1), no fault is active. With the command "Enable operation" (STW1.3), the inverter switches on the motor.	p2080[1] = r0899.1

Bit	Meaning	Remarks	Signal interconnection in the inverter
2	1 = Operation enabled	Motor follows setpoint. See control word 1, bit 3.	p2080[2] = r0899.2
3	1 = Fault active	The inverter has a fault. Acknowledge fault using STW1.7.	p2080[3] = r2139.3
4	1 = OFF2 inactive	Coast down to standstill is not active.	p2080[4] = r0899.4
5	1 = OFF3 inactive	Quick stop is not active.	p2080[5] = r0899.5
6	1 = Switch-on inhibit active	It is only possible to switch on the motor after an OFF1 followed by ON.	p2080[6] = r0899.6
7	1 = Alarm active	Motor remains switched on; no acknowledgement is necessary.	p2080[7] = r2139.7
8	1 = Speed deviation within the tolerance range	Setpoint / actual value deviation within the tolerance range.	p2080[8] = r2197.7
9	1 = Master control requested	The automation system is requested to accept the inverter control.	p2080[9] = r0899.9
10	1 = Comparison speed reached or exceeded	Speed is greater than or equal to the corresponding maximum speed.	p2080[10] = r2199.1
11	1 = Torque limit not reached	Comparison value for current or torque has been fallen below.	p2080[11] = r0056.13 / r1407.7
12	Reserved		p2080[12] = r0899.12
13	0 = Alarm, motor overtemperature	--	p2080[13] = r2135.14
14	1 = Motor rotates clockwise	Internal inverter actual value > 0	p2080[14] = r2197.3
	0 = Motor rotates counter-clockwise	Internal inverter actual value < 0	
15	0 = Alarm, inverter thermal overload		p2080[15] = r2135.15

1) If you change over from another telegram to telegram 20, then the assignment of the previous telegram is kept.

Further information

Further information about Modbus RTU is provided in the "Fieldbus" function manual.

Overview of the manuals (Page 459)

6.7 Drive control via USS

USS is used to transfer cyclic process data and acyclic parameter data between precisely one master and up to 31 slaves. The inverter is always the slave, and sends data when requested to do so by the master. Slave-to-slave communication is not possible.

Settings for USS

Parameter	Explanation		
p2020	**Fieldbus interface baudrate** (Factory setting: 8)	4: 2400 baud 5: 4800 baud 6: 9600 baud 7: 19200 baud 8: 38400 baud	9: 57600 baud 10: 76800 baud 11: 93750 baud 12: 115200 baud 13: 187500 baud
p2021	**Fieldbus interface address** (Factory setting: 0) Valid addresses: 0 … 30. The parameter is only active if address 0 is set at the Control Unit address switch. A change only becomes effective after the inverter power supply has been switched off and switched on again.		
p2022	**Fieldbus interface USS PZD number** (Factory setting: 2)		
p2023	**Fieldbus interface USS PKW number** (Factory setting: 127)		0: PKW 0 words 3: PKW 3 words 4: PKW 4 words 127: PKW variable
p2024	**Fieldbus interface times** (Factory setting: [0] 1000 ms, [1] 0 ms, [2] 0 ms)	[0] Maximum permissible telegram processing time of the Modbus slave [1] Character delay time [2] dead time between two telegrams	
r2029	**Fieldbus interface error statistics**	[0] number of error-free telegrams [1] number of rejected telegrams [2] number of framing errors [3] number of overrun errors	[4] number of parity errors [5] number of starting character errors [6] number of checksum errors [7] number of length errors
p2030 = 1	**Fieldbus interface protocol selection**: USS		
p2031	**Fieldbus interface Modbus parity** (Factory setting: 2)	0: No parity 1: Odd parity 2: Even parity	
p2040	**Fieldbus interface monitoring time** (Factory setting: 100 ms) p2040 = 0: The monitoring is deactivated		

Control word 1 (STW1)

Bit	Meaning	Explanation	Signal interconnection in the inverter
0	0 = OFF1	The motor brakes with the ramp-down time p1121 of the ramp-function generator. The inverter switches off the motor at standstill.	p0840[0] = r2090.0
	0 → 1 = ON	The inverter goes into the "ready" state. If, in addition bit 3 = 1, then the inverter switches on the motor.	
1	0 = OFF2	Switch off the motor immediately, the motor then coasts down to a standstill.	p0844[0] = r2090.1
	1 = No OFF2	The motor can be switched on (ON command).	
2	0 = Quick stop (OFF3)	Quick stop: The motor brakes with the OFF3 ramp-down time p1135 down to standstill.	p0848[0] = r2090.2
	1 = No quick stop (OFF3)	The motor can be switched on (ON command).	
3	0 = Inhibit operation	Immediately switch-off motor (cancel pulses).	p0852[0] = r2090.3
	1 = Enable operation	Switch-on motor (pulses can be enabled).	
4	0 = Disable RFG	The inverter immediately sets its ramp-function generator output to 0.	p1140[0] = r2090.4
	1 = Do not disable RFG	The ramp-function generator can be enabled.	
5	0 = Stop RFG	The output of the ramp-function generator stops at the actual value.	p1141[0] = r2090.5
	1 = Enable RFG	The output of the ramp-function generator follows the setpoint.	
6	0 = Inhibit setpoint	The inverter brakes the motor with the ramp-down time p1121 of the ramp-function generator.	p1142[0] = r2090.6
	1 = Enable setpoint	Motor accelerates with the ramp-up time p1120 to the setpoint.	
7	0 → 1 = Acknowledge faults	Acknowledge fault. If the ON command is still active, the inverter switches to the "switch-on inhibit" state.	p2103[0] = r2090.7
8, 9	Reserved		
10	0 = No control via PLC	Inverter ignores the process data from the fieldbus.	p0854[0] = r2090.10
	1 = Control via PLC	Control via fieldbus, inverter accepts the process data from the fieldbus.	
11	1 = Direction reversal	Invert setpoint in the inverter.	p1113[0] = r2090.11
12	Reserved		
13	1 = MOP up	Increase the setpoint saved in the motorized potentiometer.	p1035[0] = r2090.13
14	1 = MOP down	Reduce the setpoint saved in the motorized potentiometer.	p1036[0] = r2090.14
15	Reserved		

Status word 1 (ZSW1)

Bit	Meaning	Remarks	Signal interconnection in the inverter
0	1 = Ready for switching on	Power supply switched on; electronics initialized; pulses locked.	p2080[0] = r0899.0
1	1 = Ready	Motor is switched on (ON/OFF1 = 1), no fault is active. With the command "Enable operation" (STW1.3), the inverter switches on the motor.	p2080[1] = r0899.1
2	1 = Operation enabled	Motor follows setpoint. See control word 1, bit 3.	p2080[2] = r0899.2
3	1 = Fault active	The inverter has a fault. Acknowledge fault using STW1.7.	p2080[3] = r2139.3
4	1 = OFF2 inactive	Coast down to standstill is not active.	p2080[4] = r0899.4
5	1 = OFF3 inactive	Quick stop is not active.	p2080[5] = r0899.5
6	1 = Switch-on inhibit active	It is only possible to switch on the motor after an OFF1 followed by ON.	p2080[6] = r0899.6
7	1 = Alarm active	Motor remains switched on; no acknowledgement is necessary.	p2080[7] = r2139.7
8	1 = Speed deviation within the tolerance range	Setpoint / actual value deviation within the tolerance range.	p2080[8] = r2197.7
9	1 = Master control requested	The automation system is requested to accept the inverter control.	p2080[9] = r0899.9
10	1 = Comparison speed reached or exceeded	Speed is greater than or equal to the corresponding maximum speed.	p2080[10] = r2199.1
11	1 = Torque limit not reached	Comparison value for current or torque has been fallen below.	p2080[11] = r0056.13 / r1407.7
12	Reserved		p2080[12] = r0899.12
13	0 = Alarm, motor overtemperature	--	p2080[13] = r2135.14
14	1 = Motor rotates clockwise	Internal inverter actual value > 0	p2080[14] = r2197.3
	0 = Motor rotates counter-clockwise	Internal inverter actual value < 0	
15	0 = Alarm, inverter thermal overload		p2080[15] = r2135.15

[1] If you change over from another telegram to telegram 20, then the assignment of the previous telegram is kept.

Further information

Further information about USS is provided in the "Fieldbus" function manual.

Overview of the manuals (Page 459)

6.8 Drive control via Ethernet/IP

EtherNet/IP is an Ethernet-based fieldbus. EtherNet/IP is used to transfer cyclic process data as well as acyclic parameter data.

Settings for Ethernet/IP

<table>
<tr><th>Parameter</th><th colspan="3">Explanation</th></tr>
<tr><td>p2030 = 10</td><td colspan="3">Fieldbus interface protocol selection: Ethernet/IP</td></tr>
<tr><td>p8920</td><td colspan="3">PN Name of Station</td></tr>
<tr><td>p8921</td><td colspan="3">PN IP address (Factory setting: 0)</td></tr>
<tr><td>p8922</td><td colspan="3">PN default gateway (factory setting: 0)</td></tr>
<tr><td>p8923</td><td colspan="3">PN Subnet Mask (Factory setting: 0)</td></tr>
<tr><td>p8924</td><td>PN DHCP mode (Factory setting: 0)</td><td colspan="2">0: DHCP off
2: DHCP on, identification based on MAC address
3: DHCP on, identification based on Name of Station</td></tr>
<tr><td>p8925</td><td>PN interface configuration (Factory setting: 0)</td><td colspan="2">0: No function
1: Reserved
2: Save the configuration and activate
3: Delete configuration</td></tr>
<tr><td>p8980</td><td colspan="2">Ethernet/IP profile (Factory setting: 0)
A change only becomes effective after the inverter power supply has been switched off and switched on again.</td><td>0: SINAMICS
1: ODVA AC/DC</td></tr>
<tr><td rowspan="2">p8982</td><td colspan="3">Ethernet/IP ODVA speed scaling (Factory setting: 128)
A change only becomes effective after the inverter power supply has been switched off and switched on again.</td></tr>
<tr><td>123: 32
124: 16
125: 8
126: 4</td><td>127: 2
128: 1
129: 0.5
130: 0.25</td><td>131: 0.125
132: 0.0625
133: 0.03125</td></tr>
</table>

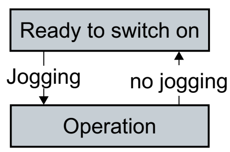
Further information

Further information about USS is provided in the "Fieldbus" function manual.

Overview of the manuals (Page 459)

6.9 Jogging

The "Jog" function is typically used to temporarily move a machine part using local control commands, e.g. a transport conveyor belt.



Commands "Jog 1" or "Jog: 2" switch the motor on and off.

The commands are only active when the inverter is in the "Ready for switching on" state.

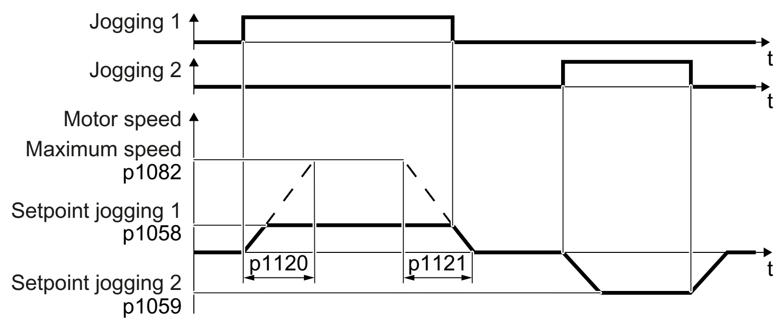


Figure 6-17 Behavior of the motor when "jogging"

After switching on, the motor accelerates to the setpoint, jog 1 or setpoint, jog 2. The two different setpoints can, for example, be assigned to motor clockwise and counter-clockwise rotation.

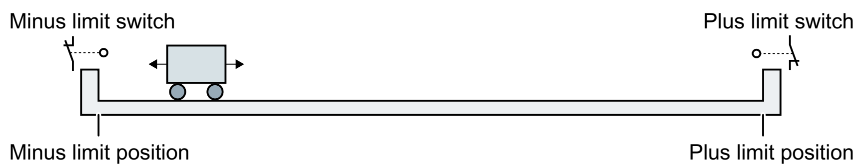
When jogging, the same ramp-function generator is active as for the ON/OFF1 command.

Jog settings

Parameter	Description	
p1058	**Jogging 1 speed setpoint** (factory setting 150 rpm)	
p1059	**Jogging 2 speed setpoint** (factory setting -150 rpm)	
p1082	**Maximum speed** (factory setting 1500 rpm)	
p1110	**Inhibit negative direction**	
	=0: Negative direction of rotation is enabled	=1: Negative direction of rotation is inhibited
p1111	**Inhibit positive direction**	
	=0: Positive direction of rotation is enabled	=1: Positive direction of rotation is inhibited
p1113	**Setpoint inversion**	
	=0: Setpoint is not inverted	=1: Setpoint is inverted
p1120	**Ramp-function generator ramp-up time** (factory setting 10 s)	
p1121	**Ramp-function generator ramp-down time** (factory setting 10 s)	
p1055 = 722.0	**Jog bit 0:** Select jogging 1 via digital input 0	
p1056 = 722.1	**Jog bit 1:** Select jogging 2 via digital input 1	

6.10 Limit position control

Limit position and limit switch

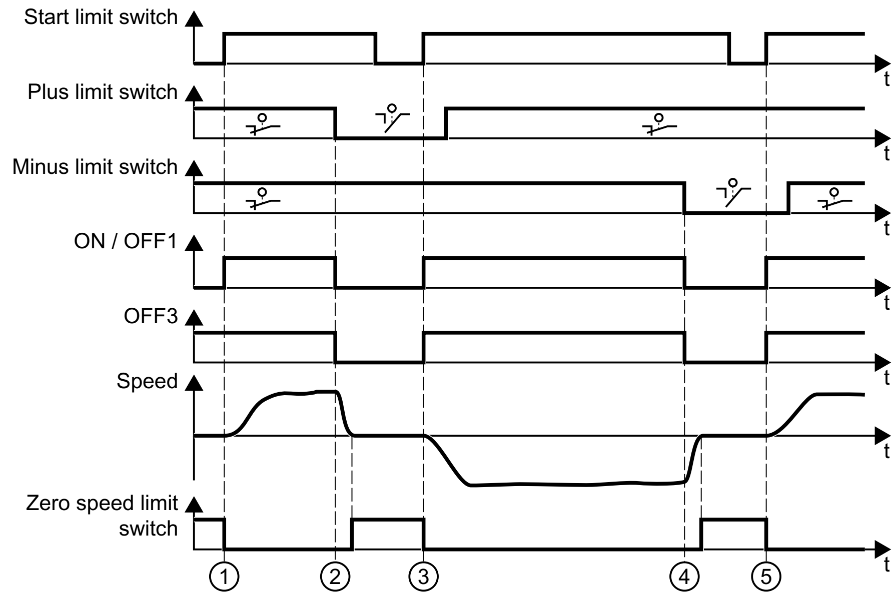


A limit position is a position in the direction of motion of a machine component at which the motion stops due to the construction. A limit switch is a sensor that signals that the limit position has been reached.

Function

The limit position control moves the motor depending on two limit switch signals:

- When a limit position is reached, the inverter stops the motor.
- At a limit position, the inverter starts the motor with a new motion command in the direction of the opposite limit position.
- If neither of the limit positions has been reached when the power is switched on, the polarity of the speed setpoint decides in which direction the motor is to start with the first motion command.



① The motor moves the machine component in the direction of the positive limit position.
② The positive limit position has been reached. The motor stops with the OFF3 ramp-down time.
③ The motor moves the machine component in the opposite direction at a 0 → 1 signal change.
④ The negative limit position has been reached. The motor stops with the OFF3 ramp-down time.
⑤ The motor moves the machine component in the opposite direction at a 0 → 1 signal change.

Figure 6-18 Limit position control of the inverter

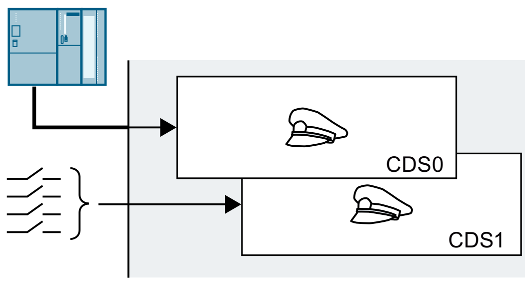
Parameter	Explanation	
p3340[0 … n]	Start limit switch	1 signal: Start is active 0 signal: Start is inactive
p3342[0 … n]	Minus limit switch	1 signal: Limit switch is inactive
p3343[0 … n]	Plus limit switch	0 signal: Limit switch is active
r3344	Limit switch ON/OFF	
	.00	1 signal: Limit switch ON 0 signal: Limit switch OFF1
	.01	1 signal: Limit switch no OFF3 0 signal: Limit switch OFF3
	.02	1 signal: Limit switch, axis stationary (standstill)
	.04	1 signal: Plus limit switch actuated
	.05	1 signal: Minus limit switch actuated

6.11 Switching over the drive control (command data set)

Several applications require the option of switching over the control authority to operate the inverter.

Example: The motor is to be operable either from a central control via the fieldbus or via the local digital inputs of the inverter.

Command data set (CDS)



This means that you can set the inverter control in various ways and toggle between the settings. For instance, as described above, the inverter can either be operated via a fieldbus or via its digital inputs.

The settings in the inverter, which are assigned to a specific master control, are termed the command data set.

You select the command data set using parameter p0810. To do this, you must interconnect parameter p0810 with a control command of your choice, e.g. a digital input.

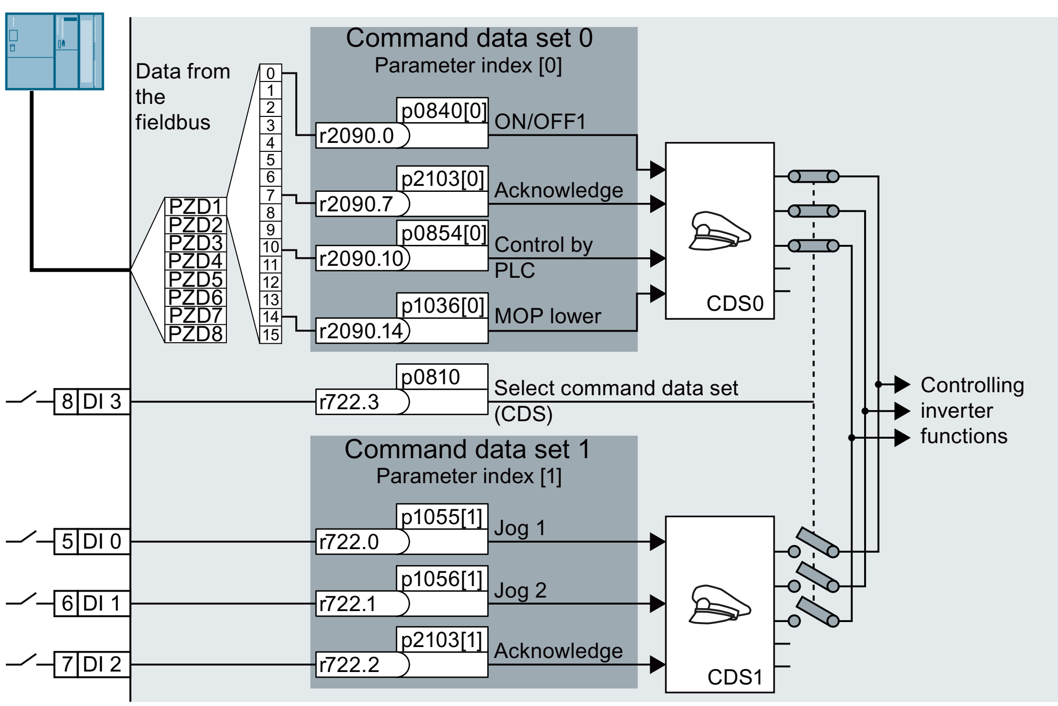


Figure 6-19 Example: Switching over the control via terminal strip to control via PROFIBUS or PROFINET

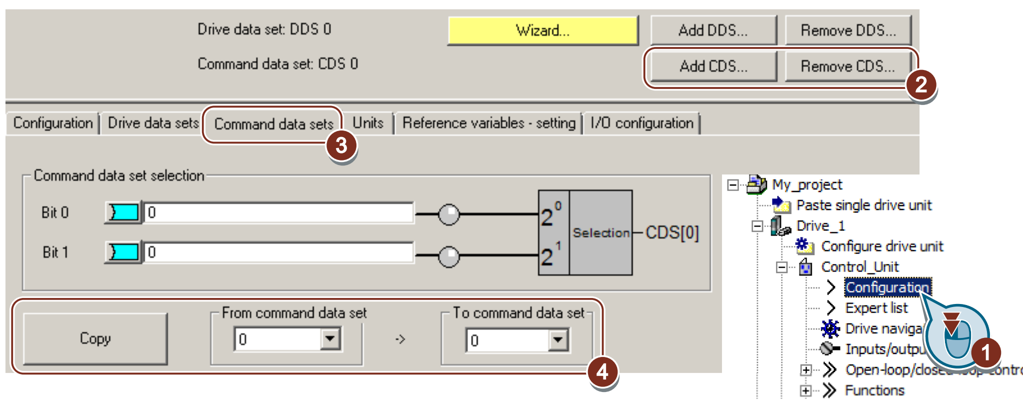
An overview of all the parameters that belong to the command data sets is provided in the List Manual.

Note

It takes approximately 4 ms to toggle between command data sets.

Advanced settings

To change the number of command data sets in STARTER, you must open your STARTER project offline.



① If, in the STARTER project tree, you select "Configuration", then you can process the command data sets.

② If you require more than two command data sets, then add command data sets using this button or remove them.

③, ④ To simplify commissioning several command data sets, under the "Command data sets" tab there is a copy function.

Figure 6-20 Editing command data sets in STARTER

Parameter	Description
p0010 = 15	**Drive commissioning:** Data sets
p0170	**Number of command data sets** (factory setting: 2) p0170 = 2, 3, or 4
p0010 = 0	**Drive commissioning:** Ready
r0050	**Displaying the number of the CDS that is currently active**
p0809[0]	**Number of the command data set to be copied (source)**
p0809[1]	**Number of the command data set to which the data is to be copied (target)**
p0809[2] = 1	**Copying is started** Once copying has been completed, the inverter sets p0809[2] to 0.
p0810	**Command data set selection CDS bit 0**
p0811	**Command data set selection CDS bit 1**
r0050	**Displaying the number of the CDS that is currently active**

6.12 Motor holding brake

The motor holding brake holds the motor in position when it is switched off.

When the "Motor holding brake" function is correctly set, the motor remains switched on as long as the motor holding brake is open. The inverter only switches the motor off when the motor holding brake is closed.

Function

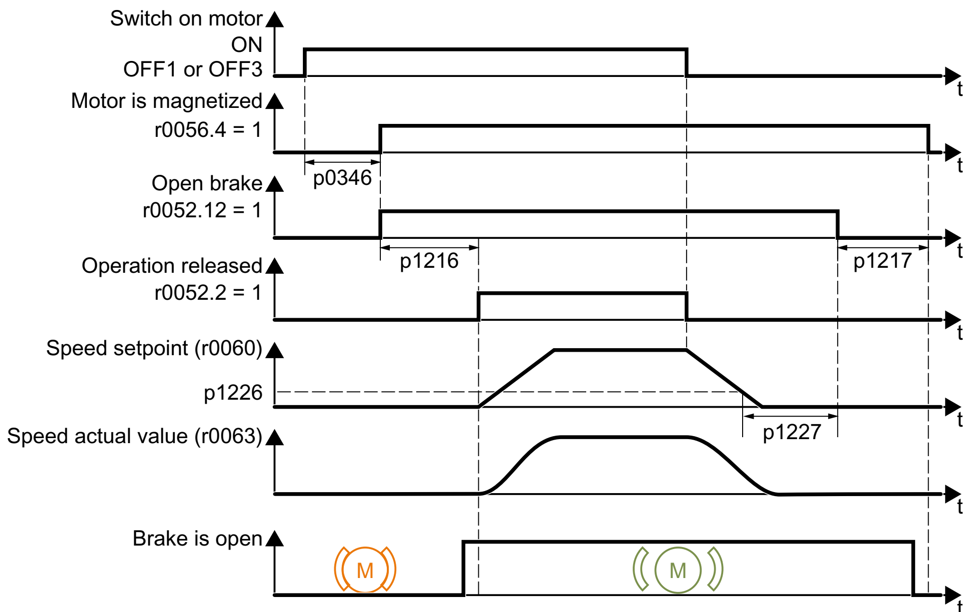


Figure 6-21 Motor holding brake function

After the ON command

1. With the ON command, the inverter switches the motor on.
2. At the end of the "motor excitation build-up time" (p0346), the inverter issues the command to open the brake.
3. The inverter keeps the motor at a standstill until the "motor holding brake opening time" p1216 has ended.
   The motor holding brake must be opened within time p1216.
4. The inverter accelerates the motor to the speed setpoint.

After the OFF1 or OFF3 command

1. The inverter brakes the motor down to a standstill using the OFF1 or OFF3 command.
2. If the actual speed is less than 20 rpm, then the inverter issues the command to close the brake. The motor comes to a standstill but remains switched on.
3. After the "motor holding brake closing time" p1217, the inverter switches off the motor.
   The motor holding brake must close within the time p1217.

After the OFF2 command

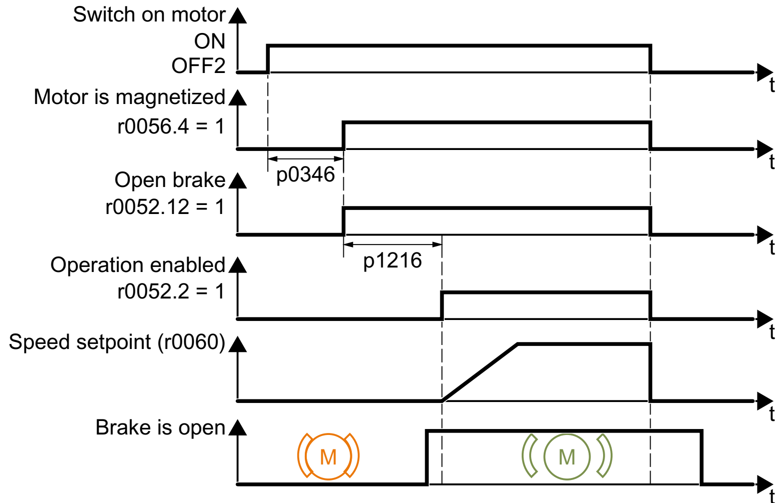


Figure 6-22 Controlling the motor holding brake after OFF2

After the OFF2 command, the inverter issues the signal to immediately close the motor holding brake, irrespective of the motor speed.

Commissioning a motor holding brake

WARNING

Load can fall if the "Motor holding brake" function is incorrectly set

For applications with a suspended load, such as cranes and elevators, there is a danger to life if the "Motor holding brake" function is not completely set or is incorrectly set.

- When commissioning the "Motor holding brake" function, secure any suspended loads, e.g. by applying the following measures:
  - Lower the load down to the floor.
  - Secure the dangerous area so that nobody can inadvertently enter it.
- Set the "Motor holding brake" function according to the following description.
- After commissioning, check that the motor holding brake and the motor control function reliably.
- For applications involving suspended loads, we recommend that you use vector control together with an encoder.

Requirements

- The motor holding brake is connected to the inverter.
- You have assigned the "Controlling the motor holding brake" function to a digital output:
  - DO 0: p0730 = 52.12
  - DO 1: p0731 = 52.12

Procedure

To commission the "motor holding brake" function, proceed as follows:

1. Set p1215 = 3.
   The "Motor holding brake" function" is enabled.
2. Check the magnetizing time p0346.
   The magnetizing time must be greater than zero. The inverter assigns the magnetizing time when it is being commissioned.
3. Find out the mechanical opening and closing times from the technical data of the motor holding brake.
   - Depending on the brake size, brake opening times lie between 25 ms and 500 ms.
   - Depending on the brake size, brake closing times lie between 15 ms and 300 ms.
4. Set the following parameters in the inverter suitably for the mechanical opening and closing times of the motor holding brake:
   - p1216 > mechanical opening time of the motor holding brake
   - p1217 > mechanical closing time of the motor holding brake
5. Switch on the motor.
6. Check the acceleration behavior of the drive immediately after the motor has been switched on:
   - If the motor holding brake opens too late, the inverter will accelerate the motor suddenly against the closed motor holding brake.
     Set p1216 larger.
   - If the motor waits too long before accelerating after the motor holding brake has opened, reduce p1216.
     For applications involving a pulling load, e.g. lifting gear/crane, if p1216 is too long, then the load can briefly sag/sink after the motor holding brake is opened. If you reduce p1216, then the amount that the load sags/sinks is reduced.
7. If the load sags after switching on the motor, then you must increase the motor torque when opening the motor holding brake. Depending on the control mode, you must set different parameters:
   - U/f control (p1300 = 0 to 3):
     Increase p1310 in small steps.
     Increase p1351 in small steps.
   - Vector control (p1300 ≥ 20):
     Increase p1475 in small steps.
8. Switch off the motor.
9. Check the behavior of the drive immediately after the motor has been switched off:
   - If the motor holding brake closes too late, the load briefly sags before the motor holding brake closes.
     Set a larger value for p1217.
   - If the motor waits too long before switching off after the motor holding brake has closed, reduce p1217.

You have commissioned the "Motor holding brake" function.

Table 6-29 Control logic parameters of the motor holding brake

Parameter	Description
p1215 = 3	**Enable motor holding brake** 0 Motor holding brake locked (factory setting) 3: Motor holding brake just like the sequential control, connected via BICO
p1216	**Motor holding brake opening time** (factory setting 0.1 s) p1216 > braking signal relay runtimes + brake release time
p1217	**Motor holding brake closing time** (factory setting 0.1 s) p1217 > braking signal relay runtimes + brake closing time
r0052.12	**"Open motor holding brake" command**
p0730 = 52.12	**Signal source for terminal DO 0** Control motor holding brake via digital output 0
p0731 = 52.12	**Signal source for terminal DO 1** Control motor holding brake via digital output 1

Table 6-30 Advanced settings

Parameter	Description
p0346	**Magnetizing time** (factory setting 0 s) During this time the induction motor is magnetized. The inverter calculates this parameter using p0340 = 1 or 3.
p0855	**Open motor holding brake (imperative)** (factory setting 0)
p0858	**Close motor holding brake (imperative)** (factory setting 0)
p1351	**Starting frequency, motor holding brake** (factory setting 0%) Setting the frequency set value at the slip compensation output when starting with motor holding brake. When the parameter p1351 is set to > 0, slip compensation is automatically switched on.
p1352	**Starting frequency for motor holding brake** (factory setting 1351) Setting the signal source for the frequency set value at the slip compensation output when starting with motor holding brake.
p1475	**Speed controller torque set value for motor holding brake** (factory setting 0) Setting the signal source for the torque set value when starting with motor holding brake.

6.13 Free function blocks

The free function blocks permit configurable signal processing in the inverter.

The following free function blocks are available:

- AND, OR, XOR, and NOT logic
- RSR (RS flip-flop), DSR (D flip-flop) flip-flops
- Timers MFP (pulse generator), PCL (pulse shortening), PDE (ON delay), PDF (OFF delay), and PST (pulse stretching)
- ADD (adder), SUB (subtractor), MUL (multiplier), DIV (divider), AVA (absolute value generated), NCM (comparator), and PLI (polyline) arithmetic functions
- LIM (limiter), PT1 (smoothing), INT (integrator), DIF (differentiator) controllers
- NSW (analog) BSW (binary) switches
- LVM limit value monitoring

The number of free function blocks in the inverter is limited. You can only use a function block once. The inverter has 3 adders, for instance. If you have already configured three adders, then no other adders are available.

Application description for the free function blocks

Further information is provided in the Internet:

FAQ (http://support.automation.siemens.com/WW/view/en/85168215)

6.14 Selecting physical units

6.14.1 Select the motor standard

Selection options and parameters involved

The inverter represents the motor data corresponding to motor standard IEC or NEMA in different system units: SI units or US units.

Setting the motor standard using p0100 is part of quick commissioning.

Table 6-31 Parameters involved when selecting the motor standard

Parameter	Designation	Motor standard IEC/NEMA, p0100 =		
		0[1)] IEC motor 50 Hz, SI units	1 NEMA motor 60 Hz, US units	2 NEMA motor 60 Hz, SI units
r0206	Power Module rated power	kW	hp	kW
p0219	Braking resistor braking power	kW	hp	kW
p0307	Rated motor power	kW	hp	kW
p0316	Motor torque constant	Nm/A	lbf ft/A	Nm/A
r0333	Rated motor torque	Nm	lbf ft	Nm
p0341	Motor moment of inertia	kgm^2	$lb\ ft^2$	kgm^2
p0344	Motor weight	kg	Lb	kg
r0394	Rated motor power	kW	hp	kW
r1493	Total moment of inertia, scaled	kgm^2	$lb\ ft^2$	kgm^2

1) Factory setting

6.14.2 Selecting the system of units

Some physical units depend on the system of units selected (SI or US), for example the power [kW or hp] or the torque [Nm or lbf ft]. You can select in which system of units the converter represents its physical values.

Options when selecting the system of units

The following options apply when selecting the system of units:

- p0505 = 1: System of units SI (factory setting)
  Torque [Nm], power [kW], temperature [°C or K]
- p0505 = 2: Referred system of units/SI
  Represented as [%]

- p0505 = 3: US system of units
  Torque [lbf ft], power [hp], temperature [°F]
- p0505 = 4: System of units, referred/US
  Represented as [%]

Special features

The values for p0505 = 2 and for p0505 = 4 - represented in the converter - are identical. However, the reference to SI or US units is required for internal calculations and to output physical variables.

For variables, which cannot be represented as [%], then the following applies:
p0505 = 1 ≙ p0505 = 2 and p0505 = 3 ≙ p0505 = 4.

In the case of variables whose units are identical in the SI system and US system, and which can be displayed as a percentage, the following applies:
p0505 = 1 ≙ p0505 = 3 and p0505 = 2 ≙ p0505 = 4.

Reference variables

There is a reference variable in the converter for most parameters with physical units. When the referred representation [%] is set, then the converter scales the physical variables based on the particular reference variable.

When the reference variable changes, then the significance of the scaled value also changes. Example:

- Reference speed = 1500 rpm → fixed speed = 80 % ≙ 1200 rpm
- Reference speed = 3000 rpm → fixed speed = 80 % ≙ 2400 rpm

For each parameter you can find the associated reference variable for scaling in the List Manual. Example: r0065 is scaled with reference variable p2000.

If scaling is not specified in the List Manual, then the converter always represents/displays the parameter unscaled (not normalized).

Groups of units

The parameters associated with the selection of a physical unit, belong to different groups of units.

You can find the associated group of units in the List Manual for each parameter. Example: r0333 belongs to unit group 7_4.

An overview of the unit groups and the possible physical units can also be found in the List Manual.

Overview of the manuals (Page 459)

6.14.3 Selecting the technological unit of the technology controller

Options when selecting the technological unit

p0595 defines in which technological unit the input and output variables of the technology controller are calculated, e.g. [bar], [m³/min] or [kg/h]. More information on this topic is provided in the List Manual.

Reference variable

p0596 defines the reference variable of the technological unit for the technology controller.

Unit group

Parameters involved with p0595 belong to unit group 9_1.

More information on this topic is provided in the List Manual.

Overview of the manuals (Page 459)

Special features

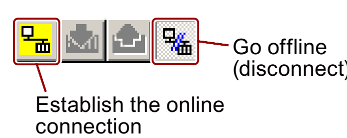
You must optimize the technology controller after changing p0595 or p0596.

6.14.4 Setting the motor standard, system of units and technology unit using STARTER

Precondition

STARTER must be in the offline mode to switch over the units.

Select the online mode or the offline mode using the adjacent buttons.

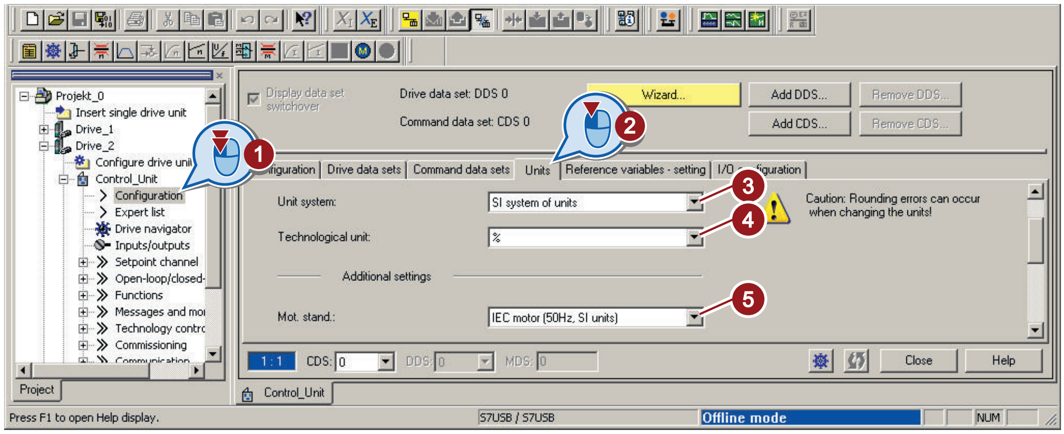


STARTER indicates whether you change the settings online in the converter or offline in the PC: Online mode / Offline mode.

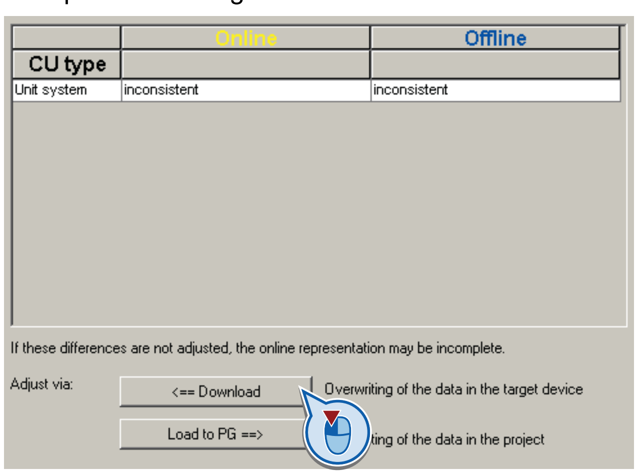
Procedure

Proceed as follows to select the motor standard and system of units using STARTER:

1. Select in the "Configuration" project tree.
2. Select under the "Units" tab.



3. Select the system of units.
4. Select the technological unit of the technology controller.
5. Select the motor standard.
6. Save your settings.
7. Go online.
   The inverter signals that offline, other units and process variables are set than in the inverter itself.
8. Accept these settings in the inverter.



You have selected the motor standard and system of units using STARTER.

6.15 Safe Torque Off (STO) safety function

The operating instructions describe how to commission the STO safety function as basic function for control via a fail-safe digital input.

A description of all the safety functions is provided in the "Safety Integrated" Function Manual:

- The basic functions and the extended functions
- Controlling safety functions via PROFIsafe

Overview of the manuals (Page 459)

6.15.1 Function description

What is the effect of the STO safety function?

The inverter with active STO function prevents energy supply to the motor. The motor can no longer generate torque on the motor shaft.

Consequently, the STO function prevents the starting of an electrically-driven machine component.

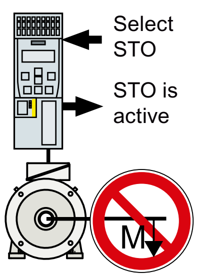


Table 6-32 The STO principle of operation as overview

	Safe Torque Off (STO)	Standard inverter functions linked with STO
1.	The inverter identifies when STO is selected via a fail-safe input or via PROFIsafe.	---
2.	The inverter prevents the energy supply to the motor.	If you use a motor holding brake, the inverter closes the motor holding brake. If you use a line contactor, the inverter opens the line contactor.
3.	The inverter signals "STO is active" via a fail-safe digital output or via PROFIsafe.	---

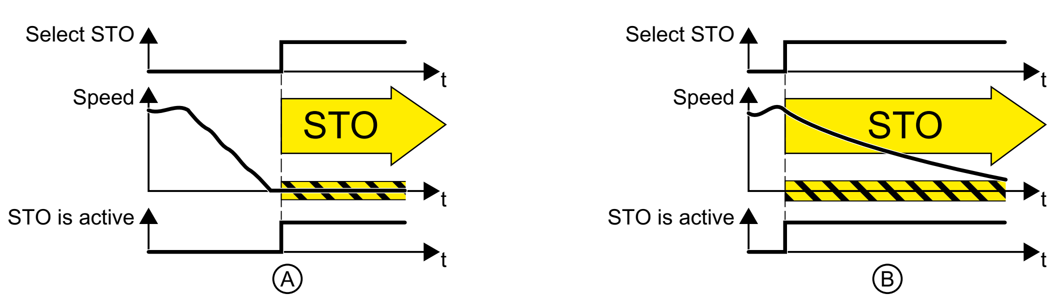


Figure 6-23 Functionality of STO when the motor is at standstill (A) and rotating (B)

(A): When selecting STO, if the motor is already stationary (zero speed), then STO prevents the motor from starting.

(B): If the motor is still rotating (B) when STO is selected, it coasts down to standstill.

The STO safety function is standardized

The STO function is defined in IEC/EN 61800-5-2:

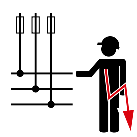
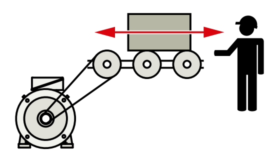
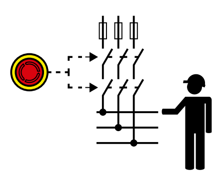
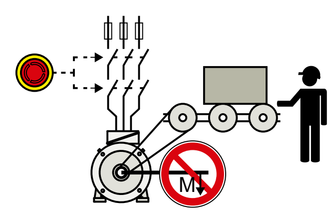
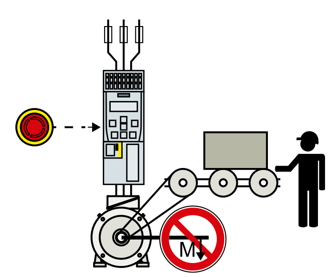
"[…] [The inverter] does not supply any energy to the motor which can generate a torque (or for a linear motor, a force)".

⇒ The STO inverter function conforms to IEC/EN 61800-5-2.

The distinction between Emergency Off and Emergency Stop

"Emergency Off" and "Emergency Stop" are commands that minimize different risks in the machine or plant.

The STO function is suitable for achieving an Emergency Stop but not an Emergency Off.

Risk:	Risk of electric shock: 	Risk of unexpected motion: 
Measure to minimize risk:	**Safe switch off** Switching off the electric power supply for the installation, either completely or partially.	**Safely stop and safely prevent restarting** Stopping or preventing the dangerous movement
Command:	**Emergency Off**	**Emergency Stop**
Classic solution:	Switch off the power supply: 	Switch off the drive power supply: 
Solution with the STO safety function integrated in the drive:	STO is not suitable for safely switching off an electric voltage.	Select STO:  It is permissible that you switch off the inverter power supply as well. However, switching off the voltage is not required as a risk-reduction measure.

Application examples for the STO function

The STO function is suitable for applications where the motor is already at a standstill or will come to a standstill in a short, safe period of time through friction. STO does not shorten the run-on time of machine components.

Examples	Possible solution
When the Emergency Stop button is pressed, a stationary motor should not unintentionally start.	• Interconnect the Emergency Stop pushbutton with a fail-safe inverter digital input. • Select STO via the fail-safe digital input.
A central Emergency Stop button must prevent the unintentional acceleration of several motors that are at a standstill.	• Evaluate the Emergency Stop button in a central control. • Select STO via PROFIsafe.

Prerequisite for STO use

In order to use the STO safety function, the machine manufacturer should have already performed a risk assessment, e.g. in compliance with EN ISO 1050, "Safety of machinery - Principles of risk assessment". The risk assessment must confirm that the inverter is permitted for use in accordance with SIL 2 or PL d.

6.15.2 Commissioning STO

We recommend that you commission the safety functions using the STARTER or Startdrive PC tool.

Tools to commission the inverter (Page 116)

6.15.2.1 Safety functions password

What is the purpose of the password?

The password protects the settings of the safety function from being changed by unauthorized persons.

Does the password need to be set?

The password does not need to be set.

The machine manufacturer decides whether or not a password is required.

The probabilities of failure (PFH) and the certification of the safety functions also apply when no password has been set.

What do I do if I lose the password?

If you no longer know the password but still want to change the settings for safety functions, proceed as follows:

1. Create a new project for the inverter with STARTER or Startdrive.
   Leave all the factory setting in the project.
2. Load the project in the inverter.
   After loading, the inverter has the factory settings.
3. If a memory card inserted in the inverter, remove it.
4. Recommission the inverter.

You can obtain more information or learn about alternative procedures from Technical Support.

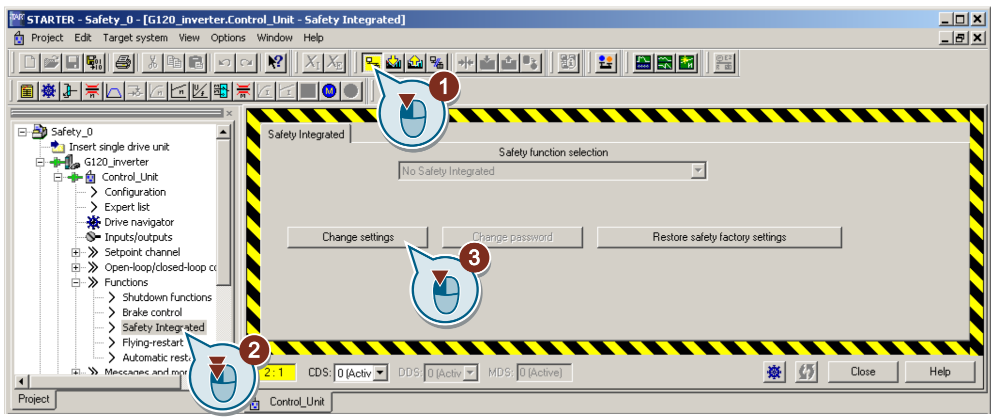
No.	Description	
p9761	**Entering a password** (factory setting 0000 hex)	
	0:	No password set
	1 … FFFF FFFF:	Password is set
p9762	**New password**	
p9763	**Password confirmation**	

6.15.2.2 Configuring a safety function

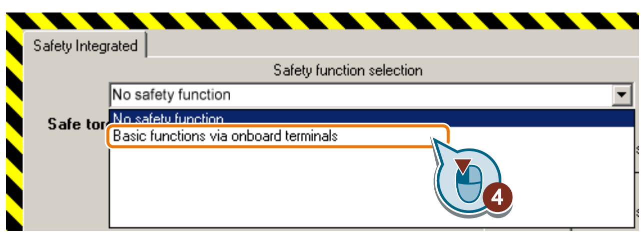
Procedure with STARTER

To configure the safety functions, proceed as follows:

1. Go online.
2. Select the "Safety Integrated" function
3. Select "Change settings".



4. Select "Basic functions via onboard terminals":



You have configured the safety functions.

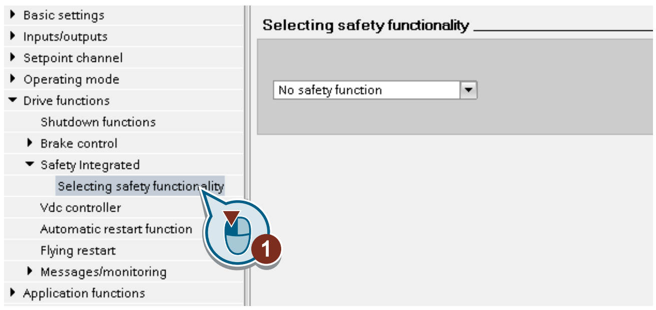
Additional safety function configurations are described in the "Safety Integrated" Function Manual.

Overview of the manuals (Page 459)

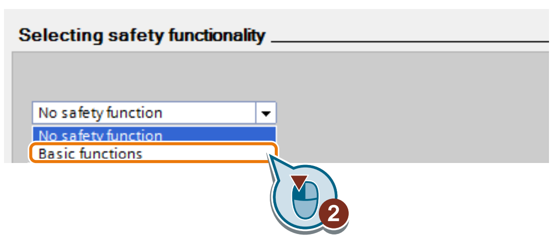
Procedure with Startdrive

Proceed as follows to configure the safety functions:

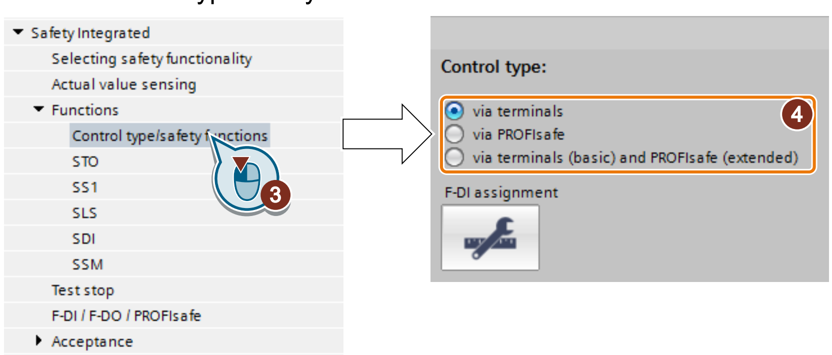
1. Select "Select safety functionality".



2. Select "Basic functions".



3. Select "Control type/safety functions".



4. Select "Via terminals" as control type for the safety functions.

You have configured the safety functions

Additional configurations of the safety functions are described in the "Safety Integrated" Function Manual.

Overview of the manuals (Page 459)

Parameter	Description	
p0010 = 95	**Drive commissioning parameter filter** Safety Integrated commissioning	
p9601	**Enable functions integrated in the drive** (factory setting: 0000 bin)	
	0 hex	None of the safety functions has been released
	1 hex	Basic functions via onboard terminals has been enabled
p9761	**Enter a password** (factory setting: 0000 hex) Permissible passwords lie in the range 1 … FFFF FFFF.	

Parameter	Description
p9762	New password
p9763	Password confirmation

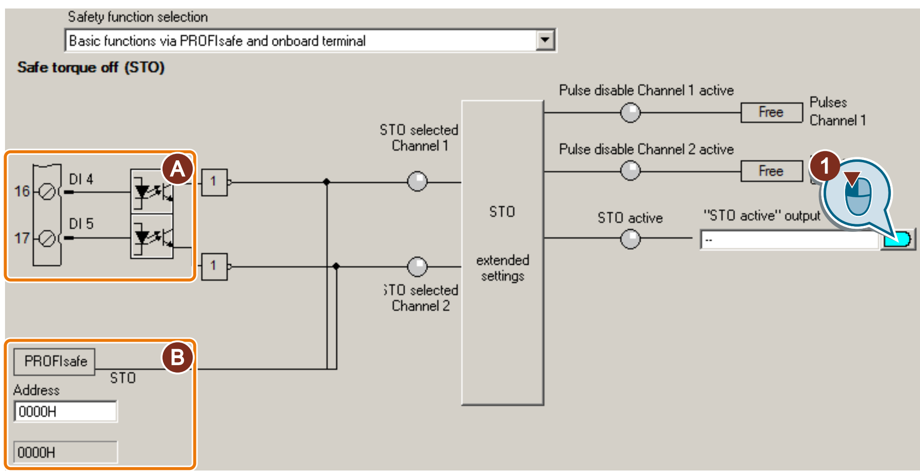
6.15.2.3 Interconnecting the "STO active" signal

If you require the feedback signal "STO active" of the inverter in your higher-level control system, then you must appropriately interconnect the signal.

Procedure with STARTER and Startdrive

To interconnect the "STO active" checkback signal, proceed as follows:

1. Select the button for the feedback signal.

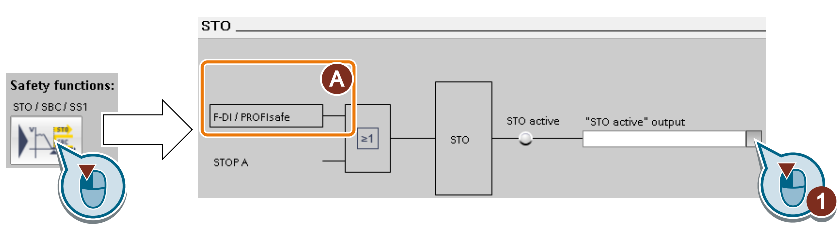


The screen form varies depending on the interface selected.

(A) Input terminals

(B) PROFIsafe interface

Figure 6-24 Interconnecting "STO active" in STARTER



The screen form varies depending on the interface selected.

(A) Control type

Figure 6-25 Interconnecting "STO active" in Startdrive

2. Select the signal that matches your particular application.

- You have interconnected the "STO active" checkback signal. After STO has been selected, the inverter signals "STO active" to the higher-level control.

Parameter	Description
r9773.01	**1 signal**: STO is active in the drive

6.15.2.4 Setting the filter for fail-safe digital inputs

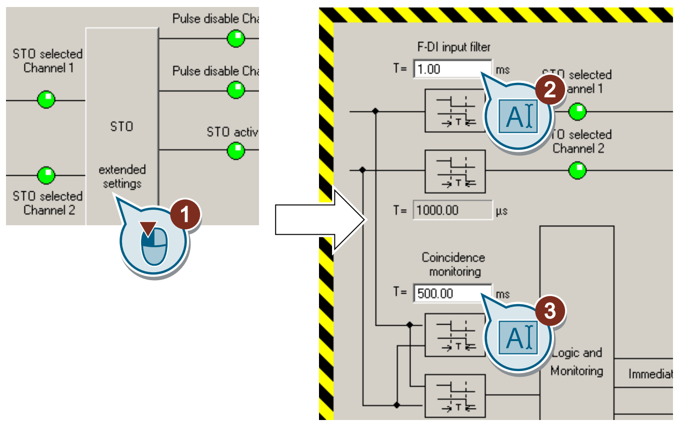
Requirement

You are online with STARTER or Startdrive online.

Procedure with STARTER

Proceed as follows to set the input filter and the simultaneity monitoring of the fail-safe digital input:

1. Select the "Extended settings" button.



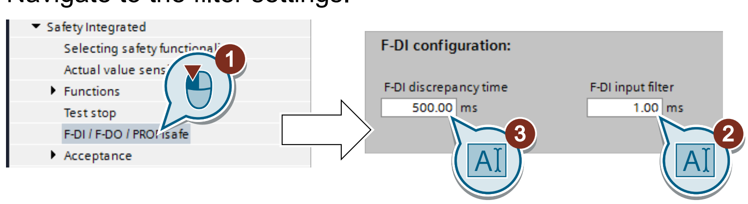
2. Set the debounce time for the F-DI input filter.
3. Set the discrepancy time for the simultaneity monitoring.
4. Close the screen form.

You have set the input filter and the simultaneity monitoring of the fail-safe digital input.

Procedure with Startdrive

Proceed as follows to set the input filter and the simultaneity monitoring of the fail-safe digital input:

1. Navigate to the filter settings.



2. Set the debounce time for the F-DI input filter.
3. Set the discrepancy time for the simultaneity monitoring.

You have set the input filter and the simultaneity monitoring of the fail-safe digital input.

Description of the signal filter

The following filters are available for the fail-safe digital inputs:

- One filter for the simultaneity monitoring
- A filter to suppress short signals, e.g. test pulses.

Set the discrepancy time for the simultaneity monitoring.

The inverter checks that the two input signals of the fail-safe digital input always have the same signal state (high or low).

With electromechanical sensors (e.g. emergency stop buttons or door switches), the two sensor contacts never switch at exactly the same time and are therefore temporarily inconsistent (discrepancy). A permanent discrepancy signifies a fault in the fail-safe digital input circuit, e.g. wire breakage.

When appropriately set, the inverter tolerates brief discrepancies.

The discrepancy time does not extend the inverter response time. The inverter selects its safety function as soon as one of the two F-DI signals changes its state from high to low.

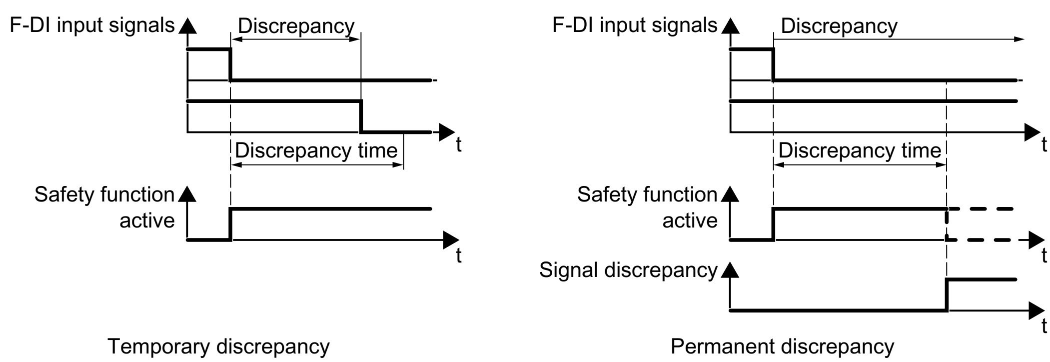


Figure 6-26 Simultaneity monitoring with discrepancy time

Filter to suppress short signals

In the following cases, an immediate inverter response to signal changes of the fail-safe digital inputs is not desirable:

- If a fail-safe digital input of the inverter is interconnected with an electromechanical sensor, signal changes can occur due to contact bounce.
- In order to identify faults due to short-circuit or cross faults, several control modules test their fail-safe digital outputs with "bit pattern tests" (bright/dark test). If a fail-safe digital input of the inverter is interconnected with a fail-safe digital output of an open-loop control module, then the inverter responds with a bit pattern test.
  The typical duration of the signal change within a bit pattern test:
  - On test: 1 ms
  - Off test: 4 ms

If the fail-safe digital input responds to many signal changes within a certain time, then the inverter responds with a fault.

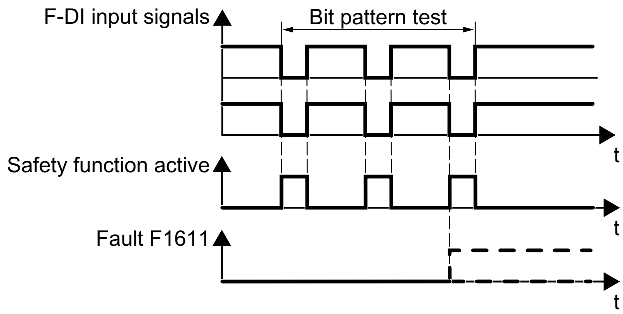


Figure 6-27 Inverter response to a bit pattern test

A filter in the inverter suppresses brief signals as a result of the bit pattern test or contact bounce.

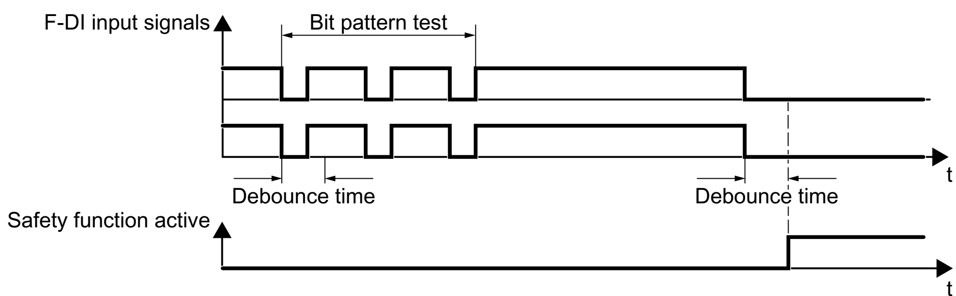


Figure 6-28 Filter to suppress brief signals

The filter extends the response time of the safety function by the debounce time.

Parameter	Description
p9650	**F-DI changeover tolerance time** (factory setting: 500 ms) Tolerance time to change over the fail-safe digital input for the basic functions.
p9651	**STO debounce time** (factory setting: 1 ms) Debounce time of the fail-safe digital input for the basic functions.

Debounce times for standard and safety functions

The debounce time p0724 for "standard" digital inputs has no influence on the fail-safe input signals. Conversely, the same applies: The F-DI debounce time does not affect the signals of the "standard" inputs.

If you use an input as a standard input, set the debounce time using parameter p0724 .

If you use an input as a fail-safe input, set the debounce time as described above.

6.15.2.5 Setting the forced checking procedure (test stop)

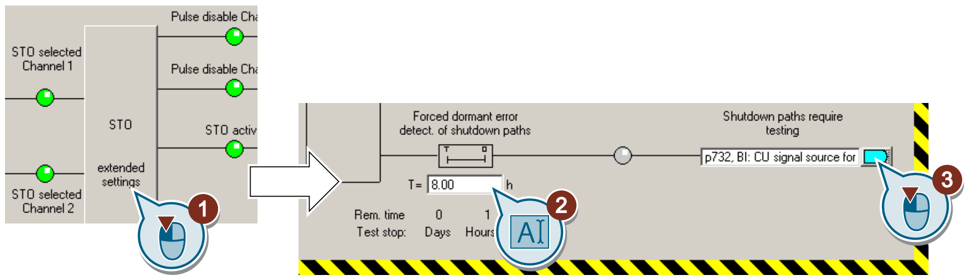
Requirement

You are online with STARTER or Startdrive online.

Procedure with STARTER

To set the forced checking procedure (test stop) of the basic functions, proceed as follows:

1. Select the screen form for setting the forced checking procedure.



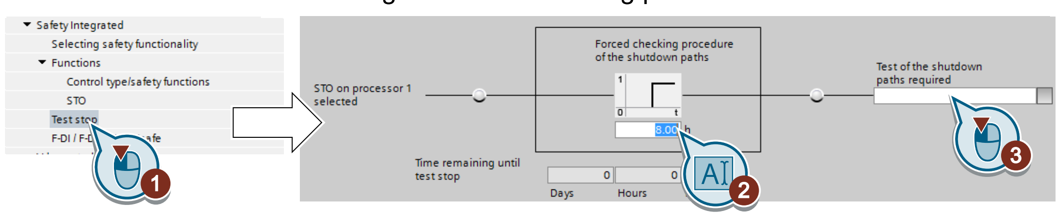
2. Set the monitoring time to a value to match your application.
3. Using this signal, the inverter signals that a forced checking procedure (test stop) is required. Interconnect this signal with an inverter signal of your choice.
4. Close the screen form.

You have set the forced checking procedure (test stop) for the basic functions.

Procedure with Startdrive

To set the forced checking procedure (test stop) of the basic functions, proceed as follows:

1. Select the screen form for setting the forced checking procedure.



2. Set the monitoring time to a value to match your application.
3. Using this signal, the inverter signals that a forced checking procedure (test stop) is required. Interconnect this signal with an inverter signal of your choice.

You have set the forced checking procedure (test stop) for the basic functions.

Description

The forced checking procedure (test stop) of the basic functions is an inverter self test. The inverter checks its circuits to switch off the torque. If you are using the Safe Brake Relay, for a forced checking procedure, the inverter also checks the circuits of this component.

You start the forced checking procedure each time that the STO function is selected.

Using a timer block, the inverter monitors as to whether the forced checking procedure is regularly performed.

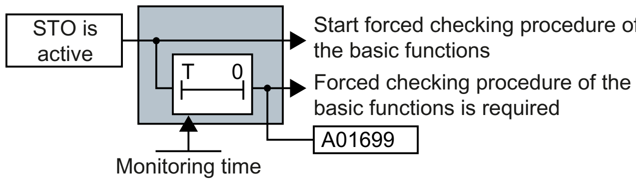


Figure 6-29 Starting and monitoring the forced checking procedure (test stop)

Parameter	Description
p9659	**Forced dormant error detection timer** (Factory setting: 8 h) Monitoring time for the forced dormant error detection.
r9660	**Forced dormant error detection remaining time** Displays the remaining time until the forced dormant error detection and testing the safety switch-off signal paths.
r9773.31	**1 signal: Forced dormant error detection is required** Signals for the higher-level control system.

6.15.2.6 Activating the settings and checking the digital inputs

Activate settings

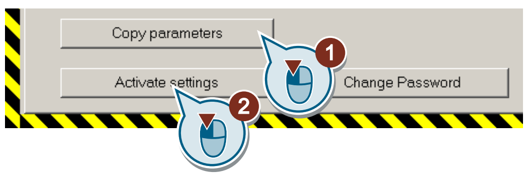
Requirement

You are online with STARTER or Startdrive online.

Procedure with STARTER

To activate the settings for the safety functions, proceed as follows:

1. Press the "Copy parameters" button, to create a redundant image of your inverter settings.



2. Press the "Activate settings" button.
3. If the password is the factory default, you are prompted to change the password.
   If you try to set a password that is not permissible, the old password will not be changed.
4. Confirm the prompt for saving your settings (copy RAM to ROM).
5. Switch off the inverter supply voltage.
6. Wait until all LEDs on the inverter go dark (no voltage condition).
7. Switch on the inverter supply voltage again.

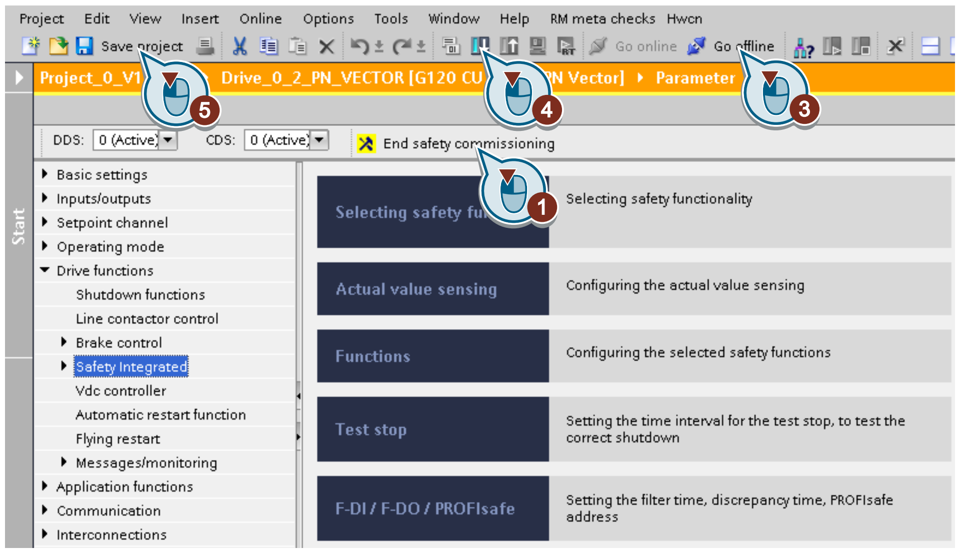
Your settings are now active.

Procedure with Startdrive

1.
2.

To activate the settings of the safety functions in the drive, proceed as follows:

1. Click the "End safety commissioning" button.



2. Confirm the prompt for saving your settings (copy RAM to ROM).
3. Disconnect the online connection.
4. Select the "Load from device (software)" button.
5. Save the project.
6. Switch off the inverter supply voltage.
7. Wait until all LEDs on the inverter go dark (no voltage condition).
8. Switch on the inverter supply voltage again.

Your settings are now active.

Parameter	Description
p9700 = D0 hex	**SI copy function** (factory setting: 0) Start the SI parameter copy function.
p9701 = DC hex	**Confirm data change** (factory setting: 0) Confirm SI Basic parameter change
p0010 = 0	**Drive commissioning parameter filter** 0: Ready
p0971 = 1	**Save parameter** 1: Save the drive object (copy from RAM to ROM) After the inverter has saved the parameters in a non-volatile fashion, then p0971 = 0.

Checking the connection of digital inputs

The simultaneous connection of digital inputs with a safety function and a "standard" function may lead to the drive behaving in unexpected ways.

If you control the safety functions in the inverter via fail-safe digital inputs, then you must check as to whether the fail-safe digital inputs are in some instances interconnected with a "standard" function.

Procedure with STARTER

Proceed as follows to check as to whether the fail-safe digital inputs are only used for the safety functions:

1. In the project navigator, select the inputs/outputs.
2. Select the screen for the digital inputs.
3. Remove all interconnections of the digital inputs that you use as fail-safe digital input F-DI:

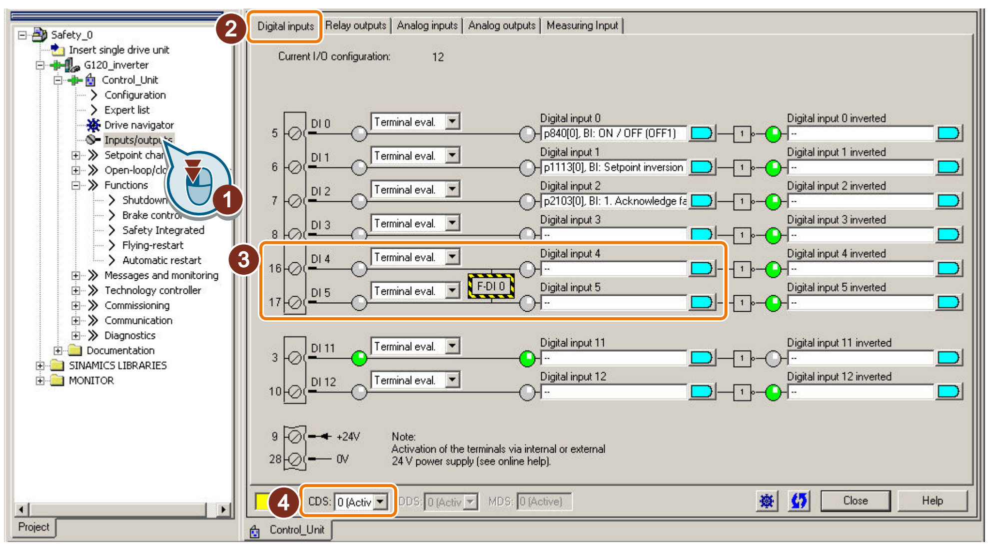


Figure 6-30 Removing the DI 4 and DI 5 digital-input connections

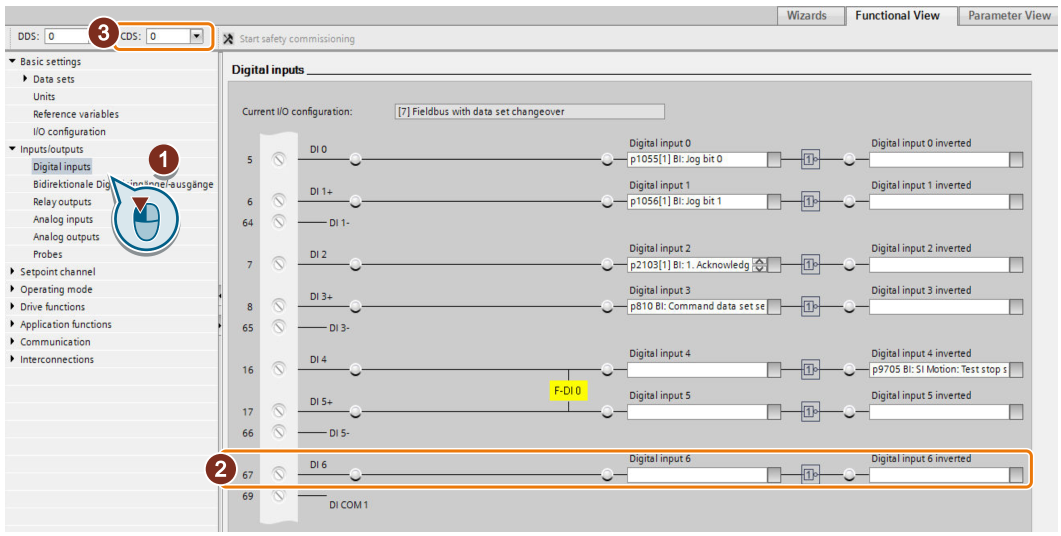
4. You must delete the digital input connections for all CDS if you use the switchover of the command data sets (CDS).
   You can find a description of the CDS switchover in the operating instructions.

You have ensured that the fail-safe digital inputs only control the safety functions in the inverter.

Procedure with Startdrive

Proceed as follows to check as to whether the fail-safe digital inputs are only used for the safety functions:

1. Select the screen for the digital inputs.
2. Remove all interconnections of the digital inputs that you use as fail-safe digital input F-DI:



3. You must delete the digital input connections for all CDS if you use the switchover of the command data sets (CDS).
   You can find a description of the CDS switchover in the operating instructions.

You have ensured that the fail-safe digital inputs only control the safety functions in the inverter.

6.15.2.7 Acceptance - completion of commissioning

What is an acceptance?

The machine manufacturer is responsible in ensuring that his plant or machine functions perfectly. As a consequence, after commissioning, the machine manufacturer must check those functions or have them checked by specialist personnel, which represent an increased risk of injury or material damage. This acceptance or validation is, for example, also specified in the European machinery directive and essentially comprises two parts:

- Checking the safety-relevant functions and machine parts.
  → **Acceptance test**.
- Generate an "Acceptance report" that describes the test results.
  → **Documentation**.

Supply information for the validation, e.g. the harmonized European standards EN ISO 13849-1 and EN ISO 13849-2.

Acceptance test of the machine or plant

The acceptance test checks whether the safety-relevant functions in the plant or machine function correctly. The documentation of the components used in the safety functions can also provide information about the necessary tests.

Testing the safety-related functions includes, e.g. the following:

- Are all safety equipment such as protective door monitoring devices, light barriers or emergency-off switches connected and ready for operation?
- Does the higher-level control respond as expected to the safety-relevant feedback signals of the inverter?
- Do the inverter settings match the configured safety-relevant function in the machine?

Acceptance test of the inverter

The acceptance test of the inverter is a part of the acceptance test of the entire machine or plant.

The acceptance test of the inverter checks whether the integrated drive safety functions are set up correctly for the planned safety function of the machine.

Recommended acceptance test (Page 453)

Documentation of the inverter

The following must be documented for the inverter:

- The results of the acceptance test.
- The settings of the integrated drive safety functions.
  The STARTER commissioning tool logs the settings of the integrated drive functions, if necessary.
  Acceptance - completion of commissioning (Page 232)

The documentation must be signed.

Who may perform the acceptance test of the inverter?

Personnel from the machine manufacturer, who, on account of their technical qualifications and knowledge of the safety functions, are in a position to perform the acceptance test in the correct manner are authorized to perform the acceptance testing of the inverter.

Reduced acceptance test after function expansions

A full acceptance test is necessary only after first commissioning. A reduced acceptance test is sufficient when safety functions are expanded.

Measure	Acceptance test	
	Acceptance test	Documentation
Functional expansion of the machine (additional drive).	Yes. Only check the safety functions of the new drive.	• Supplement machine overview • Supplement inverter data • Add function table • Log the new checksums • Countersignature
Transfer of inverter settings to other identical machines by means of series commissioning.	No. Only check the control of all of the safety functions.	• Add machine description • Check checksums • Check firmware versions

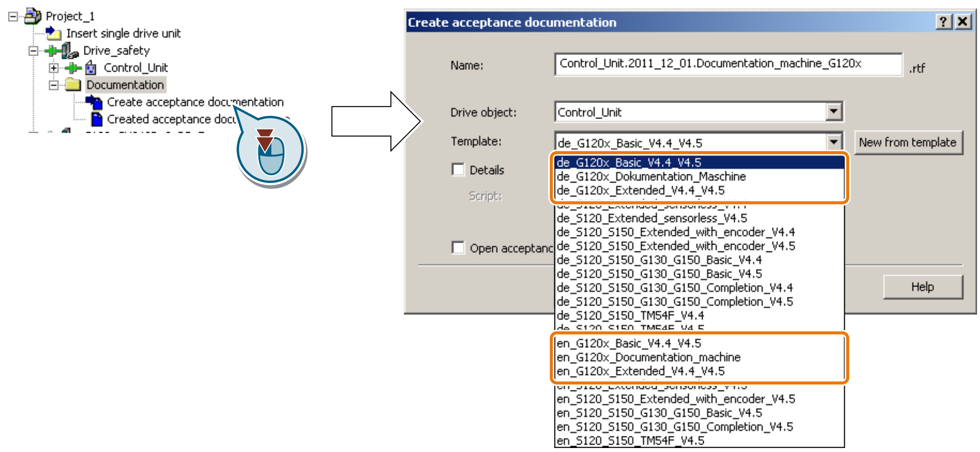
Document for the acceptance

The STARTER provides you with a number of documents to be regarded as a recommendation for the acceptance tests of the safety functions.

Procedure

Proceed as follows to create the acceptance documentation for the drive using STARTER:

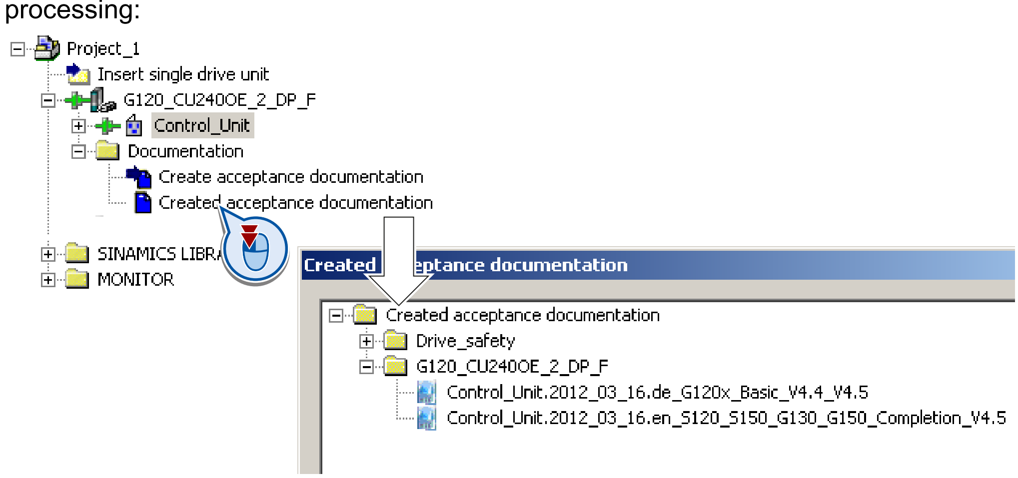
1. In STARTER, select "Create acceptance documentation":



   STARTER has templates in German and English.

2. Select the suitable template and create a report for each drive of your machine or system:
   - Template for the machine documentation:
     de_G120x_Dokumentation_Maschine: German template.
     en_G120x_Documentation_machine: English template.
   - Report of the settings for the basic functions, as of firmware version V4.4:
     de_G120x_Basic_V4.4…: German report.
     en_G120x_Basic_V4.4…: English report.

3. You load the created reports for archiving and the machine documentation for further processing:



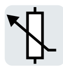
4. Archive the reports and the machine documentation.

You have generated the documents to accept the safety functions.

Acceptance test for the safety function (Page 453)

6.16 Setpoints

6.16.1 Overview



The inverter receives its main setpoint from the setpoint source. The main setpoint generally specifies the motor speed.

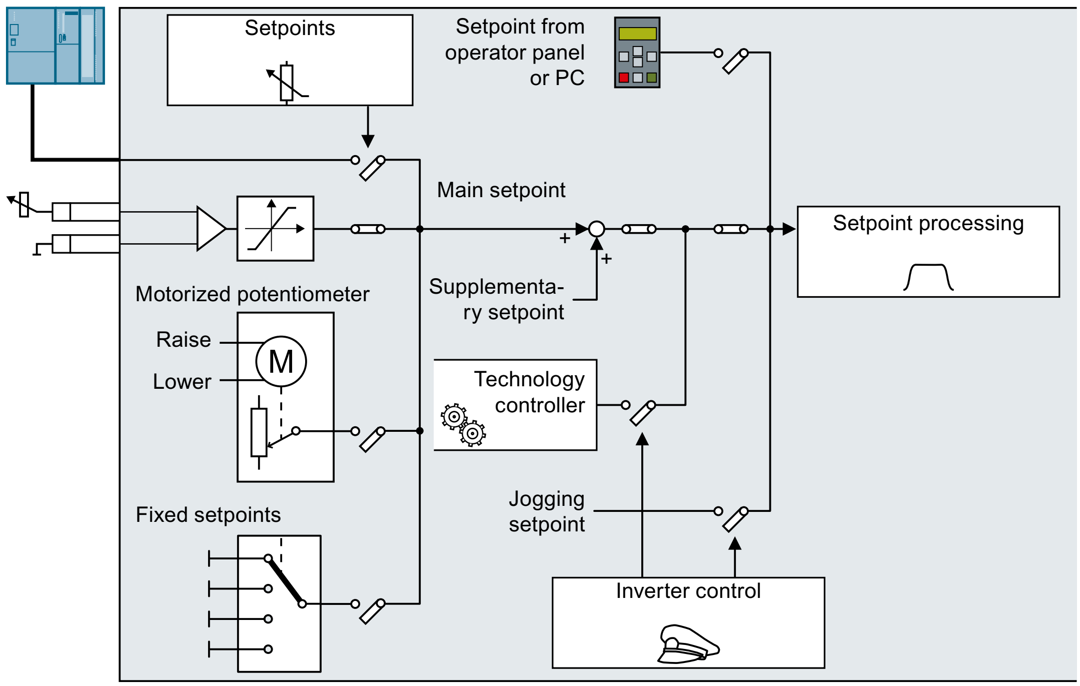


Figure 6-31 Setpoint sources for the inverter

You have the following options when selecting the source of the main setpoint:

- Inverter analog input.
- Inverter fieldbus interface.
- Motorized potentiometer simulated in the inverter.
- Fixed setpoints saved in the inverter.

You have the same selection options when selecting the source of the supplementary setpoint.

Under the following conditions, the inverter switches from the main setpoint to other setpoints:

- When the technology controller is active and appropriately interconnected, its output specifies the motor speed.
- When jogging is active.
- When controlling from an operator panel or the STARTER PC tool.

6.16.2 Analog input as setpoint source

Interconnecting an analog input

If you have selected a pre-assignment without a function of the analog input, then you must interconnect the parameter of the main setpoint with an analog input.

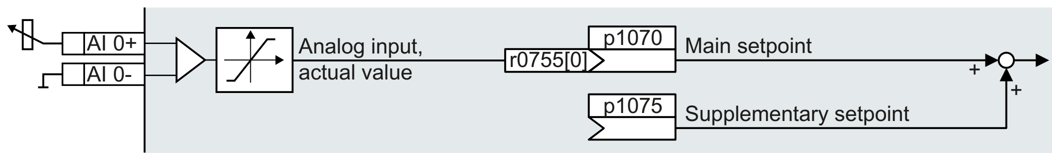


Figure 6-32 Example: Analog input 0 as setpoint source

Table 6-33 Setting with analog input 0 as setpoint source

Parameter	Remark
p1070 = 755[0]	**Main setpoint** Interconnect the main setpoint with analog input 0
p1075 = 755[0]	**Additional setpoint** Interconnect the additional setpoint with analog input 0

6.16.3 Specifying the setpoint via the fieldbus

Interconnecting the fieldbus with the main setpoint

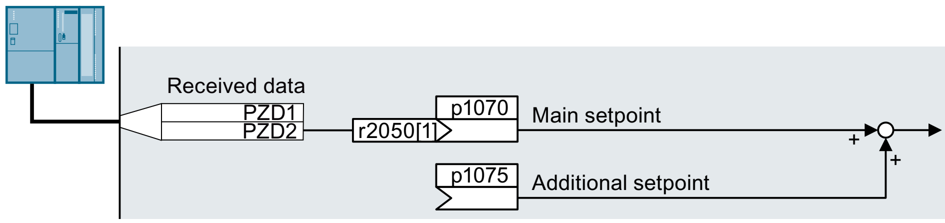


Figure 6-33 Fieldbus as setpoint source

Most standard telegrams receive the speed setpoint as a second process data PZD2.

Table 6-34 Setting the fieldbus as setpoint source

Parameter	Remark
p1070 = 2050[1]	**Main setpoint** Interconnect the main setpoint with process data PZD2 from the fieldbus.
p1075 = 2050[1]	**Additional setpoint** Interconnect the additional setpoint with process data PZD2 from the fieldbus.

6.16.4 Motorized potentiometer as setpoint source

The "Motorized potentiometer" function emulates an electromechanical potentiometer. The output value of the motorized potentiometer can be set with the "higher" and "lower" control signals.

Interconnecting the motorized potentiometer (MOP) with the setpoint source

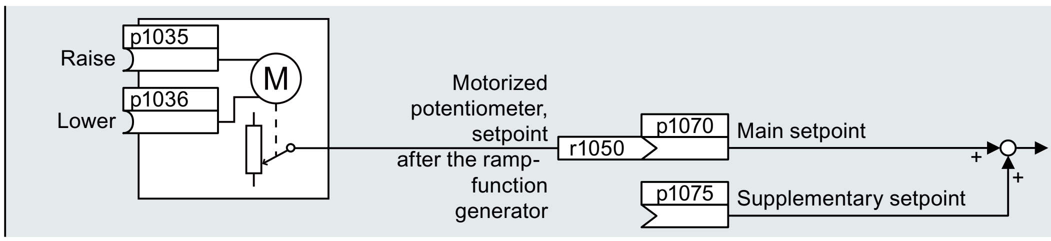


Figure 6-34 Motorized potentiometer as setpoint source

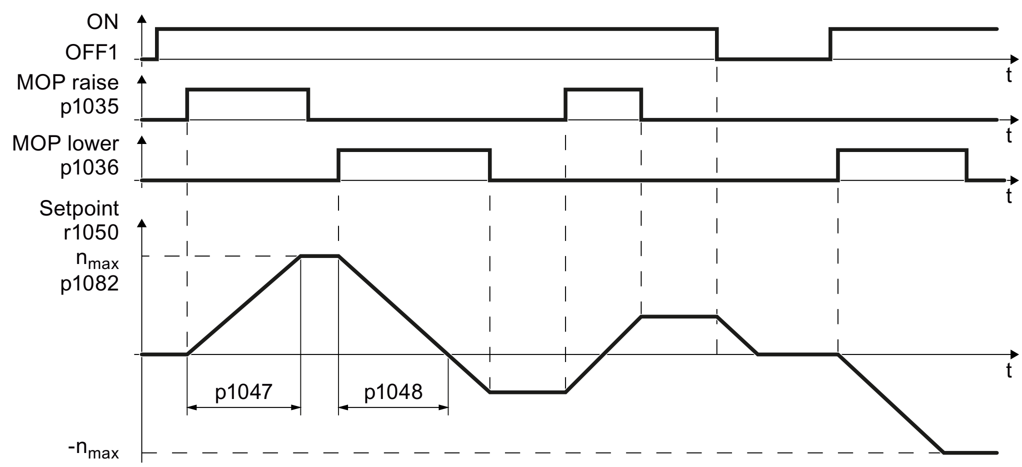


Figure 6-35 Function chart of the motorized potentiometer

Table 6-35 Basic setup of motorized potentiometer

Parameter	Description	
p1035	**Motorized potentiometer setpoint higher**	Interconnect these commands with signals of your choice.
p1036	**Motorized potentiometer setpoint lower**	
p1040	**MOP start value** (factory setting: 0 rpm) Defines the start value [rpm] that is effective when the motor is switched on.	
p1047	**MOP ramp-up time** (factory setting: 10 s)	
p1048	**MOP ramp-down time** (factory setting: 10 s)	
r1050	**Motorized potentiometer setpoint after the ramp-function generator**	
p1070 = 1050	**Main setpoint**	

Table 6-36 Extended setup of motorized potentiometer

Parameter	Description	
p1030	**MOP configuration** (factory setting: 00110 bin)	
	.00	Storage active = 0: After the motor has been switched on, the setpoint = p1040 = 1: After the motor has switched off, the inverter saves the setpoint. After the motor has switched on, the setpoint = the stored value
	.01	Automatic mode, ramp-function generator active (1-signal via BI: p1041) = 0: Ramp-up/ramp-down time = 0 = 1: With ramp-function generator In manual mode (p1041 = 0), the ramp-function generator is always active.
	.02	Initial rounding active 1: With initial rounding. Using the initial rounding function it is possible to enter very small setpoint changes
	.03	Storage in NVRAM active 1: If bit 00 = 1, the setpoint is retained during a power failure
	.04	Ramp-function generator always active 1: The inverter also calculates the ramp-function generator when the motor is switched off
p1037	**MOP maximum speed** (factory setting: 0 rpm) Automatically pre-assigned when commissioning	
p1038	**MOP minimum speed** (factory setting: 0 rpm) Automatically pre-assigned when commissioning	
p1039	**Motorized potentiometer, inversion** (factory setting: 0) Signal source for inverting the minimum speed / velocity or maximum speed / velocity	
p1041	**Motorized potentiometer, manual/automatic** (factory setting: 0) Signal source for switchover from manual to automatic	
p1043	**Motorized potentiometer, accept setting value** (factory setting: 0) Signal source for accepting the setting value. The motorized potentiometer accepts the setting value p1044 on signal change p1043 = 0 → 1.	
p1044	**MOP setting value** (factory setting: 0) Signal source for the setting value.	

For more information about the motorized potentiometer, refer to function diagram 3020 in the List Manual.

6.16.5 Fixed speed setpoint as setpoint source

In many applications after switching on the motor, all that is needed is to run the motor at a constant speed or to switch between different speeds.

Example: After it has been switched on, a conveyor belt only runs with two different velocities.

Interconnecting a fixed speed setpoint with the main setpoint

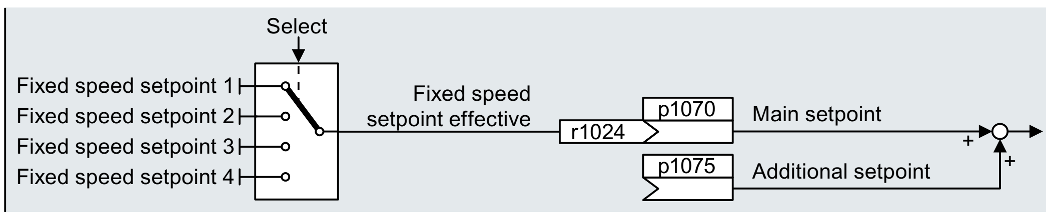


Figure 6-36 Fixed speed setpoint as setpoint source

Table 6-37 Setting the fixed speed setpoint as setpoint source

Parameter	Remark
p1070 = 1024	**Main setpoint** Interconnect main setpoint with fixed speed setpoint.

Selecting the fixed speed setpoint, either direct or binary

The inverter makes a distinction between two methods when selecting the fixed speed setpoints:

Directly selecting a fixed speed setpoint

You set 4 different fixed speed setpoints. Up to 16 different setpoints are obtained by adding one or several of the four fixed speed setpoints.

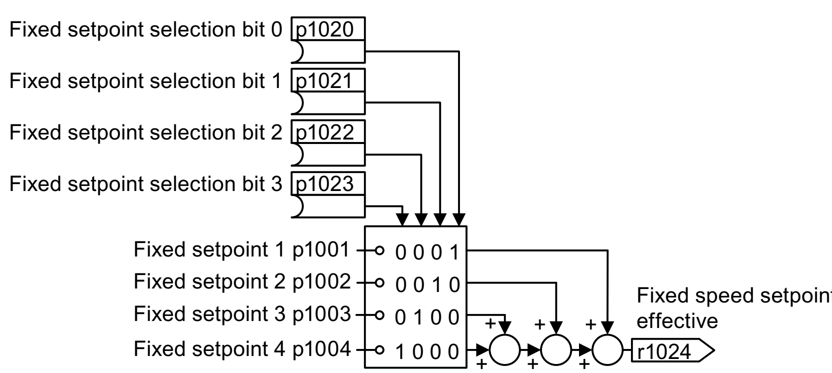


Figure 6-37 Simplified function diagram when directly selecting the fixed speed setpoints

Additional information about direct selection can be found in function diagram 3011 in the List Manual.

Selecting the fixed speed setpoint, binary

You set 16 different fixed speed setpoints. You precisely select one of these 16 fixed speed setpoints by combining four selection bits.

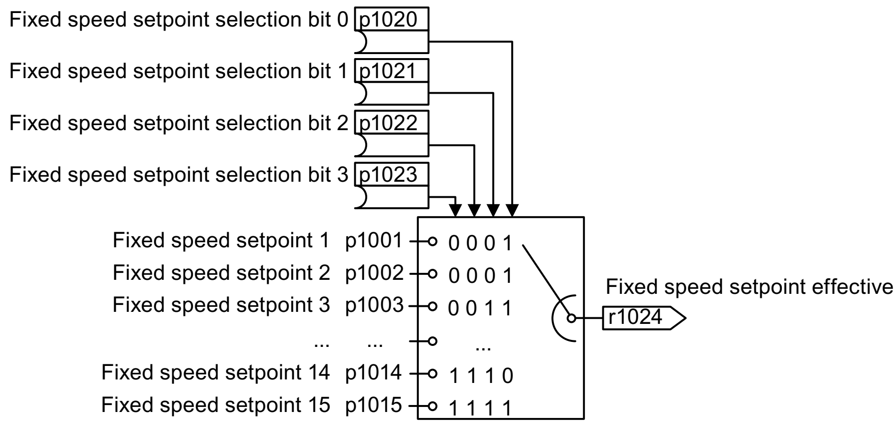


Figure 6-38 Simplified function diagram when selecting the fixed speed setpoints, binary

Additional information about binary selection can be found in function diagram 3010 in the List Manual.

Parameters to set the fixed speed setpoints

<table>
<tr><th>Parameter</th><th colspan="2">Description</th></tr>
<tr><td>p1001</td><td colspan="2">Fixed speed setpoint 1 (factory setting: 0 rpm)</td></tr>
<tr><td>p1002</td><td colspan="2">Fixed speed setpoint 2 (factory setting: 0 rpm)</td></tr>
<tr><td>...</td><td colspan="2">...</td></tr>
<tr><td>p1015</td><td colspan="2">Fixed speed setpoint 15 (factory setting: 0 rpm)</td></tr>
<tr><td rowspan="3">p1016</td><td colspan="2">Fixed speed setpoint mode (factory setting: 1)</td></tr>
<tr><td>1:</td><td>Direct</td></tr>
<tr><td>2:</td><td>Binary</td></tr>
<tr><td>p1020</td><td colspan="2">Fixed speed setpoint selection bit 0 (factory setting: 0)</td></tr>
<tr><td>p1021</td><td colspan="2">Fixed speed setpoint selection bit 1 (factory setting: 0)</td></tr>
<tr><td>p1022</td><td colspan="2">Fixed speed setpoint selection bit 2 (factory setting: 0)</td></tr>
<tr><td>p1023</td><td colspan="2">Fixed speed setpoint selection bit 3 (factory setting: 0)</td></tr>
<tr><td>r1024</td><td colspan="2">Fixed speed setpoint effective</td></tr>
<tr><td rowspan="2">r1025.0</td><td colspan="2">Fixed speed setpoint status</td></tr>
<tr><td>1 signal</td><td>Fixed speed setpoint is selected</td></tr>
</table>

Application example: Directly selecting two fixed speed setpoints

The motor should operate at different speeds as follows:

- The signal on digital input 0 switches the motor on and accelerates it to 300 rpm.
- The signal at digital input 1 accelerates the motor to 2000 rpm.
- The signals at the two digital inputs accelerate the motor to 2300 rpm.

Table 6-38 Settings for the application example

Parameter	Description
p1001 = 300.000	**Fixed speed setpoint 1** [rpm]
p1002 = 2000.000	**Fixed speed setpoint 2** [rpm]
p0840 = 722.0	**ON/OFF1:** Switches on the motor with digital input 0
p1070 = 1024	**Main setpoint:** Interconnects the main setpoint with fixed speed setpoint.
p1020 = 722.0	**Fixed speed setpoint selection bit 0:** Interconnects fixed speed setpoint 1 with digital input 0 (DI 0).
p1021 = 722.1	**Fixed speed setpoint selection bit 1:** Interconnects fixed speed setpoint 2 with digital input 1 (DI 1).
p1016 = 1	**Fixed speed setpoint mode:** Directly selects fixed speed setpoints.

Table 6-39 Resulting fixed speed setpoints for the application example

Fixed speed setpoint selected via	Resulting setpoint
DI 0 = 0	Motor stops
DI 0 = 1 and DI 1 = 0	300 rpm
DI 0 = 1 and DI 1 = 1	2300 rpm

6.17 Setpoint calculation

6.17.1 Overview of setpoint processing

The setpoint can be modified as follows using the setpoint processing:

- Invert setpoint to reverse the motor direction of rotation (reversing).
- Inhibit positive or negative direction of rotation, e.g. for conveyor belts, pumps or fans.
- Skip frequency bands to prevent mechanical resonance effects.
  The skip frequency band at speed = 0 results in a minimum speed after switching on the motor.
- Limit to a maximum speed to protect the motor and mechanical system.
- Ramp-function generator to accelerate and brake the motor with an optimum torque.

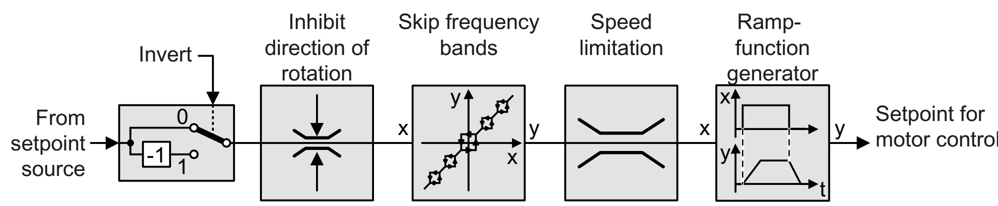
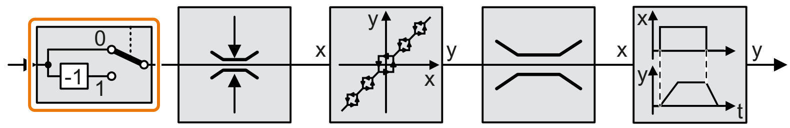
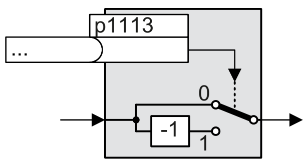


Figure 6-39 Setpoint processing in the converter

6.17.2 Invert setpoint

The inverter provides an option to invert the setpoint sign using a bit. As an example, the setpoint inversion is shown through a digital input.





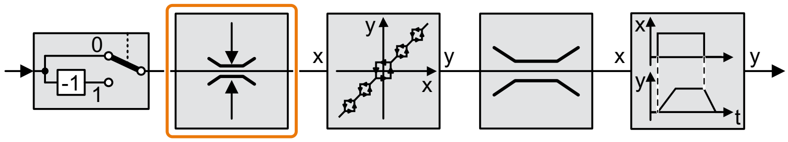
To invert the setpoint via an external signal, interconnect parameter p1113 with a binary signal, e.g. digital input 1.

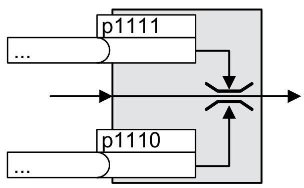
Table 6-40 Application example for inverting the setpoint

Parameter	Remark	
p1113	**Setpoint inversion** (factory setting depends on the inverter)	
	p1113 = 722.1	Digital input 1 = 0: Setpoint remains unchanged. Digital input 1 = 1: Inverter inverts the setpoint.
	p1113 = 2090.11	Invert setpoint via control word 1, bit 11.

6.17.3 Inhibit direction of rotation

In the factory setting of the inverter, both motor directions of rotation are enabled.





Set the corresponding parameter to a value = 1 to permanently block directions of rotation.

Table 6-41 Application examples for inhibiting and enabling the direction of rotation

Parameter	Remark	
p1110	**Inhibit negative direction** (factory setting: 0) 0 signal: Direction of rotation is enabled 1 signal: Direction of rotation is locked	
	p1110 = 1	Negative direction of rotation is permanently inhibited.
	p1110 = 722.3	Digital input 3 = 0: Negative direction of rotation is enabled. Digital input 3 = 1: Negative direction of rotation is inhibited.
p1111	**Inhibit positive direction** (factory setting: 0) 0 signal: Direction of rotation is enabled 1 signal: Direction of rotation is locked	

6.17.4 Skip frequency bands and minimum speed

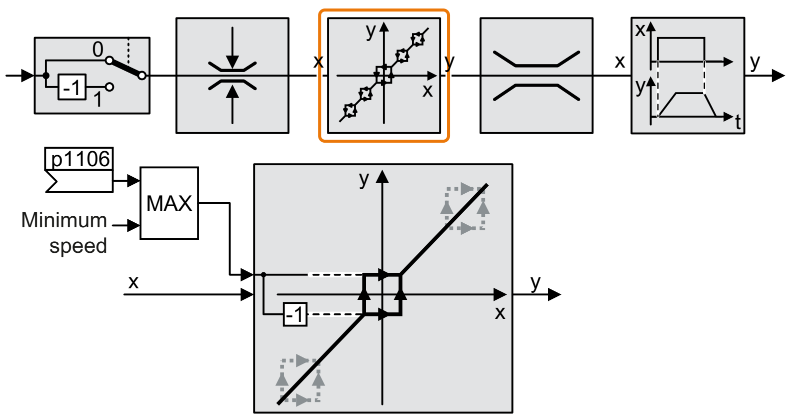
Skip frequency bands

The inverter has four skip frequency bands that prevent continuous motor operation within a specific speed range. Further information is provided in function diagram 3050 of the List Manual.

Overview of the manuals (Page 459)

Minimum speed

The inverter prevents continuous motor operation at speeds < minimum speed.



Speeds where the absolute value is less than the minimum speed are only possible during motor operation when accelerating or braking.

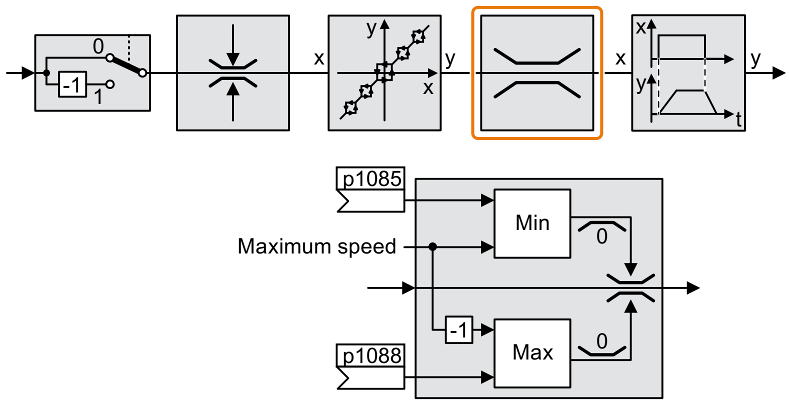
Table 6-42 Setting the minimum speed

Parameter	Description
p1080	**Minimum speed** (factory setting: 0 rpm)
p1106	**CI: Minimum speed signal source** (factory setting: 0) Dynamic specification of the minimum speed

NOTICE
Incorrect direction of motor rotation if the parameterization is not suitable
If you are using an analog input as speed setpoint source, then for a setpoint = 0 V, noise voltages can be superimposed on the analog input signal. After the on command, the motor accelerates up to the minimum frequency in the direction of the random polarity of the noise voltage. A motor rotating in the wrong direction can cause significant material damage to the machine or system. • Inhibit the motor direction of rotation that is not permissible.

6.17.5 Speed limitation

The maximum speed limits the speed setpoint range for both directions of rotation.



The converter generates a message (fault or alarm) when the maximum speed is exceeded.

If you must limit the speed depending on the direction of rotation, then you can define speed limits for each direction.

Table 6-43 Parameters for the speed limitation

Parameter	Description
p1082	**Maximum speed** (factory setting: 1500 rpm)
p1083	**Speed limit, positive direction of rotation** (factory setting: 210,000 rpm)
p1085	**CI: Speed limit, positive direction of rotation** (factory setting: 1083)
p1086	**Speed limit, negative direction of rotation** (factory setting: -210,000 rpm)
p1088	**CI: Speed limit, negative direction of rotation** (factory setting: 1086)

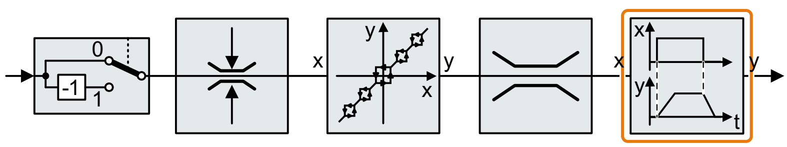
6.17.6 Ramp-function generator

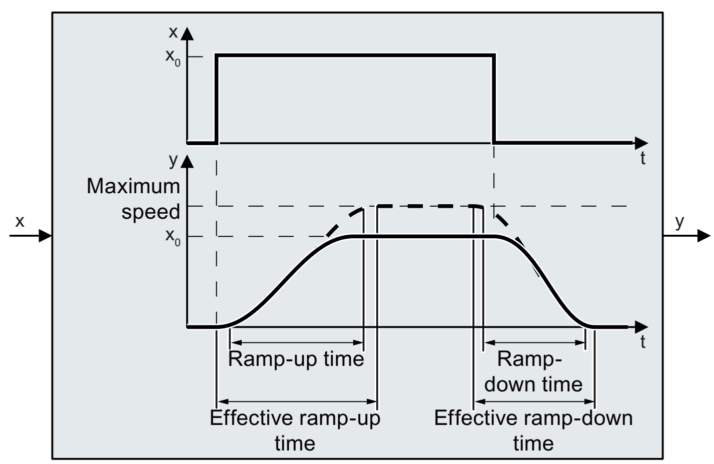
The ramp-function generator in the setpoint channel limits the rate change of the speed setpoint (acceleration). A reduced acceleration reduces the accelerating torque of the motor. As a consequence, the motor reduces the stress on the mechanical system of the driven machine.

The extended ramp-function generator not only limits the acceleration, but by rounding the setpoint, also acceleration changes (jerk). This means that the motor does not suddenly generate a torque.

Extended ramp-function generator

The ramp-up and ramp-down times of the extended ramp-function generator can be set independently of each other. The optimum times that you select depend on your particular application in question and can range from just a few 100 ms (e.g. for belt conveyor drives) to several minutes (e.g. for centrifuges).





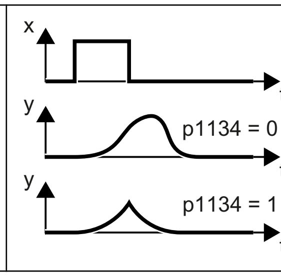
Initial and final rounding permit smooth, jerk-free acceleration and braking.

The ramp-up and ramp-down times of the motor are increased by the rounding times:

- Effective ramp-up time = p1120 + 0.5 × (p1130 + p1131).
- Effective ramp-down time = p1121 + 0.5 × (p1130 + p1131).

Table 6-44 Additional parameters to set the extended ramp-function generator

Parameter	Description
p1120	**Ramp-function generator, ramp-up time** (factory setting: 10 s) Accelerating time in seconds from zero speed up to the maximum speed p1082
p1121	**Ramp-function generator, ramp-down time** (factory setting: 10 s) Braking time in seconds from the maximum speed down to standstill

Parameter	Description
p1130	**Ramp-function generator initial rounding time** (factory setting: 0 s) Initial rounding for the extended ramp-function generator. The value applies for ramp up and ramp down.
p1131	**Ramp-function generator final rounding time** (factory setting: 0 s) Final rounding for the extended ramp-function generator. The value applies for ramp up and ramp down.
p1134	**Ramp-function rounding type** (factory setting: 0) 0: Continuous smoothing 1: Discontinuous smoothing 
p1135	**OFF3 ramp-down time** (factory setting: 0 s) The quick stop (OFF3) has its own ramp-down time.
p1136	**OFF3 initial rounding time** (factory setting: 0 s) Initial rounding for OFF3 for the extended ramp-function generator.
p1137	**OFF3 final rounding time** (factory setting: 0 s) Final rounding for OFF3 for the extended ramp-function generator

You can find more information in function diagram 3070 and in the parameter list of the List Manual.

Setting the extended ramp-function generator

Procedure

Proceed as follows to set the extended ramp-function generator:

1. Enter the highest possible speed setpoint.
2. Switch on the motor.
3. Evaluate your drive response.
   - If the motor accelerates too slowly, then reduce the ramp-up time.
     An excessively short ramp-up time means that the motor will reach its current limiting when accelerating, and will temporarily not be able to follow the speed setpoint. In this case, the drive exceeds the set time.
   - If the motor accelerates too fast, then extend the ramp-up time.
   - Increase the initial rounding if the acceleration is jerky.
   - We recommend that you set the final rounding to the same value as the initial rounding.
4. Switch off the motor.

5. Evaluate your drive response.
   – If the motor decelerates too slowly, then reduce the ramp-down time.
     The minimum ramp-down time that makes sense depends on your particular application. Depending on the Power Module used, for an excessively short ramp-down time, the converter either reaches the motor current, or the DC link voltage in the converter becomes too high. Depending on the converter setting, the real braking time exceeds the set ramp-down time, or the converter goes into a fault condition when braking.
   – Extend the ramp-down time if the motor is braked too quickly or the converter goes into a fault condition when braking.
6. Repeat steps 1 … 5 until the drive behavior meets the requirements of the machine or plant.

■ You have set the extended ramp-function generator.

Changing the ramp-up and ramp-down times in operation

The ramping up and down time of the ramp-function generator can be changed during operation. The scaling value can come, e.g. from the fieldbus.

Table 6-45 Parameters for setting the scaling

Parameter	Description
p1138	**Up ramp scaling** (factory setting: 1) Signal source for scaling the acceleration ramp.
p1139	**Deceleration ramp scaling** (factory setting: 1) Signal source for scaling the deceleration ramp.

Application example

In the following application example, the higher-level control sets the ramp-up and ramp-down times of the inverter via PROFIBUS.

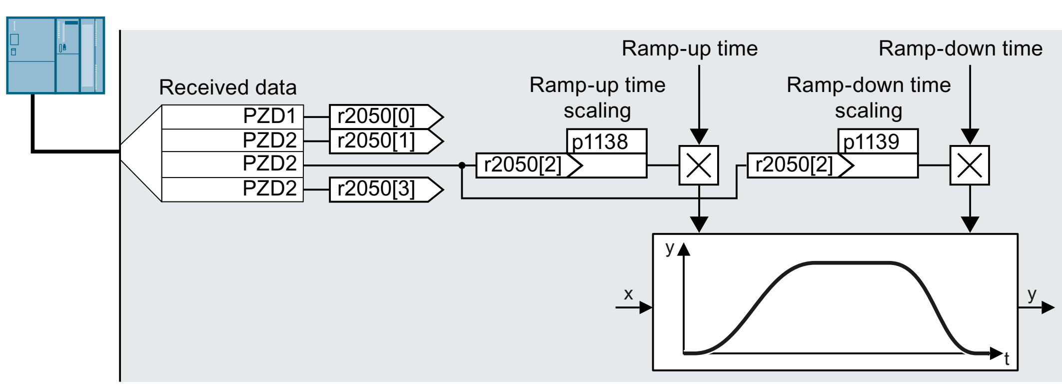


Figure 6-40 Application example for changing the ramp-function generator times in operation

Preconditions

- You have commissioned the communication between the inverter and the control system.
- Free telegram 999 has been set in the inverter and in your higher-level control system.
  Extend telegrams and change signal interconnection (Page 191)
- The control sends the scaling value to the inverter in PZD 3.

Procedure

To interconnect the scaling of the ramp-up and ramp-down times with PZD receive word 3 from the fieldbus in the inverter, proceed as follows:

1. Set p1138 = 2050[2].
   This means that you have interconnected the scaling factor for the ramp-up time with PZD receive word 3.
2. Set p1139 = 2050[2].
   This means that you have interconnected the scaling factor for the ramp-down time with PZD receive word 3.

The inverter receives the value for scaling the ramp-up and ramp-down times via PZD receive word 3.

Further information is provided in the Internet:

FAQ (https://support.industry.siemens.com/cs/ww/en/view/82604741)

6.18 PID technology controller

The technology controller controls process variables, e.g. pressure, temperature, level or flow.

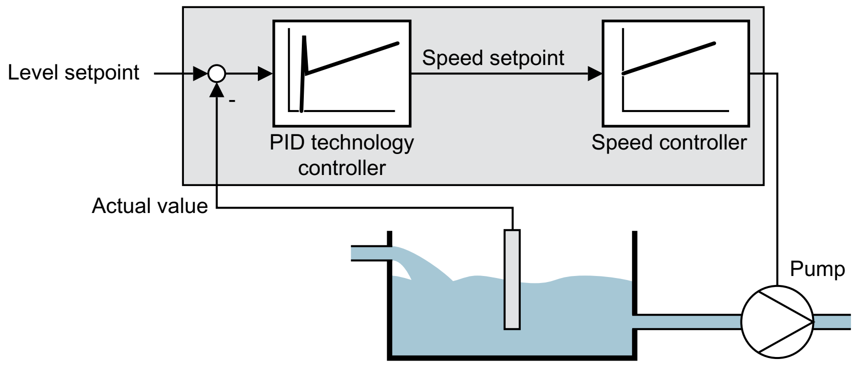
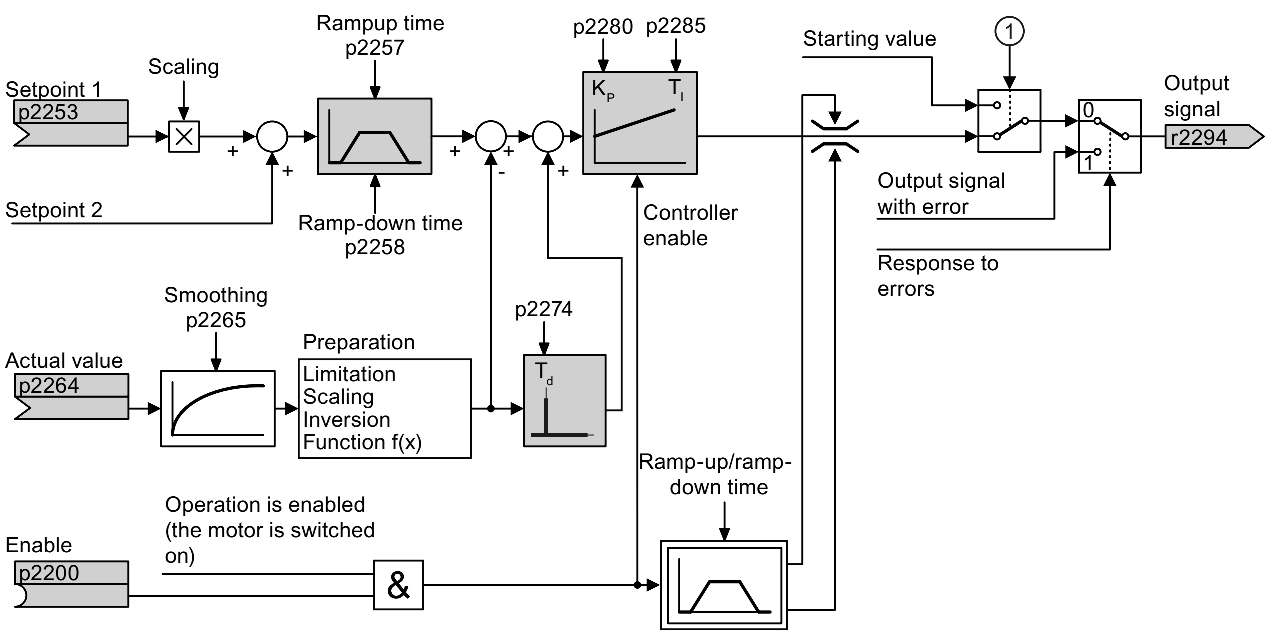


Figure 6-41 Example: Technology controller as a level controller

Simplified representation of the technology controller

The technology controller is implemented as a PID controller (controller with proportional, integral, and derivative action).



① The inverter uses the start value when all the following conditions are simultaneously satisfied:

- The technology controller supplies the main setpoint (p2251 = 0).
- The ramp-function generator output of the technology controller has not yet reached the start value.

Figure 6-42 Simplified representation of the technology controller

The settings required as a minimum are marked in gray in the function diagram: Interconnect setpoint and actual values with signals of your choice, set the ramp-function generator and controller parameters K_P, T_I and T_d.

Further information about the following PID controller topics is available in the Internet:

- Setpoint specification: Analog value or fixed setpoint
- Setpoint channel: Scaling, ramp-function generator and filter
- Actual value channel: Filter, limiting and signal processing
- PID controller Principle of operation of the D component, inhibiting the I component and the control sense
- Enable, limiting the controller output and fault response

FAQ (http://support.automation.siemens.com/WW/view/en/92556266)

Setting the technology controller

Parameter	Remark	
p2200	**BI: Technology controller enable** (factory setting: 0)	
	1 signal:	Technology controller is enabled.
r2294	**CO: Technology controller output signal** To interconnect the main speed setpoint with the technology controller output, set p1070 = 2294.	
p2253	**CI: Technology controller setpoint 1** (factory setting: 0) Setpoint for the technology controller. Example: p2253 = 2224: The inverter interconnects the fixed setpoint p2201 with the setpoint of the technology controller. p2220 = 1: The fixed setpoint p2201 is selected.	
p2264	**CI: Technology controller actual value** (factory setting: 0) Technology controller actual value.	
p2257, p2258	**Technology controller ramp-up time** and **ramp-down time** (factory setting: 1 s)	
p2274	**Technology controller differentiation time constant T_d** (factory setting: 0.0 s) The differentiation improves the rise time for very slow controlled variables, e.g. a temperature control.	
p2280	**Technology controller proportional gain K_P** (factory setting: 1.0)	
p2285	**Technology controller integration time (integral time) T_d** (factory setting: 30 s)	

Advanced settings

Table 6-46 Limiting the output of the technology controller

Parameter	Remark
In the factory setting, the output of the technology controller is limited to ± maximum speed. You must change this limit, depending on your particular application. Example: The output of the technology controller supplies the speed setpoint for a pump. The pump should only run in the positive direction.	
p2297	**CI: Technology controller maximum limiting signal source** (factory setting: 1084)
p2298	**CI: Technology controller minimum limiting signal source** (factory setting: 2292)

Parameter	Remark
p2291	**CO: Technology maximum limiting** (factory setting: 100 %)
p2292	**CO: Technology minimum limiting** (factory setting: 0 %)

Table 6-47 Manipulating the actual value of the technology controller

Parameter	Remark	
p2267	**Technology controller upper limit actual value** (factory setting: 100 %)	
p2268	**Technology controller lower limit actual value** (factory setting: -100 %)	
p2269	**Technology controller gain actual value** (factory setting: 100 %)	
p2271	**Technology controller actual value inversion (sensor type)**	
	0:	No inversion
	1:	Inversion actual value signal If the actual value decreases with increasing motor speed, then p2271 must be set = 1.
p2270	**Technology controller actual value function**	
	0:	No function
	1:	√
	2:	x^2
	3:	x^3

For further information refer to the function block diagrams 7950 ff of the List Manual.

Autotuning of the PID controller

Autotuning is an inverter function for the automatic optimization of the PID controller.

For active autotuning, the inverter interrupts the connection between the PID controller and the speed controller. Rather than the PID controller output, the autotuning function provides the speed setpoint.

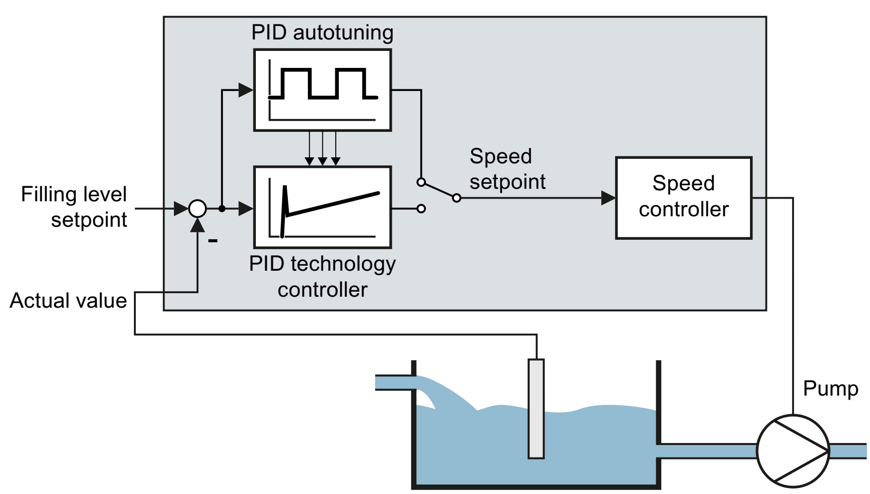


Figure 6-43 Autotuning of the PID controller using the example of a filling-level control

The speed setpoint results from the technology setpoint and a superimposed rectangular signal with amplitude p2355. If actual value = technology setpoint ± p2355, the autotuning function switches the polarity of the superimposed signal. This causes the inverter to excite the process variable for an oscillation.

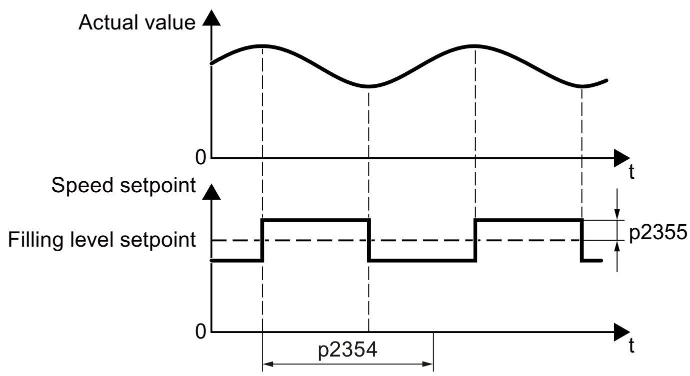


Figure 6-44 Example for speed setpoint and actual process value for autotuning

The inverter calculates the parameters of the PID controller from the determined oscillation frequency.

Autotune the PID controller

Requirements

The PID technology controller must be set the same as when used in subsequent operation:

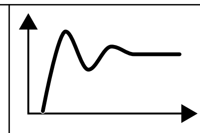
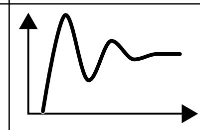
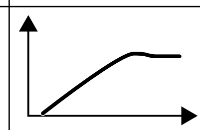
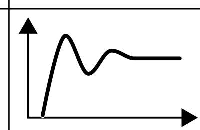
- The actual value is interconnected.
- Scalings, filter and ramp-function generator have been set.
- The PID technology controller is enabled (p2200 = 1 signal)

Procedure

Proceed as follows to auto tune the PID controller:

1. Select with p2350 the appropriate controller setting.
2. Switch on the motor.
   The inverter signals Alarm A07444.
3. Wait until alarm A07444 goes away.
   The inverter has recalculated parameters p2280, p2274 and p2285.
   If the inverter signals fault F07445:
   – If possible, double p2354 and p2355.
   – Repeat the autotuning with the changed parameters.
4. Back up the calculated values so that they are protected against power failure, e.g. using the BOP-2: OPTIONS → RAM-ROM.

You have auto tuned the PID controller.

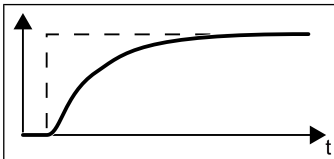
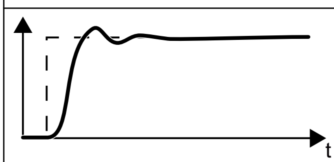
<table>
<tr><th>Parameter</th><th colspan="3">Remark</th></tr>
<tr><td rowspan="6">p2350</td><td colspan="3">Enable PID autotuning (factory setting: 0)
Automatic controller setting based on the "Ziegler Nichols" method.
After completion of the autotuning, the inverter sets p2350 = 0.</td></tr>
<tr><td>0:</td><td colspan="2">No function</td></tr>
<tr><td>1:</td><td>Controller setting after completion of the autotuning:
The process variable follows the setpoint after a sudden setpoint change (step function) relatively quickly, however with an overshoot.</td><td></td></tr>
<tr><td>2:</td><td>Faster controller setting than for p2350 = 1 with larger overshoot of the controlled variable.</td><td></td></tr>
<tr><td>3:</td><td>Slower controller setting than for p2350 = 1. Overshoot of the controlled variable is, to a large extent, avoided.</td><td></td></tr>
<tr><td>4:</td><td>Controller setting after completion of the autotuning as for p2350 = 1. Optimize only the P and I action of the PID controller.</td><td></td></tr>
<tr><td>p2354</td><td colspan="3">PID autotuning monitoring time (factory setting: 240 s)
Monitoring time for the process response.
p2354 must be greater than half the period of the process variable oscillation.</td></tr>
<tr><td>p2355</td><td colspan="3">PID autotuning offset (factory setting: 5%)
Autotuning offset.
p2355 must be sufficiently large so that the amplitude of the process variable oscillation signal can be differentiated from any superimposed noise.</td></tr>
</table>

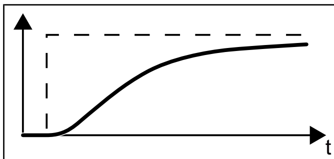
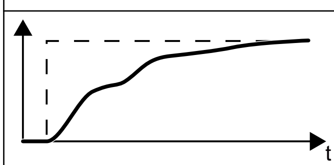
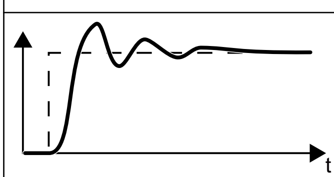
Manually setting the technology controller

Procedure

Proceed as follows to manually set the technology controller:

1. Temporarily set the ramp-up and ramp-down times of the ramp-function generator (p2257 and p2258) to zero.
2. Enter a setpoint step and monitor the associated actual value, e.g. with the trace function of STARTER.
   The slower the response of the process to be controlled, the longer you must monitor the controller response. Under certain circumstances (e.g. for a temperature control), you need to wait several minutes until you can evaluate the controller response.

 	Optimum controller response for applications that do not permit any overshoot. The actual value approaches the setpoint without any significant overshoot.
 	Optimum controller behavior for fast correction and quick compensation of disturbance components. The actual value approaches the setpoint and slightly overshoots, maximum 10% of the setpoint step.

 	The actual value only slowly approaches the setpoint. • Increase the proportional component K_P and reduce the integration time T_I.
 	Actual value only slowly approaches the setpoint with slight oscillation. • Increase the proportional component K_P and reduce the rate time T_d (differentiating time).
 	The actual value quickly approaches the setpoint, but overshoots too much. • Decrease the proportional component K_P and increase the integration time T_I.

3. Set the ramp-up and ramp-down times of the ramp-function generator back to their original value.

You have now manually set the technology controller.

6.19 Motor control

The inverter has two alternative methods to control (closed loop) the motor speed:

- U/f control
- Vector control

6.19.1 Reactor, filter and cable resistance at the inverter output

Correctly setting the components between the inverter and motor

Components between the inverter and the motor influence the closed-loop control quality of the inverter:

- Output reactor or sine-wave filter
  In the factory setting, for the motor data identification, the inverter assumes that neither output reactor nor sine wave filter are connected at to the inverter output.
- Motor cable with unusually high cable resistance.
  For the motor data identification, the inverter assumes a cable resistance = 20 % of the stator resistance of the cold motor.

You must correctly set the components between the inverter and motor to achieve an optimum closed-loop control quality

Setting the reactor, filter and cable resistance between the inverter and motor

Procedure

1.
2.

Proceed as follows to set the reactor, filter and cable resistance between the inverter and motor:

1. Set p0010 = 2.
2. Set the cable resistance in p0352.
3. Set p0230 to the appropriate value.
4. Set p0235 to the appropriate value.
5. Set p0010 = 0.
6. Carry out the quick commissioning and the motor identification again.
   Commissioning (Page 115)

You have set the reactor, filter and cable resistance between the inverter and motor

Parameter

Parameter	Description
p0010	**Drive commissioning parameter filter** (factory setting: 1) 0: Ready 2: Power unit commissioning
p0230	**Drive filter type, motor side** (factory setting: 0) 0: No filter 1: Output reactor 2: dv/dt filter 3: Siemens sine-wave filter 4: Sine wave filter, third-party manufacturer
p0235	**Number of motor reactors in series** (factory setting: 1) Number of reactors connected in series at the inverter output
p0350	**Motor stator resistance, cold** (factory setting: 0 Ω) When selecting a list motor (p0301), p0350 is preset (default setting) and is write protected.
p0352	**Cable resistance** (Factory setting: 0 Ω) If you set p0352 after the motor data identification, then you must subtract the difference that was changed with p0352, from the stator resistance p0350 or repeat the motor data identification.

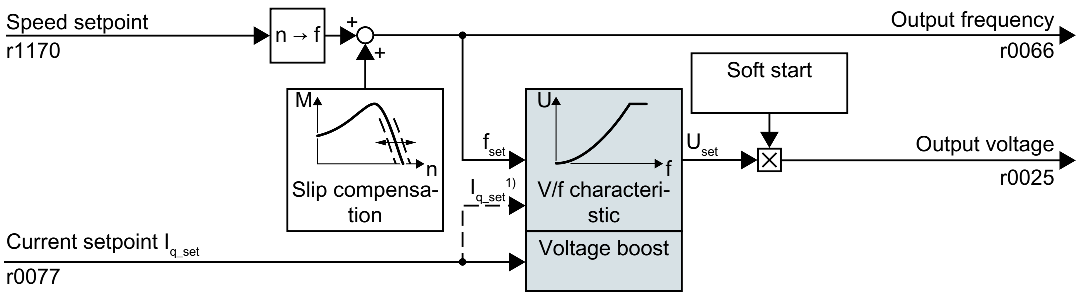
Additional information on the parameters is provided in the List Manual.

6.19.2 V/f control

Overview of the U/f control

The U/f control is a closed-loop speed control with the following characteristics:

- The inverter controls the output voltage using the V/f characteristic
- The output frequency is essentially calculated from the speed setpoint and the number of pole pairs of the motor
- The slip compensation corrects the output frequency depending on the load and thus increases the speed accuracy
- Not using a PI controller prevents the speed control from becoming unstable
- In applications in which greater speed accuracy is required, a closed-loop control with load-dependent voltage boost can be selected (flux current control, FCC)



1) In the U/f control variant, "flux current control (FCC)," the inverter controls the motor current (starting current) at low speeds

Figure 6-45 Simplified function diagram of the U/f control

One function not shown in the simplified function diagram is the resonance damping for damping mechanical oscillations. You will find the complete function diagrams 6300 et seq. in the List Manual.

For operation of the motor with U/f control, you must set at least the subfunctions shown with a gray background in the figure to adapt them to your application:

- V/f characteristic
- Voltage boost

Default setting after selecting the application class Standard Drive Control

Selecting application class Standard Drive Control in the quick commissioning adapts the structure and the setting options of the U/f control as follows:

- Starting current closed-loop control: At low speeds, a controlled motor current reduces the tendency of the motor to oscillate.
- With increasing speed, transition from closed-loop starting current control into U/f control with voltage boost depending on the load.
- The slip compensation is activated.
- Soft starting is not possible.
- Fewer parameters

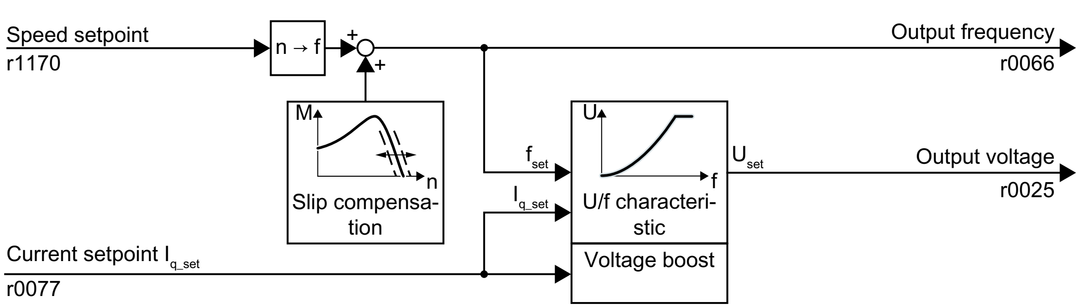
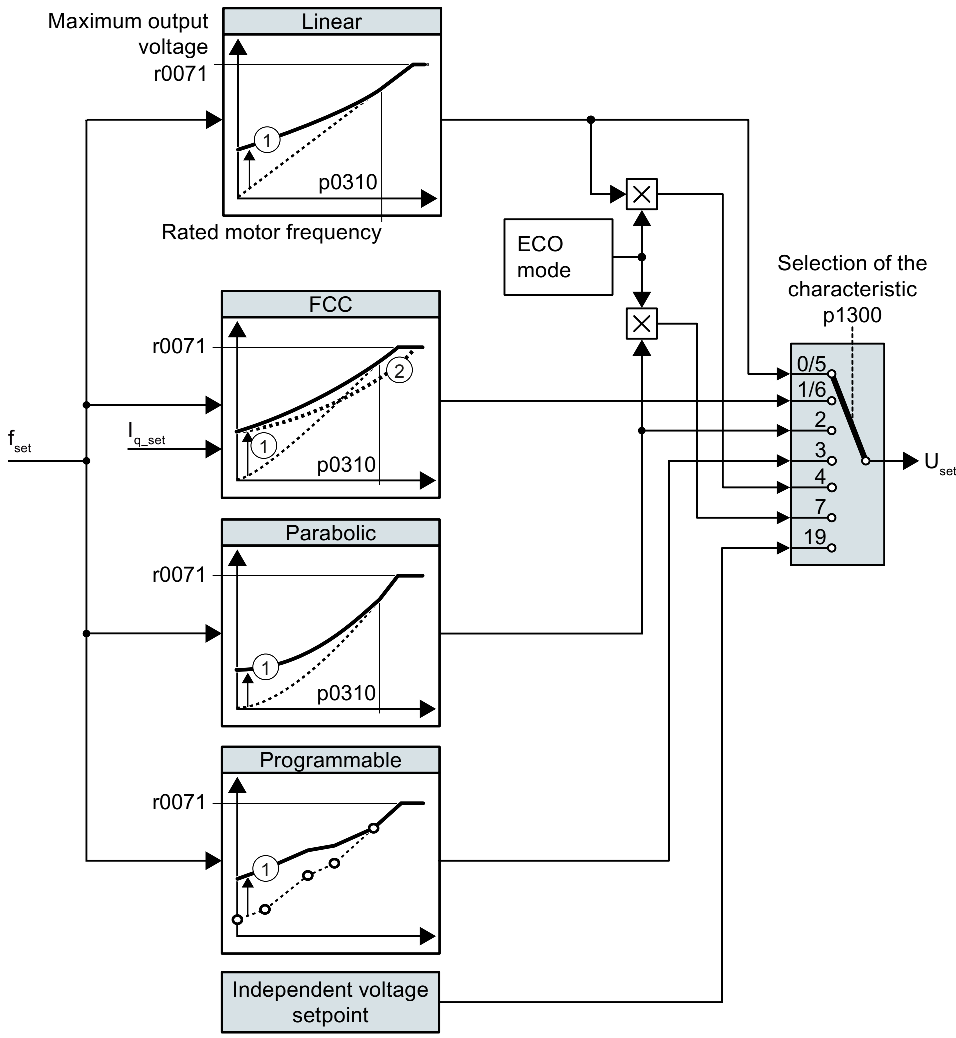


Figure 6-46 Default setting of the U/f control after selecting Standard Drive Control

The complete function diagrams 6850 ff. for application class Standard Drive Control are provided in the List Manual.

6.19.2.1 Characteristics of U/f control

The inverter has different V/f characteristics.



① The voltage boost of the characteristic optimizes the speed control at low speeds

② With the flux current control (FCC), the inverter compensates for the voltage drop in the stator resistor of the motor

Figure 6-47 Characteristics of V/f control

The inverter increases its output voltage to the maximum possible output voltage. The maximum possible output voltage of the inverter depends on the line voltage.

When the maximum output voltage is reached, the inverter only increases the output frequency. At this point, the motor enters the field weakening range: At constant torque, the slip decreases quadratically as the speed increases.

The value of the output voltage at the rated motor frequency also depends on the following variables:

- Ratio between the inverter size and the motor size
- Line voltage
- Line impedance
- Actual motor torque

The maximum possible output voltage as a function of the input voltage is provided in the technical data.

Technical data (Page 401)

Table 6-48 Linear and parabolic characteristics

Requirement	Application examples	Remark	Characteristic	Parameter
The required torque is independent of the speed	Conveyor belts, roller conveyors, chain conveyors, eccentric worm pumps, compressors, extruders, centrifuges, agitators, mixers	-	Linear	p1300 = 0
		The inverter equalizes the voltage drops across the stator resistance. Recommended for motors less than 7.5 kW. Precondition: You have set the motor data according to the rating plate and have performed the motor identification after quick commissioning.	Linear with Flux Current Control (FCC)	p1300 = 1
The required torque increases with the speed	Centrifugal pumps, radial fans, axial fans	Lower losses in the motor and inverter than for a linear characteristic.	Parabolic	p1300 = 2

Table 6-49 Characteristics for special applications

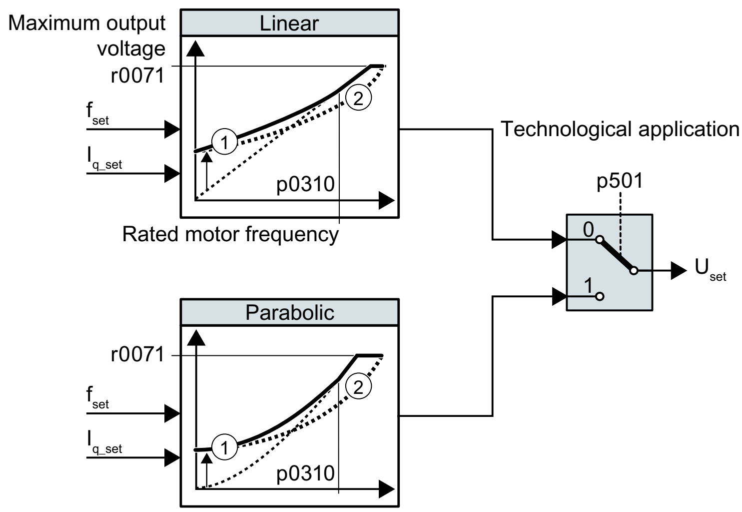
Requirement	Application examples	Remark	Characteristic	Parameter
Applications with a low dynamic response and constant speed	Centrifugal pumps, radial fans, axial fans	If the speed setpoint is reached, and remains unchanged for 5 seconds, then the inverter reduces is output voltage. As a consequence, the ECO mode saves energy with respect to the parabolic characteristic.	ECO mode	p1300 = 4 or p1300 = 7
The inverter must maintain the motor speed constant for the longest possible time.	Drives in the textile sector	When reaching the maximum current limit, the inverter only reduces the output voltage, but not the frequency.	Precise frequency characteristic	p1300 = 5 or p1300 = 6
Freely adjustable U/f characteristic	-	-	Adjustable characteristic	p1300 = 3
U/f characteristic with independent voltage setpoint	-	The interrelationship between the frequency and voltage is not calculated in the inverter, but is specified by the user.	Independent voltage setpoint	p1300 = 19

Additional information on U/f characteristics can be found in the parameter list and in the function diagrams 6300 ff of the List Manual.

Characteristics after selecting the application class Standard Drive Control

Selecting application class Standard Drive Control reduces the number of characteristics and the setting options:

- A linear and a parabolic characteristic are available.
- Selecting a technological application defines the characteristic.
- The following cannot be set - ECO mode, FCC, the programmable characteristic and a specific voltage setpoint.



① The closed-loop starting current control optimizes the speed control at low speeds
② The inverter compensates the voltage drop across the motor stator resistance

Figure 6-48 Characteristics after selecting Standard Drive Control

Table 6-50 Linear and parabolic characteristics

Requirement	Application examples	Remark	Character-istic	Parameter
The required torque is independent of the speed	Conveyor belts, roller conveyors, chain conveyors, eccentric worm pumps, compressors, extruders, centrifuges, agitators, mixers	-	Linear	p0501 = 0
The required torque increases with the speed	Centrifugal pumps, radial fans, axial fans	Lower losses in the motor and inverter than for a linear characteristic.	Parabolic	p0501 = 1

Additional information on the characteristics can be found in the parameter list and in the function diagrams 6851 ff of the List Manual.

6.19.2.2 Optimizing motor starting

After selection of the U/f characteristic, no further settings are required in most applications.

In the following circumstances, the motor cannot accelerate to its speed setpoint after it has been switched on:

- Load moment of inertia too high
- Load torque too large
- Ramp-up time p1120 too short

To improve the starting behavior of the motor, a voltage boost can be set for the U/f characteristic at low speeds.

Setting the voltage boost for U/f control

Requirements

- Set the ramp-up time of the ramp-function generator to a value 1 s (< 1 kW) … 10 s (> 10 kW), depending on the power rating of the motor.
- Increase the starting current in steps of ≤ 5%. Excessively high values in p1310 ... p1312 can cause the motor to overheat and switch off (trip) the inverter due to overcurrent.
  If message A07409 appears, it is not permissible that you further increase the value of any of the parameters.

Procedure

Proceed as follows to set the voltage boost:

1. Switch on the motor with a setpoint of a few revolutions per minute.
2. Check whether the motor rotates smoothly.
3. If the motor does not rotate smoothly, or even remains stationary, increase the voltage boost p1310 until the motor runs smoothly.
4. Accelerate the motor to the maximum speed with maximum load.
5. Check that the motor follows the setpoint.
6. If necessary, increase the voltage boost p1311 until the motor accelerates without problem.

In applications with a high break loose torque, you must also increase parameter p1312 in order to achieve a satisfactory motor response.

You have set the voltage boost.

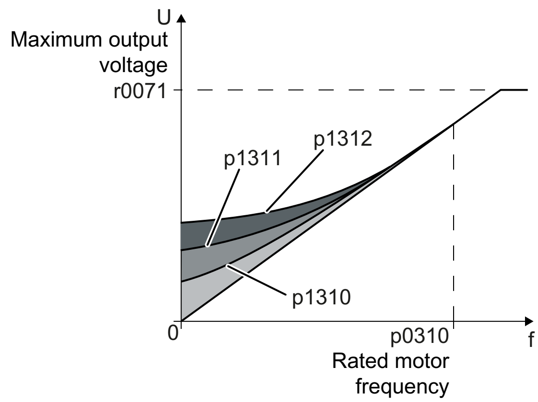


Figure 6-49 The resulting voltage boost using a linear characteristic as example

The inverter boosts the voltage corresponding to the starting currents p1310 … p1312.

Parameter	Description
p1310	**Starting current (voltage boost) permanent** (factory setting 50%) Compensates for voltage drops caused by long motor cables and the ohmic losses in the motor.
p1311	**Starting current (voltage boost) when accelerating** (factory setting 0%) Provides additional torque when the motor accelerates.
p1312	**Starting current (voltage boost) when starting** (factory setting 0%) Provides additional torque, however, only when the motor accelerates for the first time after it has been switched on ("break loose torque").

You will find more information on this function in the parameter list and in function diagram 6301 in the List Manual.

After selecting application class Standard Drive Control, in most applications no additional settings need to be made.

At standstill, the inverter ensures that at least the rated motor magnetizing current flows. Magnetizing current p0320 approximately corresponds to the no-load current at 50% … 80% of the rated motor speed.

In the following circumstances, the motor cannot accelerate to its speed setpoint after it has been switched on:

- Load moment of inertia too high
- Load torque too large
- Ramp-up time p1120 too short

The current can be increased at low speeds to improve the starting behavior of the motor.

Starting current (boost) after selecting the application class Standard Drive Control

Requirements

- Set the ramp-up time of the ramp-function generator to a value 1 s (< 1 kW) … 10 s (> 10 kW), depending on the power rating of the motor.
- Increase the starting current in steps of ≤ 5%. Excessively high values in p1310 ... p1312 can cause the motor to overheat and switch off (trip) the inverter due to overcurrent.
  If message A07409 appears, it is not permissible that you further increase the value of any of the parameters.

Procedure

Proceed as follows to set the voltage boost:

1. Switch on the motor with a setpoint of a few revolutions per minute.
2. Check whether the motor rotates smoothly.
3. If the motor does not rotate smoothly, or even remains stationary, increase the voltage boost p1310 until the motor runs smoothly.
4. Accelerate the motor to the maximum speed with maximum load.
5. Check that the motor follows the setpoint.
6. If necessary, increase the voltage boost p1311 until the motor accelerates without problem.

In applications with a high break loose torque, you must also increase parameter p1312 in order to achieve a satisfactory motor response.

You have set the voltage boost.

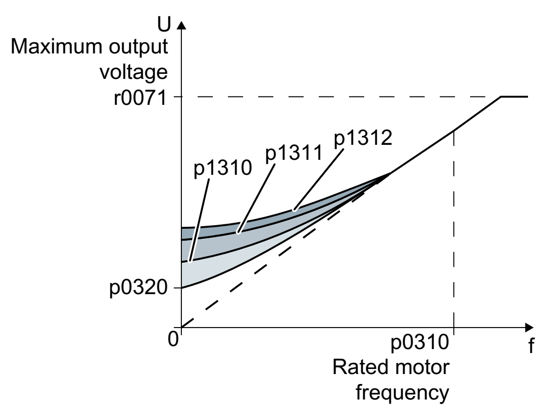


Figure 6-50 The resulting voltage boost using a linear characteristic as example

The inverter boosts the voltage corresponding to the starting currents p1310 … p1312.

Parameter	Description
p1310	**Starting current (voltage boost) permanent** (factory setting 50%) Compensates for voltage drops caused by long motor cables and the ohmic losses in the motor. After commissioning, depending on the motor power rating and the technological application p0501, the inverter sets p1310.
p1311	**Starting current (voltage boost) when accelerating** (factory setting 0%) Provides additional torque when the motor accelerates. After commissioning, depending on the motor power rating and the technological application p0501, the inverter sets p1311.
p1312	**Starting current (voltage boost) when starting** (factory setting 0%) Provides additional torque, however, only when the motor accelerates for the first time after it has been switched on ("break loose torque").

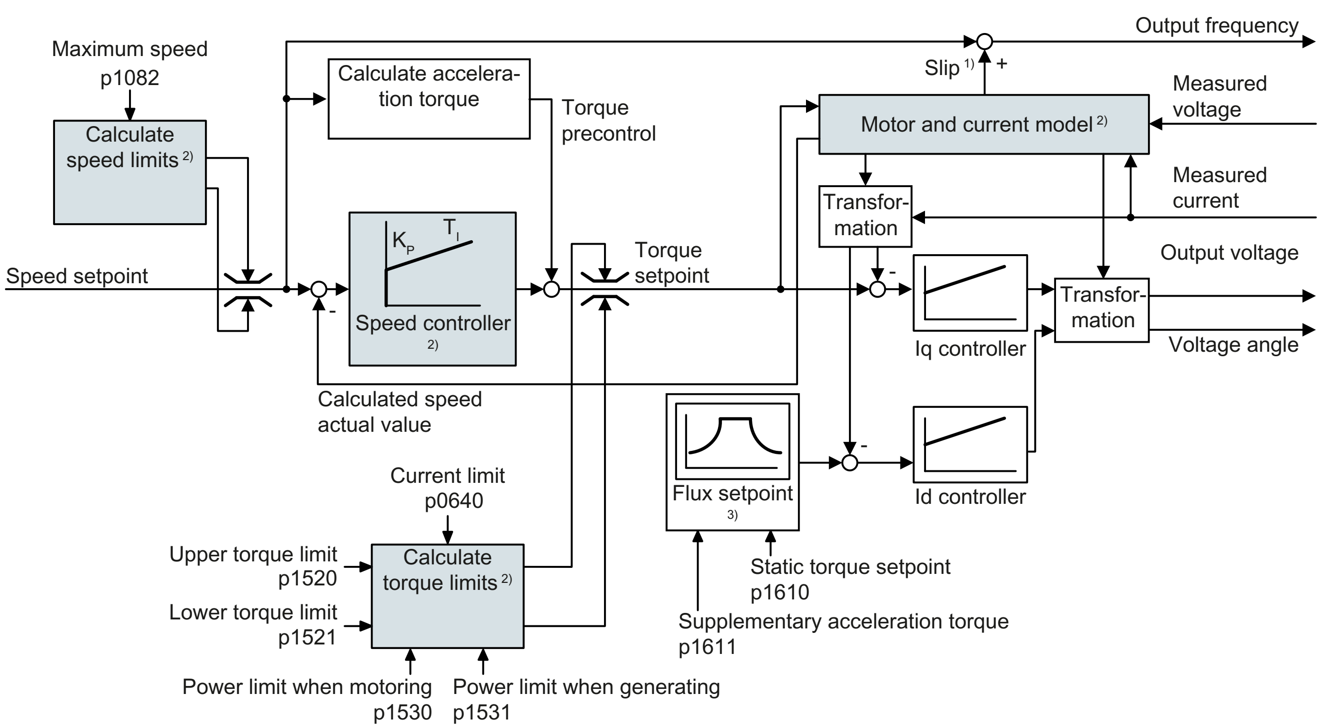
You can find more information about this function in the parameter list and in function diagram 6851 of the List Manual.

6.19.3 Encoderless vector control

6.19.3.1 Structure of vector control without encoder (sensorless)

Overview

The vector control comprises closed-loop current control and a higher-level closed-loop speed control.



1) for induction motors

2) Settings that are required

Figure 6-51 Simplified function diagram for sensorless vector control with speed controller

Using the motor model, the inverter calculates the following closed-loop control signals from the measured phase currents and the output voltage:

- Current component I_q
- Current component I_q
- Speed actual value

The setpoint of the current component I_d (flux setpoint) is obtained from the motor data. For speeds above the rated speed, the inverter reduces the flux setpoint along the field weakening characteristic.

When the speed setpoint is increased, the speed controller responds with a higher setpoint for current component I_q (torque setpoint). The closed-loop control responds to a higher torque setpoint by adding a higher slip frequency to the output frequency. The higher output frequency also results in a higher motor slip, which is proportional to the accelerating torque. I_q and $I_d$controllers keep the motor flux constant using the output voltage, and adjust the matching current component I_q in the motor.

All of the function diagrams 6020 ff. for vector control are provided in the List Manual.

Overview of the manuals (Page 459)

Settings that are required

In order to achieve a satisfactory control response, as a minimum you must set the partial functions – shown with gray background in the diagram above – to match your particular application:

- **Motor and current model**: In the quick commissioning, correctly set the motor data on the rating plate corresponding to the connection type (Y/Δ), and carry out the motor data identification routine at standstill.
- **Speed limits** and **torque limits**: In the quick commissioning, set the maximum speed (p1082) and current limit (p0640) to match your particular application. When exiting quick commissioning, the inverter calculates the torque and power limits corresponding to the current limit. The actual torque limits are obtained from the converted current and power limits and the set torque limits.
- **Speed controller**: Start the rotating measurement of the motor data identification. You must manually optimize the controller if the rotating measurement is not possible.

WARNING

The load falls due to incorrect closed-loop control settings

For encoderless vector control, the inverter calculates the actual speed based on an electric motor model. In applications with pulling loads - e.g. hoisting gear, lifting tables or vertical conveyors - an incorrectly set motor model or other incorrect settings can mean that the load falls. A falling load can result in death or serious injury.

- Correctly set the motor data during the quick commissioning.
- Carry out the motor data identification.
- Correctly set the "Motor holding brake" function.
  Motor holding brake (Page 206)
- For pulling loads, carefully comply with the recommended settings for vector control.
  Advanced settings (Page 273)

Default settings after selecting the application class Dynamic Drive Control

Selecting application class Dynamic Drive Control adapts the structure of the vector control and reduces the setting options:

	Vector control after selecting the application class Dynamic Drive Control	Vector control without selecting an application class
Hold or set the integral component of the speed controller	Not possible	Possible
Acceleration model for precontrol	Default setting	Can be activated
Motor data identification at standstill or with rotating measurement	Shortened, with optional transition into operation	Complete

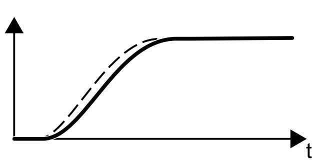
6.19.3.2 Optimizing the speed controller

Optimum control response - post optimization not required

Preconditions for assessing the controller response:

- The moment of inertia of the load is constant and does not depend on the speed
- The inverter does not reach the set torque limits during acceleration
- You operate the motor in the range 40 % … 60 % of its rated speed

If the motor exhibits the following response, the speed control is well set and you do not have to adapt the speed controller manually:

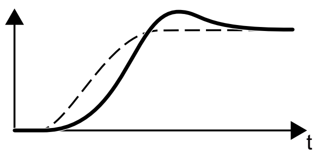


The speed setpoint (broken line) increases with the set ramp-up time and rounding.

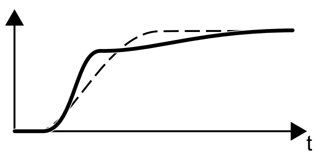
The speed actual value follows the setpoint without any overshoot.

Control optimization required

In some cases, the self optimization result is not satisfactory, or self optimization is not possible as the motor cannot freely rotate.



Initially, the speed actual value follows the speed setpoint with some delay, and then overshoots the speed setpoint.



First, the actual speed value increases faster than the speed setpoint. Before the setpoint reaches its final value, it passes the actual value. Finally, the actual value approaches the setpoint without any significant overshoot.

In the two cases describe above, we recommend that you manually optimize the speed control.

Optimizing the speed controller

Requirements

- Torque precontrol is active: p1496 = 100 %.
- The load moment of inertia is constant and independent of the speed.
- The inverter requires 10 % … 50 % of the rated torque to accelerate.
  When necessary, adapt the ramp-up and ramp-down times of the ramp-function generator (p1120 and p1121).
- STARTER and Startdrive have trace functions that allow the speed setpoint and actual value to be recorded.

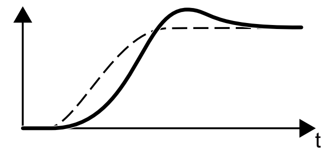
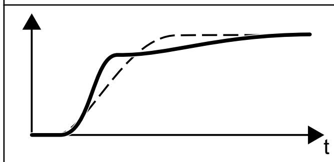
Procedure

1.
2.

To optimize the speed controller, proceed as follows:

1. Switch on the motor.
2. Enter a speed setpoint of approximately 40 % of the rated speed.
3. Wait until the actual speed has stabilized.
4. Increase the setpoint up to a maximum of 60 % of the rated speed.
5. Monitor the associated characteristic of the setpoint and actual speed.

6. Optimize the controller by adapting the ratio of the moments of inertia of the load and motor (p0342):

	Initially, the speed actual value follows the speed setpoint with some delay, and then overshoots the speed setpoint. • Increase p0342
	Initially, the speed actual value increases faster than the speed setpoint. The setpoint passes the actual value before reaching its final value. Finally, the actual value approaches the setpoint without any overshoot. • Reduce p0342

7. Switch off the motor.
8. Set p0340 = 4. The inverter again calculates the speed controller parameters.
9. Switch on the motor.
10. Over the complete speed range check as to whether the speed control operates satisfactorily with the optimized settings.

You have optimized the speed controller.

When necessary, set the ramp-up and ramp-down times of the ramp-function generator (p1120 and p1121) back to the value before optimization.

Mastering critical applications

The drive control can become unstable for drives with a high load moment of inertia and gearbox backlash or a coupling between the motor and load that can possibly oscillate. In this case, we recommend the following settings:

- Increase p1452 (smoothing the speed actual value).
- Increase p1472 (integral time T_I): $T_I \geq 4 \cdot$ p1452
- If, after these measures, the speed controller does not operate with an adequate dynamic performance, then increase p1470 (gain K_P) step-by-step.

The most important parameters

Table 6-51 Encoderless speed control

Parameter	Description
p0342	**Moment of inertia ratio, total to motor** (factory setting: 1.0)
p1496	**Acceleration precontrol scaling** (factory setting: 0 %) For the rotating measurement of the motor data identification the inverter sets the parameters to 100 %.
p1452	**Speed controller speed actual value smoothing time (without encoder)** (factory setting: 10 ms)
p1470	**Speed controller operation without encoder P gain** (factory setting: 0.3)
p1472	**Speed controller operation without encoder integral action time** (factory setting: 20 ms)

6.19.3.3 Advanced settings

Special settings for a pulling load

For a pulling load, e.g. a hoisting gear, a permanent force is exerted on the motor, even when the motor is stationary.

For a pulling load, we recommend that you use vector control with an encoder.

If you use encoderless vector control with a pulling load, then the following settings are required:

- Set the following parameters:

Par.	Explanation	
p1750	**Motor model configuration**	
	Bit 07 = 1	Use speed switchover limits that are less sensitive to external effects
p1610	**Static torque setpoint (encoderless)** (Factory setting: 50 %)	
	Set a value which is higher than the maximum load torque that occurs.	

- When opening the motor holding brake, enter a speed setpoint > 0.
  For speed setpoint = 0, and with the motor holding brake open, the load drops because the induction motor rotates with the slip frequency as a result of the pulling load.
- Set the ramp-up and ramp-down times ≤ 10 s in the ramp-function generator.
- If, in quick commissioning, you have selected application class Dynamic Drive Control then set p0502 = 1 (technological application: dynamic starting or reversing).

6.19.3.4 Friction characteristic

Function

In many applications, e.g. applications with geared motors or belt conveyors, the frictional torque of the load is not negligible.

The inverter provides the possibility of precontrolling the torque setpoint, bypassing the speed controller. The precontrol reduces overshooting of the speed after speed changes.

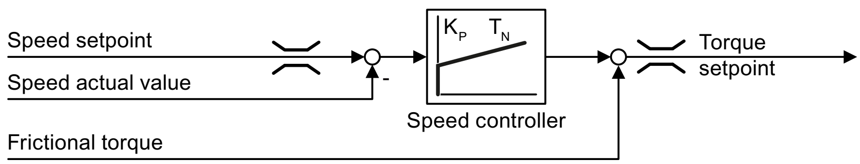


Figure 6-52 Precontrol of the speed controller with frictional torque

The inverter calculates the current frictional torque from a friction characteristic with 10 intermediate points.

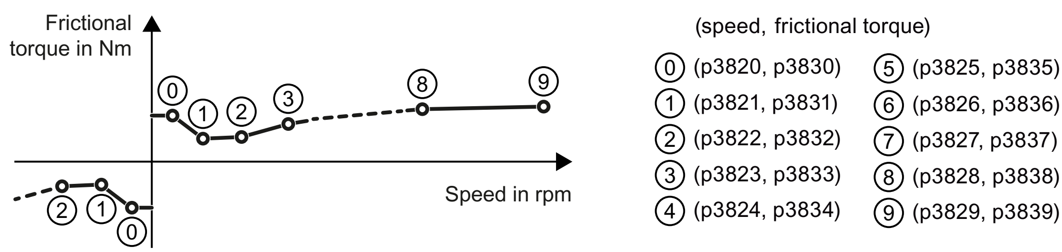


Figure 6-53 Friction characteristic

The intermediate points of the friction characteristic are defined for positive speeds. In the negative direction of rotation, the inverter uses the intermediate points with a negative sign.

Recording a friction characteristic

After quick commissioning, the inverter sets the speeds of the intermediate points to values suitable for the rated speed of the motor. The frictional torque of all intermediate points is still equal to zero. On request, the inverter records the friction characteristic: The inverter accelerates the motor step by step up to the rated speed, measures the frictional torque und writes the frictional torque into the intermediate points of the friction characteristic.

Requirement

The motor is permitted to accelerate up to the rated speed without endangering persons or property.

1.
2.

Procedure

To record the friction characteristic, proceed as follows:

1. Set P3845 = 1: The inverter accelerates the motor successively in both directions of rotation and averages the measurement results of the positive and negative directions.
2. Switch on the motor (ON/OFF1 = 1).
3. The inverter accelerates the motor.
   During measurement, the inverter signals the alarm A07961.
   When the inverter has determined all the intermediate points of the friction characteristic without fault code F07963, the inverter stops the motor.

You have recorded the friction characteristic.

Adding friction characteristic for the torque setpoint

If you enable the friction characteristic (p3842 = 1), the inverter adds the output of the friction characteristic r3841 to the torque setpoint.

Parameter

Parameter	Explanation	
p3820 … p2839	Intermediate points of the friction characteristic [rpm; Nm]	
r3840	**Friction characteristic status word**	
	.00	1 signal: Friction characteristic OK
	.01	1 signal: Determination of the friction characteristic is active
	.02	1 signal: Determination of the friction characteristic is complete
	.03	1 signal: Determination of the friction characteristic has been aborted
	.08	1 signal: Friction characteristic positive direction
r3841	**Friction characteristic, output** [Nm]	
p3842	**Activate friction characteristic** 0: Friction characteristic deactivated 1: Friction characteristic activated	
p3845	**Activate friction characteristic plot** (factory setting: 0) 0: Friction characteristic plot deactivated 1: Friction characteristic plot activated, both directions 2: Friction characteristic plot activated, positive direction 3: Friction characteristic plot activated, negative direction	
p3846	**Friction characteristic plot ramp-up/ramp-down time** (factory setting: 10 s) Ramp-up/ramp-down time for automatic plotting of the friction characteristic.	
p3847	**Friction characteristic plot warm-up period** (factory setting: 0 s) At the start of automatic plotting, the inverter accelerates the motor up to the speed = p3829 und keeps the speed constant for this time.	

You will find more information in the List Manual.

6.19.3.5 Moment of inertia estimator

Background

From the load moment of inertia and the speed setpoint change, the inverter calculates the accelerating torque required for the motor. Via the speed controller precontrol, the accelerating torque specifies the main percentage of the torque setpoint. The speed controller corrects inaccuracies in the precontrol (feed-forward control).

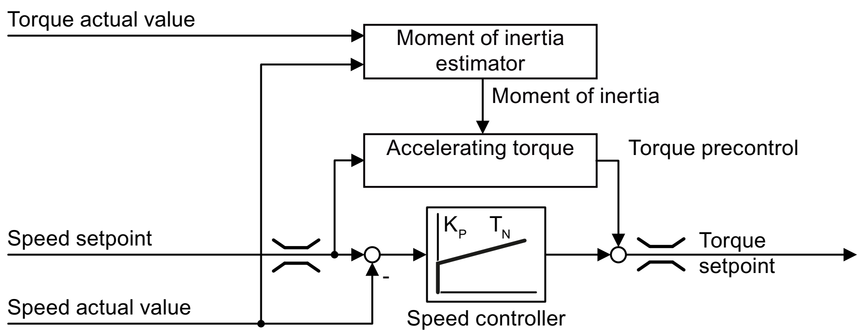


Figure 6-54 Influence of the moment of inertia estimator on the speed control

The more precise the value of the moment of inertia in the inverter, the lower the overshoot after speed changes.

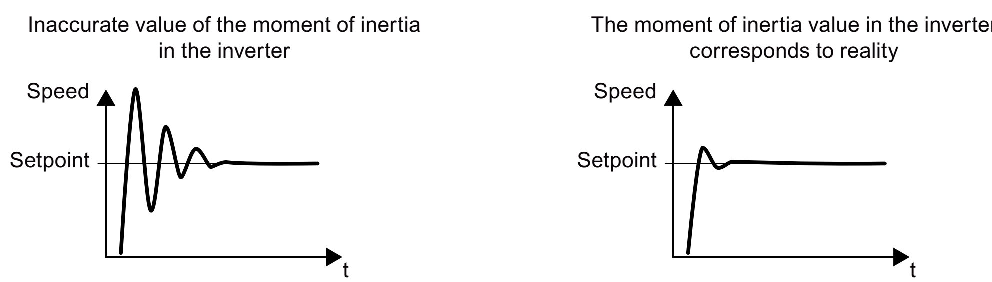


Figure 6-55 Influence of the moment of inertia on the speed

Function

From the actual speed, the actual motor torque and the frictional torque of the load, the inverter calculates the total moment of inertia of the load and motor.

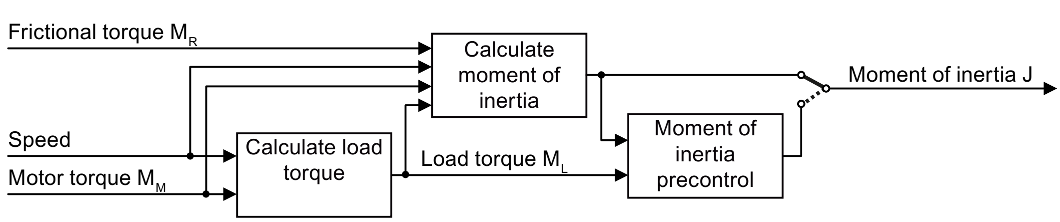
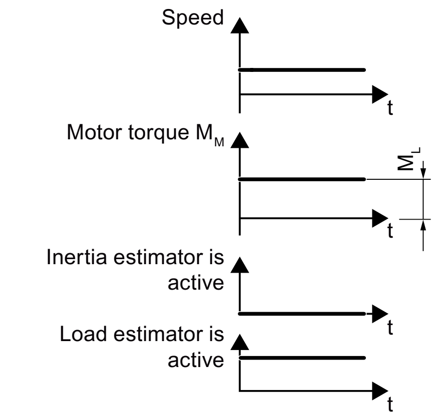


Figure 6-56 Overview of the function of the moment of inertia estimator

When using the moment of inertia estimator, we recommend that you also activate the friction characteristic.

Friction characteristic (Page 274)

Calculating the load torque

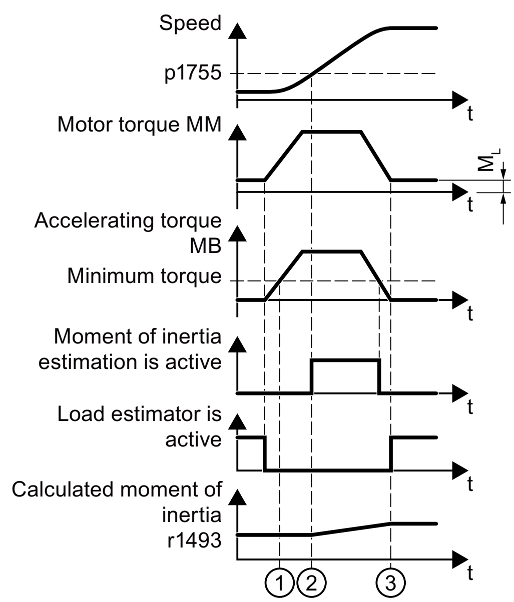


At low speeds, the inverter calculates the load torque M_L from the actual motor torque.

The calculation takes place under the following conditions:

- Speed ≥ p1226
- Acceleration setpoint < 8 $1/s^2$ (≙ speed change 480 rpm per s)
- Acceleration × moment of inertia (r1493) < 0.9 × p1560

Calculating the moment of inertia



For higher speed changes, the inverter initially calculates the accelerating torque M_B as difference between the motor torque M_M, load torque M_L and frictional torque M_R:

$M_B = M_M - M_L - M_R$

Moment of inertia J of the motor and load is obtained from the accelerating torque M_B and angular acceleration α (α = rate at which the speed changes):

$J = M_B / \alpha$

If all of the following conditions are met, the inverter calculates the moment of inertia:

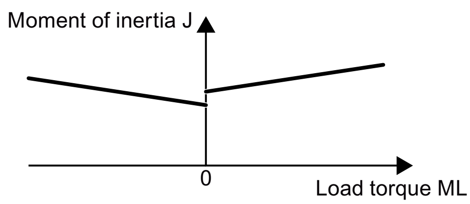
- ① The rated accelerating torque M_B must satisfy the following two conditions:
  - The sign of M_B is the same as the direction of the actual acceleration
  - M_B > p1560 × rated motor torque (r0333)
- ② speed > p1755
- The inverter has calculated the load torque in at least one direction of rotation.
- Acceleration setpoint > 8 $1/s^2$ (≙ speed change 480 rpm per s)

③ The inverter calculates the load torque again after acceleration.

Moment of inertia precontrol

In applications where the motor predominantly operates with a constant speed, the inverter can only infrequently calculate the moment of inertia using the function described above. Moment of inertia precontrol is available for situations such as these. The moment of inertia precontrol assumes that there is an approximately linear relationship between the moment of inertia and the load torque.

Example: For a horizontal conveyor, in a first approximation, the moment of inertia depends on the load.



The relationship between load torque and torque is saved in the inverter as linear characteristic.

In a positive direction of rotation:

Moment of inertia J = p5312 × load torque M_L + p5313

In a negative direction of rotation:

Moment of inertia J = p5314 × load torque M_L + p5315

You have the following options to determine the characteristic:

- You already know the characteristic from other measurements. In this case, you must set the parameters to known values when commissioning the system.
- The inverter iteratively determines the characteristic by performing measurements while the motor is operational.

Activating the moment of inertia estimator

The moment of inertia estimator is deactivated in the factory setting. p1400.18 = 0, p1400.20 = 0, p1400.22 = 0.

If you performed the rotating measurement for the motor identification during quick commissioning, we recommend leaving the moment of inertia estimator deactivated.

Preconditions

- You have selected encoderless vector control.
- The load torque must be constant whilst the motor accelerates or brakes.
  Typical of a constant load torque are conveyor applications and centrifuges, for example. Fan applications, for example, are not permitted.
- The speed setpoint is free from superimposed unwanted signals.
- The motor and load are connected to each other with an interference fit.
  Drives with slip between the motor shaft and load are not permitted, e.g. as a result of loose or worn belts.

If the conditions are not met, you must not activate the moment of inertia estimator.

Procedure

To activate the moment of inertia estimator, proceed as follows:

1. Set p1400.18 = 1
2. Check: p1496 ≠ 0
3. Activate the acceleration model of the speed controller pre-control: p1400.20 = 1.

You have activated the moment of inertia estimator.

The most important settings

Parameter	Explanation		
r0333	**Rated motor torque** [Nm]		
p0341	**Motor moment of inertia** (factory setting: 0 kgm²) The inverter sets the parameter when selecting a listed motor. The parameter is then write-protected.		
p0342	**Moment of inertia ratio, total to motor** (factory setting: 1) Ratio of moment of inertia load + motor to moment of inertia of motor without load		
p1400	**Speed control configuration**		
	.18	1 signal: Moment of inertia estimator active	
	.20	1 signal: Acceleration model on	
	.22	1 signal	Moment of inertia estimator retain value when motor switched off
		0 signal	Moment of inertia estimator reset value to initial value J_0 when motor switched off: J_0 = p0341 × p0342 + p1498 If the load torque can change when the motor is switched off, set p1400.22 = 0.
	.24	1 signal	Shortened moment of inertia estimation is active. p1400.24 = 1 reduces the duration of the moment of inertia estimation. Disadvantage: If the accelerating torque is not constant while calculating the moment of inertia, the calculation of the moment of inertia using p1400.24 = 1 is less precise.
r1407	**Status word, speed controller**		
	.24	1 signal: Moment of inertia estimator is active	
	.25	1 signal: Load estimator is active	
	.26	1 signal: Moment of inertia estimator is engaged	
	.27	1 signal: Shortened moment of inertia estimation is active.	
r1493	**Total moment of inertia, scaled** r1493 = p0341 × p0342 × p1496		
p1496	**Acceleration precontrol scaling** (factory setting: 0%) According to rotating measurement of the motor data identification is p1496 = 100%.		
p1498	**Load moment of inertia** (factory setting: 0 kgm²)		

Parameter	Explanation	
p1502	**Freeze moment of inertia estimator** (factory setting: 0) If the load torque changes when accelerating the motor, set this signal to 0.	
	0 signal	Moment of inertia estimator is active
	1 signal	Determined moment of inertia is frozen
p1755	**Motor model changeover speed encoderless operation** Defines the switchover between open-loop and closed-loop controlled operation of the encoderless vector control. When selecting the closed-loop speed control, the inverter sets p1755 = 13.3% × rated speed.	

Advanced settings

Parameter	Explanation		
p1226	**Standstill detection, speed threshold** (Factory setting: 20 rpm) The moment of inertia estimator only measures the load torque for speeds ≥ p1226. p1226 also defines from which speed the inverter switches-off the motor for OFF1 and OFF3.		
p1560	**Moment of inertia estimator accelerating torque threshold value** (factory setting: 10%)		
p1561	**Moment of inertia estimator change time inertia** (factory setting: 500 ms)		The lower that p1561 or p1562 is, the shorter the moment of inertia estimator measurements. The larger p1561 or p1562 is, the more accurate the results provided by the moment of inertia estimator.
p1562	**Moment of inertia estimator change time load** (factory setting: 10 ms)		
p1563	**Moment of inertia estimator load torque positive direction of rotation**(factory setting: 0 Nm)		
p1564	**Moment of inertia estimator load torque negative direction of rotation**(factory setting: 0 Nm)		
p5310	**Moment of inertia precontrol configuration** (factory setting: 0000 bin)		
	.00	1 signal: Activates calculation of the characteristic (p5312 … p5315)	
	.01	1 signal: Activates moment of inertia precontrol	
		p5310.00 = 0, p5310.01 = 0	Deactivating moment of inertia precontrol
		p5310.00 = 1, p5310.01 = 0	Adapting the moment of inertia precontrol
		p5310.00 = 0, p5310.01 = 1	Activating the moment of inertia precontrol. The characteristic of the moment of inertia precontrol remains unchanged.
		p5310.00 = 1, p5310.01 = 1	Activating the moment of inertia precontrol. The inverter adapts the characteristic in parallel.

Parameter	Explanation	
r5311	**Moment of inertia precontrol status word**	
	.00	1 signal: New measuring points for the characteristic of the moment of inertia precontrol are available
	.01	1 signal: New parameters are been calculated
	.02	1 signal: Moment of inertia precontrol active
	.03	1 signal: The characteristic in the positive direction of rotation has been calculated and is ready
	.04	1 signal: The characteristic in the negative direction of rotation has been calculated and is ready
	.05	1 signal: The inverter writes actual results to the parameter
p5312	**Moment of inertia precontrol linear positive** (factory setting: 0 1/s²)	In a positive direction of rotation: Moment of inertia = p5312 × load torque + p5313
p5313	**Moment of inertia precontrol constant positive** (factory setting: 0 kgm²)	
p5314	**Moment of inertia precontrol linear negative** (factory setting: 0 1/s²)	In a negative direction of rotation: Moment of inertia = p5314 × load torque + p5315
p5315	**Moment of inertia precontrol constant negative** (factory setting: 0 kgm²)	

6.19.4 Application examples for closed-loop motor control

Additional information for setting the closed-loop motor control in certain applications is provided in the Internet:

- Engineering and commissioning series lifting equipment/cranes (https://support.industry.siemens.com/cs/de/en/view/103156155)
- Commissioning a compressor with closed-loop pressure control (https://support.industry.siemens.com/cs/ww/en/view/77491582)

6.20 Electrically braking the motor

Braking with the motor in generating mode

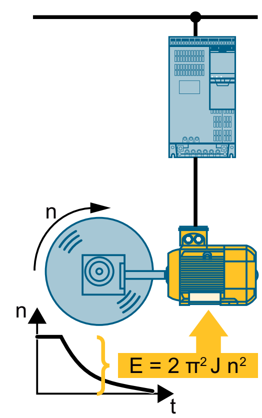
If the motor brakes the connected load electrically, it will convert the kinetic energy of the motor to electrical energy. The electrical energy E released on braking the load is proportional to the moment of inertia J of the motor and load and to the square of the speed n. The motor attempts to pass the energy on to the inverter.

Main features of the braking functions

DC braking

DC braking prevents the motor from transferring braking energy to the inverter. The inverter impresses a DC current into the motor, therefore braking the motor. The motor converts braking energy E of the load into heat.

- *Advantage:* The motor brakes the load without the inverter having to process regenerative power.
- *Disadvantages:* significant increase in the motor temperature; no defined braking characteristics; no constant braking torque; no braking torque at standstill; braking energy is lost as heat; does not function when the power fails



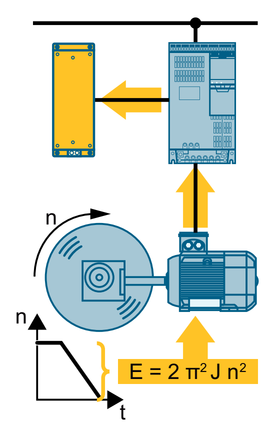
Compound braking

One version of DC braking. The inverter brakes the motor with a defined ramp-down time and superimposes a DC current on the output current.

Dynamic braking

Using a braking resistor, the inverter converts the electrical energy into heat.

- *Advantages:* defined braking response; motor temperature does not increase any further; constant braking torque
- *Disadvantages:* Braking resistor required; braking energy E is lost in the form of heat



Braking method depending on the application

Table 6-52 What braking method is suitable for what application?

Application examples	Electrical braking methods
Pumps, fans, mixers, compressors, extruders	Not required
Grinding machines, conveyor belts	DC braking, compound braking
Centrifuges, vertical conveyors, hoisting gear, cranes, winders	Dynamic braking

6.20.1 DC braking

DC braking is used for applications where the motor must be actively stopped; however, neither an inverter capable of energy recovery nor a braking resistor is available.

Typical applications for DC braking include:

- Centrifuges
- Saws
- Grinding machines
- Conveyor belts

DC braking is not permissible in applications involving suspended loads, e.g. lifting equipment/ cranes and vertical conveyors.

Function

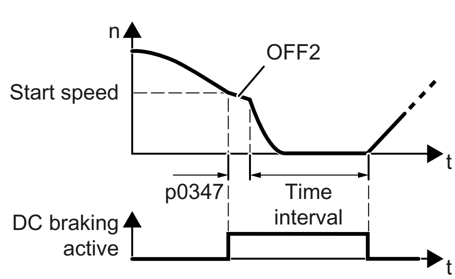
NOTICE
Motor overheating as a result of DC braking
The motor will overheat if you use DC braking too frequently or use it for too long. This may damage the motor. • Monitor the motor temperature. • Allow the motor to adequately cool down between braking operations. • If necessary, select another motor braking method.

With DC braking, the inverter outputs an internal OFF2 command for the time that it takes to de-energize the motor p0347 - and then impresses the braking current for the duration of the DC braking.

The DC-braking function is possible only for induction motors.

4 different events initiate DC braking

DC braking when falling below a starting speed



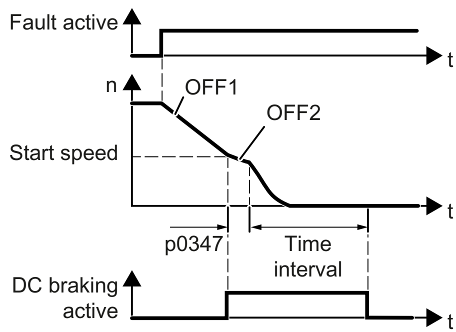
Requirement:

p1230 = 1 and p1231 = 14

Function:

1. The motor speed has exceeded the starting speed.
2. The inverter activates the DC braking as soon as the motor speed falls below the starting speed.

DC braking when a fault occurs



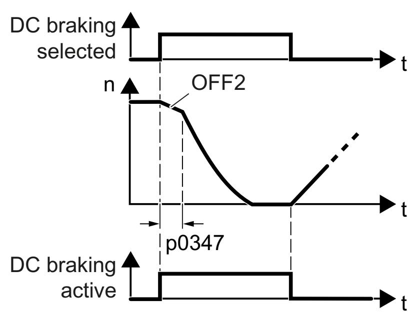
Requirement:

Fault number and fault response are assigned via p2100 and p2101.

Function:

1. A fault occurs, which initiates DC braking as response.
2. The motor brakes along the down ramp to the speed for the start of DC braking.
3. DC braking starts.

DC braking initiated by a control command



Requirement:

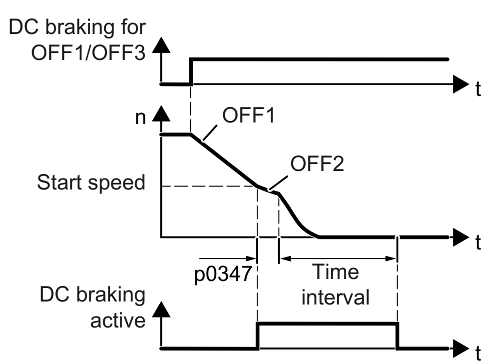
p1231 = 4 and p1230 = control command, e.g. p1230 = 722.3 (control command via DI 3)

Function:

1. The higher-level control issues the command for DC braking, e.g. using DI3: p1230 = 722.3.
2. DC braking starts.

If the higher-level control withdraws the command during DC braking, the inverter interrupts DC braking and the motor accelerates to its setpoint.

DC braking when the motor is switched off



Requirement:

p1231 = 5 or p1230 = 1 and p1231 = 14

Function:

1. The higher-level control switches off the motor (OFF1 or OFF3).
2. The motor brakes along the down ramp to the speed for the start of DC braking.
3. DC braking starts.

Settings for DC braking

Parameter	Description
p0347	**Motor de-excitation time** (calculated after quick commissioning) The inverter can trip due to an overcurrent during DC braking if the de-excitation time is too short.
p1230	**DC braking activation** (factory setting: 0) Signal source to activate DC braking • 0 signal: Deactivated • 1 signal: Active
p1231	**Configuring DC braking** (factory setting: 0) 0: No DC braking 4: General release for DC braking 5: DC braking for OFF1/OFF3 14: DC braking below the starting speed
p1232	**DC braking braking current** (factory setting 0 A)
p1233	**DC braking duration** (factory setting 1 s)
p1234	**DC braking start speed** (factory setting 210000 rpm)
r1239	**DC braking status word** .08: DC braking active .10: DC braking ready .11: DC braking selected .12: DC braking selection internally locked .13: DC braking for OFF1/OFF3

Table 6-53 Configuring DC braking as a response to faults

Parameter	Description
p2100	**Set fault number for fault response** (factory setting 0) Enter the fault number for which DC braking should be activated, e.g. p2100[3] = 7860 (external fault 1).
p2101 = 6	**Fault response setting** (factory setting 0) Assigning the fault response: p2101[3] = 6.
The fault is assigned an index of p2100. Assign the same index of p2100 or p2101 to the fault and fault response. The inverter's List Manual lists in the "Faults and alarms" list the possible fault responses for every fault. Entry "DCBRK" means that you may set DC braking as response for this fault.	

6.20.2 Compound braking

Compound braking is suitable for applications in which the motor is normally operated at a constant speed and is only braked down to standstill in longer time intervals.

Typically, the following applications are suitable for compound braking:

- Centrifuges
- Saws
- Grinding machines
- Horizontal conveyors

Compound braking is not permissible for applications with suspended loads, e.g. lifting equipment/cranes all vertical conveyors.

Principle of operation

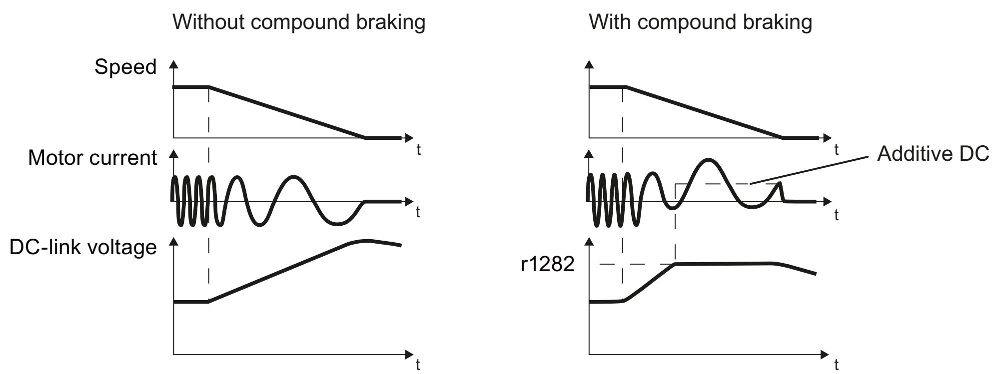


Figure 6-57 Motor brakes with and without active compound braking

Compound braking prevents the DC-link voltage increasing above a critical value. The inverter activates compound braking depending on the DC-link voltage. Above a DC-link voltage threshold (r1282), the inverter adds a DC current to the motor current. The DC current brakes the motor and prevents an excessive increase in the DC-link voltage.

Note

Compound braking is possible only with the U/f control.

Compound braking does not operate in the following cases:

- The "flying restart" function is active
- DC braking is active
- Vector control is selected

Setting and enabling compound braking

Parameter	Description
p3856	**Compound braking current (%)** With the compound braking current, the magnitude of the DC current is defined, which is additionally generated when stopping the motor for operation with U/f control to increase the braking effect. p3856 = 0 Compound braking locked p3856 = 1 … 250 Current level of the DC braking current as a % of the rated motor current (p0305) Recommendation: p3856 < 100% × (r0209 - r0331) / p0305 / 2
r3859.0	**Compound-braking status word** r3859.0 = 1: Compound braking is active

NOTICE

Overheating of the motor due to compound braking

The motor will overheat if you use compound braking too frequently or for too long. This may damage the motor.

- Monitor the motor temperature.
- Allow the motor to adequately cool down between braking operations.
- If necessary, select another motor braking method.

6.20.3 Dynamic braking

Typical applications for dynamic braking require continuous braking and acceleration operations or frequent changes of the motor direction of rotation:

- Horizontal conveyors
- Vertical and inclined conveyors
- Hoisting gear

Principle of operation

The DC link voltage increases as soon as the motor supplies regenerative power to the inverter when braking. The regenerative power means that the DC link voltage in the inverter increases. Depending on the DC link voltage, the inverter outputs the regenerative power to the braking resistor through the braking chopper. The braking resistor converts the regenerative power into heat, therefore preventing DC link voltages > Vdc_max.

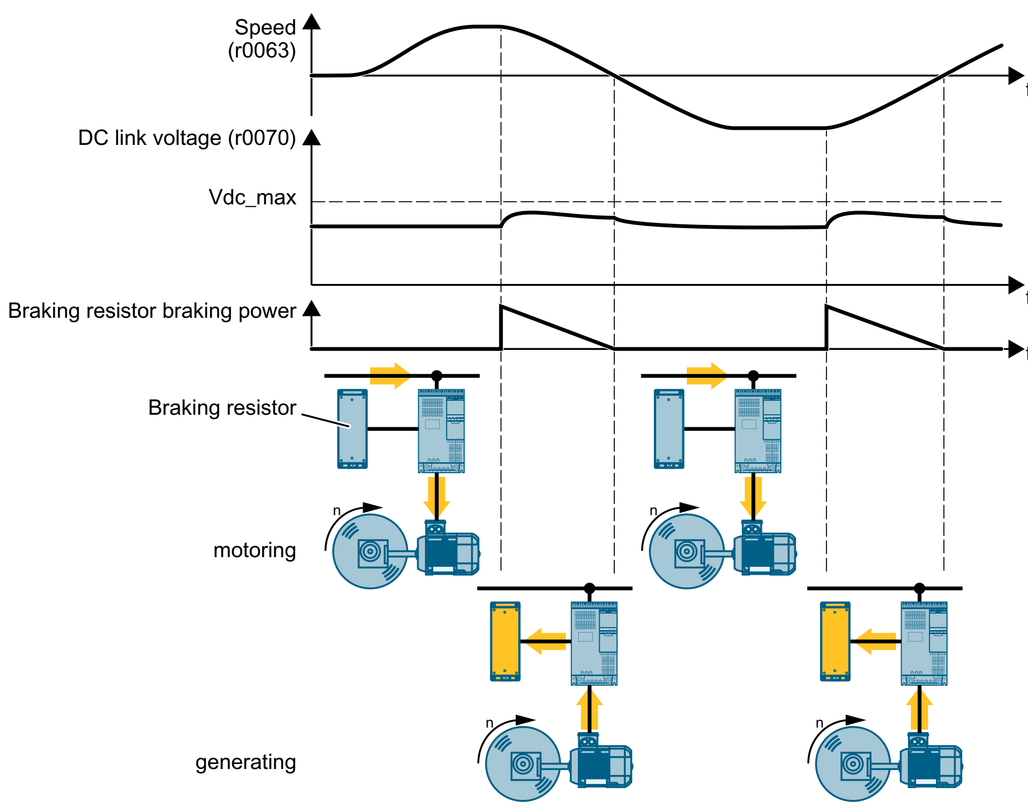
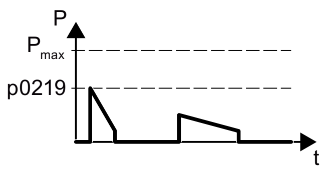


Figure 6-58 Simplified representation of dynamic braking with respect to time

Set dynamic braking

<table>
<tr><th>Parameter</th><th colspan="2">Description</th></tr>
<tr><td>p0219</td><td colspan="2">Braking power of the braking resistor (factory setting: 0 kW)
For p0219 > 0, the inverter deactivates the VDC_max controller.
For vector control, p0219 defines the regenerative power limit p1531.


Using p0219, you define the maximum braking power that the braking resistor must absorb.
Braking resistor (Page 427)
For an excessively low braking power, the inverter extends the motor ramp-down time.
The SIZER PC tool supports you when calculating the braking power.
Configuring support (Page 461)</td></tr>
<tr><td rowspan="2">p2106</td><td colspan="2">BI: External fault 1</td></tr>
<tr><td>p2106 = 722.x</td><td>Signal for monitoring the braking resistor overtemperature with digital input x of the inverter.
Monitoring the temperature of the braking resistor (Page 113)</td></tr>
</table>

An application example for configuring a drive with braking resistor is provided in the Internet:

Engineering and commissioning series lifting equipment/cranes (https://support.industry.siemens.com/cs/de/en/view/103156155)

6.21 Overcurrent protection

The vector control ensures that the motor current remains within the set torque limits.

If you use U/f control, you cannot set any torque limits. The U/f control prevents too high a motor current by influencing the output frequency and the motor voltage (I-max controller).

I_max controller

Requirements

The torque of the motor must decrease at lower speeds, which is the case, for example, with fans.

The load must not drive the motor continuously, e.g. when lowering hoisting gear.

Function

The I-max controller influences the output frequency and the motor voltage.

If the motor current reaches the current limit during acceleration, the I-max controller extends the acceleration operation.

If the load of the motor is so large during stationary operation that the motor current reaches the current limit, the I-max controller reduces the speed and the motor voltage until the motor current is in the permissible range again.

If the motor current reaches the current limit during deceleration, the I-max controller extends the deceleration operation.

Settings

You only have to change the factory settings of the I-max controller if the drive tends to oscillate when it reaches the current limit or if it is shut down due to overcurrent.

Table 6-54 I-max controller parameters

Parameter	Description
p0305	**Rated motor current**
p0640	**Motor current limit**
p1340	**Proportional gain of the I-max controller for speed reduction**
p1341	**Integral time of the I-max controller for speed reduction**
r0056.13	**Status: I-max controller active**
r1343	**Speed output of the I-max controller** Shows the amount to which the I-max controller reduces the speed.

For more information about this function, see function diagram 6300 in the List Manual.

6.22 Inverter protection using temperature monitoring

The inverter temperature is essentially defined by the following effects:

- The ambient temperature
- The ohmic losses increasing with the output current
- Switching losses increasing with the pulse frequency

Monitoring types

The inverter monitors its temperature using the following monitoring types:

- I^2t monitoring (alarm A07805, fault F30005)
- Measuring the chip temperature of the Power Module (alarm A05006, fault F30024)
- Measuring the heat sink temperature of the Power Module (alarm A05000, fault F30004)

Inverter response to thermal overload

Parameter	Description
r0036	**Power unit overload I^2t** [%] The I^2t monitoring calculates the inverter utilization based on a current reference value defined in the factory. • Actual current > reference value: r0036 becomes higher. • Actual current < reference value: r0036 becomes lower or remains = 0.
r0037	**Power unit temperatures** [°C]
p0290	**Power unit overload response** Factory setting and the ability to be changed depends on the hardware. The dependency is described in the List Manual. A thermal overload is present if the inverter temperature is greater than that specified in p0292. You define how the inverter responds if there is a risk of thermal overload using this parameter. The details are described below.
p0292	**Power unit temperature warning threshold** (factory setting: Heat sink [0] 5 °C, power semiconductor [1] 15 °C) The value is set as a difference to the shutdown temperature.
p0294	**Power unit warning at I2t overload** (factory setting: 95 %)

Overload response for p0290 = 0

The inverter responds depending on the control mode that has been set:

- In vector control, the inverter reduces the output current.
- In U/f control, the inverter reduces the speed.

Once the overload condition has been removed, the inverter re-enables the output current or speed.

If the measure cannot prevent an inverter thermal overload, then the inverter switches off the motor with fault F30024.

Overload response for p0290 = 1

The inverter immediately switches off the motor with fault F30024.

Overload response for p0290 = 2

We recommend this setting for drives with square-law torque characteristic, e.g. fans.

The inverter responds in two stages:

1. If you operate the inverter with increased pulse frequency setpoint p1800, then the inverter reduces its pulse frequency starting at p1800.
   In spite of the temporarily reduced pulse frequency, the base load output current remains unchanged at the value that is assigned to p1800.

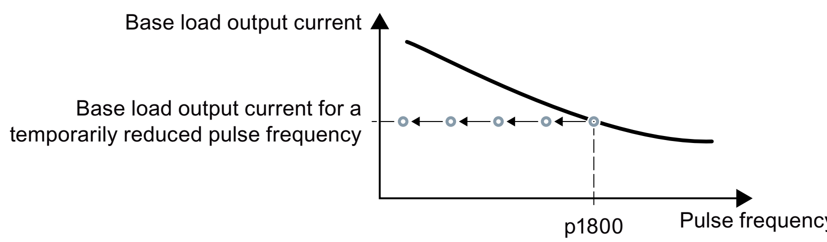
   

   Figure 6-59 Derating characteristic and base load output current for overload

   Once the overload condition has been removed, the inverter increases the pulse frequency back to the pulse frequency setpoint p1800.
2. If it is not possible to temporarily reduce the pulse frequency, or the risk of thermal overload cannot be prevented, then stage 2 follows:
   – In vector control, the inverter reduces its output current.
   – In U/f control, the inverter reduces the speed.

   Once the overload condition has been removed, the inverter re-enables the output current or speed.

If both measures cannot prevent a power unit thermal overload, then the inverter switches off the motor with fault F30024.

Overload response for p0290 = 3

If you operate the inverter with increased pulse frequency, then the inverter reduces its pulse frequency starting at the pulse frequency setpoint p1800.

In spite of the temporarily reduced pulse frequency, the maximum output current remains unchanged at the value that is assigned to the pulse frequency setpoint. Also see p0290 = 2.

Once the overload condition has been removed, the inverter increases the pulse frequency back to the pulse frequency setpoint p1800.

If it is not possible to temporarily reduce the pulse frequency, or the measure cannot prevent a power unit thermal overload, then the inverter switches off the motor with fault F30024.

Overload response for p0290 = 12

The inverter responds in two stages:

1. If you operate the inverter with increased pulse frequency setpoint p1800, then the inverter reduces its pulse frequency starting at p1800.
   There is no current derating as a result of the higher pulse frequency setpoint.
   Once the overload condition has been removed, the inverter increases the pulse frequency back to the pulse frequency setpoint p1800.
2. If it is not possible to temporarily reduce the pulse frequency, or the risk of inverter thermal overload cannot be prevented, then stage 2 follows:
   - In vector control, the inverter reduces the output current.
   - In U/f control, the inverter reduces the speed.

   Once the overload condition has been removed, the inverter re-enables the output current or speed.

If both measures cannot prevent a power unit thermal overload, then the inverter switches off the motor with fault F30024.

Overload response for p0290 = 13

We recommend this setting for drives with high starting torque, e.g. horizontal conveyors or extruders.

If you operate the inverter with increased pulse frequency, then the inverter reduces its pulse frequency starting at the pulse frequency setpoint p1800.

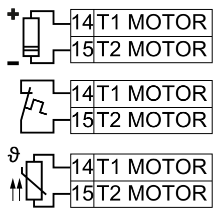
There is no current derating as a result of the higher pulse frequency setpoint.

Once the overload condition has been removed, the inverter increases the pulse frequency back to the pulse frequency setpoint p1800.

If it is not possible to temporarily reduce the pulse frequency, or the measure cannot prevent a power unit thermal overload, then the inverter switches off the motor with fault F30024.

6.23 Motor protection with temperature sensor

The inverter can evaluate one of the following sensors to protect the motor against overtemperature:



- KTY84 sensor
- Temperature switch (e.g. bimetallic switch)
- PTC sensor
- Pt1000 sensor

KTY84 sensor

NOTICE
Overheating of the motor due to KTY sensor connected with the incorrect polarity
If a KTY sensor is connected with incorrect polarity, the motor can become damaged due to overheating, as the inverter cannot detect a motor overtemperature condition. • Connect the KTY sensor with the correct polarity.

Using a KTY sensor, the inverter monitors the motor temperature and the sensor itself for wire-break or short-circuit:

- Temperature monitoring:
  The inverter uses a KTY sensor to evaluate the motor temperature in the range from -48° C ... +248° C.
  Use the p0604 or p0605 parameter to set the temperature for the alarm and fault threshold.
  - Overtemperature alarm (A07910):
    - motor temperature > p0604 and p0610 = 0
  - Overtemperature fault (F07011):
    The inverter responds with a fault in the following cases:
    - motor temperature > p0605
    - motor temperature > p0604 and p0610 ≠ 0
- Sensor monitoring (A07015 or F07016):
  - Wire-break:
    The inverter interprets a resistance > 2120 Ω as a wire-break and outputs the alarm A07015. After 100 milliseconds, the inverter changes to the fault state with F07016.
  - Short-circuit:
    The inverter interprets a resistance < 50 Ω as a short-circuit and outputs the alarm A07015. After 100 milliseconds, the inverter changes to the fault state with F07016.

Temperature switch

The inverter interprets a resistance ≥ 100 Ω as being an opened temperature switch and responds according to the setting for p0610.

PTC sensor

The inverter interprets a resistance > 1650 Ω as being an overtemperature and responds according to the setting for p0610.

The inverter interprets a resistance < 20 Ω as being a short-circuit and responds with alarm A07015. If the alarm is present for longer than 100 milliseconds, the inverter shuts down with fault F07016.

Pt1000 sensor

Using a Pt1000 sensor, the inverter monitors the motor temperature and the sensor itself for wire breakage and/or short-circuit:

- Temperature monitoring:
  Using a Pt1000 sensor, the inverter evaluates the motor temperature in the range from -48 °C ... +248 °C.
  You set the temperature for the alarm and fault thresholds using parameters p0604 and p0605.
  - Overtemperature alarm (A07910):
    - motor temperature > p0604 and p0610 = 0
  - Overtemperature fault (F07011):
    The inverter responds with a fault in the following cases:
    - motor temperature > p0605
    - motor temperature > p0604 and p0610 ≠ 0
- Sensor monitoring (A07015 or F07016):
  - Wire-break:
    The inverter interprets a resistance > 2120 Ω as a wire-break and outputs the alarm A07015. After 100 milliseconds, the inverter changes to the fault state with F07016.
  - Short-circuit:
    The inverter interprets a resistance < 603 Ω as a short-circuit and outputs the alarm A07015. After 100 milliseconds, the inverter changes to the fault state with F07016.

Setting parameters for the temperature monitoring

Parameter	Description
p0335	**Motor-cooling method** (factory setting: 0) 0: Natural cooling - with fan on the motor shaft 1: Forced ventilation - with a separately driven fan 2: Liquid cooling 128: No fan
p0601	**Motor temperature sensor type** 0: No sensor (factory setting) 1: PTC 2: KTY84 4: Temperature switch 6: Pt1000
p0604	**Mot_temp_mod 2 / sensor alarm threshold** (factory setting 130° C) For monitoring the motor temperature using KTY84/Pt1000.

<table>
<tr><th>Parameter</th><th colspan="2">Description</th></tr>
<tr><td>p0605</td><td colspan="2">Mot_temp_mod 1/2 / sensor threshold and temperature value (factory setting: 145° C)
For monitoring the motor temperature using KTY84/Pt1000.</td></tr>
<tr><td rowspan="4">p0610</td><td colspan="2">Motor overtemperature response (factory setting: 12)
Determines the inverter behavior when the motor temperature reaches the alarm threshold p0604.</td></tr>
<tr><td>0:</td><td>Alarm (A07910), no fault</td></tr>
<tr><td>1:</td><td>Alarm A07910 and fault F07011
The inverter reduces the current limit.</td></tr>
<tr><td>2, 12:</td><td>Alarm A07910 and fault F07011
The inverter does not reduce the current limit.</td></tr>
<tr><td>p0640</td><td colspan="2">Current limit [A]</td></tr>
</table>

Additional information on the motor temperature monitoring can be found in function diagram 8016 of the List Manual.

6.24 Motor protection by calculating the temperature

The inverter calculates the motor temperature based on a thermal motor model.

The thermal motor model responds far faster to temperature increases than a temperature sensor.

If you are using the thermal motor model together with a temperature sensor, e.g. a Pt1000, then the inverter corrects the model based on the measured temperature.

Thermal motor model 2 for induction motors

The thermal motor model 2 for induction motors is a thermal 3-mass model, consisting of stator core, stator winding and rotor. Thermal motor model 2 calculates the temperatures - both in the rotor as well as in the stator winding.

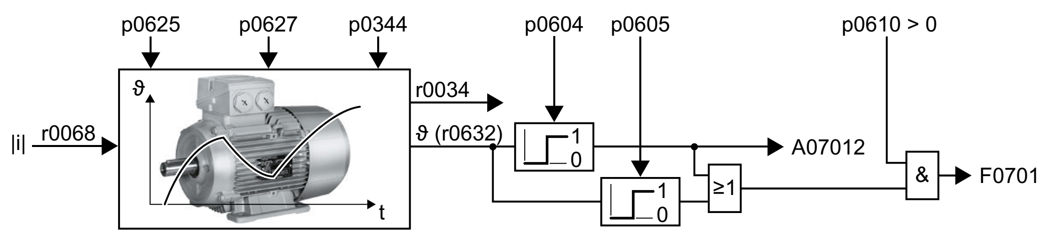


Figure 6-60 Thermal motor model 2 for induction motors

Table 6-55 Thermal motor model 2 for induction motors

Parameter	Description	
r0068	**CO: Absolute actual current value**	
p0610	**Motor overtemperature response** (factory setting: 12)	
	0:	Alarm A07012 The inverter does not reduce the current limit.
	1:	Alarm A07012 and fault F07011 The inverter reduces the current limit.
	2:	Alarm A07012 and fault F07011 The inverter does not reduce the current limit.
	12:	Alarm A07012 and fault F07011 The inverter does not reduce the current limit. After switching off the supply voltage, the inverter saves the most-recently calculated difference to the ambient air temperature. After switching the supply voltage on again, the thermal motor model starts with 90 % of the previously saved difference temperature.

<table>
<tr><th>Parameter</th><th colspan="3">Description</th></tr>
<tr><td>p0344</td><td colspan="2">Motor weight (for thermal motor type) (factory setting: 0.0 kg)</td><td rowspan="7">After selecting an induction motor (p0300) or a listed induction motor (p0301) during the commissioning, the inverter sets the parameters to values appropriate for the motor.
The parameters are write-protected for listed motors (p0301 ≥ 0).</td></tr>
<tr><td>p0604</td><td colspan="2">Mot_temp_mod 2/KTY alarm threshold (factory setting: 130.0° C)
Motor temperature > p0604 ⇒ fault F07011.</td></tr>
<tr><td>p0605</td><td colspan="2">Mot_temp_mod 1/2 threshold (factory setting: 145.0° C)
Motor temperature > p0605 ⇒ alarm A07012.</td></tr>
<tr><td rowspan="3">p0612</td><td colspan="2">Mot_temp_mod activation</td></tr>
<tr><td>.01</td><td>1 signal: Activate motor temperature model 2 for induction motors</td></tr>
<tr><td>.09</td><td>1 signal: Activate motor temperature model 2 expansions
The inverter sets bit 09 = 1 after commissioning. If you load the parameter settings for firmware version ≤ V4.6 into the inverter, bit 09 = 0 remains.</td></tr>
<tr><td>p0627</td><td colspan="2">Motor overtemperature, stator winding (factory setting: 80 K)</td></tr>
<tr><td>p0625</td><td colspan="3">Motor ambient temperature during commissioning (factory setting: 20° C)
Specification of the motor ambient temperature in °C at the instant of the motor data identification.</td></tr>
<tr><td>r0632</td><td colspan="3">Mot_temp_mod stator winding temperature [°C]</td></tr>
<tr><td>p0640</td><td colspan="3">Current limit [A]</td></tr>
</table>

Further information is provided in the function charts 8016 and 8017 of the List Manual.

Thermal motor model 1 for synchronous motors

Further information about thermal motor model 1 for synchronous motors is provided in the function charts 8016 and 8017 of the List Manual.

6.25 Motor and inverter protection by limiting the voltage

What causes an excessively high voltage?

To drive the load, an electric motor converts electrical energy into mechanical energy. If the motor is driven by its load, e.g. due to the load moment of inertia when braking, then the energy flow reverses: The motor temporarily operates as generator, and converts mechanical energy into electrical energy. The electrical energy flows from the motor to the inverter. If the inverter cannot output the electrical energy supplied by the motor, e.g. to a braking resistor, then the inverter stores the energy in its DC link capacitance. As a consequence, the DC link voltage Vdc in the inverter is higher.

An excessively high DC link voltage damages the inverter and also the motor. As a consequence, the inverter monitors its DC link voltage - and when necessary switches off the motor and outputs fault "DC link overvoltage".

Protecting the motor and inverter against overvoltage

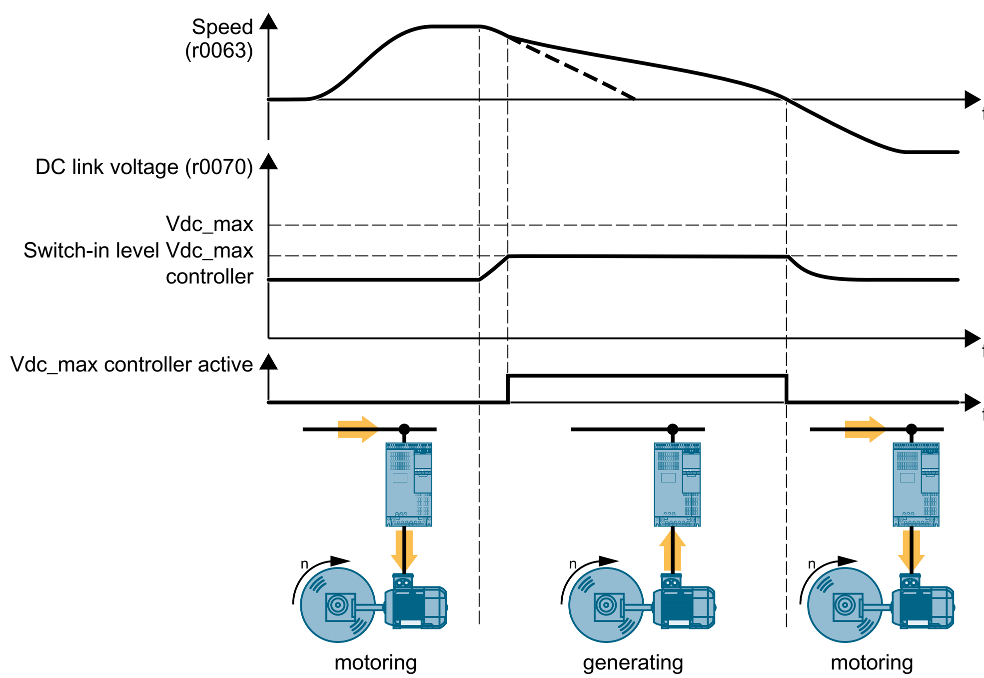


Figure 6-61 Simplified representation of the Vdc_max control

The Vdc_max control extends the motor ramp-down time when braking. The motor then only feeds so much energy into the inverter to cover the losses in the inverter. The DC link voltage remains in the permissible range.

The Vdc_max control is not suitable for applications where the motor is in continuous regenerative operation, e.g. as is the case for cranes and centrifuges.

Electrically braking the motor (Page 283)

Parameter for Vdc_max control

The parameters differ depending on the motor control mode.

Parameter for V/f control	Parameter for vector control	Description
p1280 = 1	p1240 = 1	**VDC controller configuration**(factory setting: 1) 1: VDC controller is enabled
r1282	r1242	**Vdc_max control switch-on level** DC-link voltage value above which the Vdc_max control is activated
p1283	p1243	**Vdc_max control dynamic factor** (factory setting: 100 %) Scaling closed-loop control parameters p1290, p1291 and p1292
p1294	p1254	**Vdc_max control automatic ON level sensing**(factory setting, dependent on the Power Module) 0: Automatic detection disabled 1: Automatic detection enabled
p0210	p0210	**Unit supply voltage** If p1254 or p1294 = 0, the inverter uses this parameter to calculate the switch-in thresholds of the Vdc_max control. Set this parameter to the actual value of the input voltage.

For more information about this function, see the List Manual (function diagrams 6320 and 6220).

Overview of the manuals (Page 459)

6.26 Flying restart – switching on while the motor is running

If you switch on the motor while it is still rotating, without the "Flying restart" function, there is a high probability that a fault will occur as a result of overcurrent (F30001 or F07801). Examples of applications involving an unintentionally rotating motor directly before switching on:

- The motor rotates after a brief line interruption.
- A flow of air turns the fan impeller.
- A load with a high moment of inertia drives the motor.

Principle of operation

The "Flying restart" function comprises the following steps:

1. After the on command, the inverter impresses the search current in the motor and increases the output frequency.
2. When the output frequency reaches the actual motor speed, the inverter waits for the motor excitation build up time.
3. The inverter accelerates the motor to the actual speed setpoint.

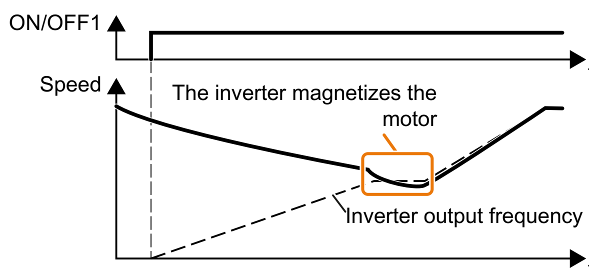


Figure 6-62 Principle of operation of the "flying restart" function

Setting "flying restart" function

Parameter	Description	
p1200	**Flying restart operating mode** (factory setting: 0)	
	0	Flying restart is disabled
	1	Flying restart is enabled, search for the motor in both directions, start in the direction of the setpoint
	4	Flying restart is enabled, search for the motor only in the direction of the setpoint

No "Flying restart" function for group drives

It is not permissible that you enable the "Flying restart" function if the inverter is simultaneously driving several motors.

Exception: a mechanical coupling ensures that all of the motors always operate with the same speed.

Table 6-56 Advanced settings

Parameter	Description
p0346	**Motor excitation build up time** Wait time between switching on the motor and enabling the ramp-function generator.
p0347	**Motor de-excitation time** Within the motor de-excitation time, after an OFF command, the inverter prevents the induction motor from being switched on again.
p1201	**Flying restart enable signal source** (factory setting: 1) Defines a control command, e.g. a digital input, which enables the flying restart function.
p1202	**Flying restart search current** (Factory setting depends on the Power Module) Defines the search current with respect to the magnetizing current (r0331), which flows in the motor during the flying restart.
p1203	**Flying restart search current factor** (Factory setting depends on the Power Module) The value influences the speed with which the output frequency is changed during the flying restart. A higher value results in a longer search time. If the inverter does not find the motor, reduce the search speed (increase p1203).

6.27 Automatic restart

The automatic restart includes two different functions:

- The inverter automatically acknowledges faults.
- After a fault occurs or after a power failure, the inverter automatically switches-on the motor again.

The inverter interprets the following events as power failure:

- The inverter signals fault F30003 (undervoltage in the DC link), after the inverter line voltage has been briefly interrupted.
- All of the inverter power supplies have been interrupted - and all of the energy storage devices in the inverter have discharged to such a level that the inverter electronics fail.

Setting the automatic restart function

> **WARNING**
>
> **Unexpected machine motion caused by the active automatic restart function**
>
> When the "automatic restart" function is active (p1210 > 1), the motor automatically starts after a line supply phase. Unexpected movement of machine parts can result in serious injury and material damage.
>
> - Block off hazardous areas within the machine to prevent inadvertent access.

If it is possible that the motor is still rotating for a longer period of time after a power failure or after a fault, then you must also activate the "flying restart" function.

Flying restart – switching on while the motor is running (Page 303)

Using p1210, select the automatic restart mode that best suits your application.

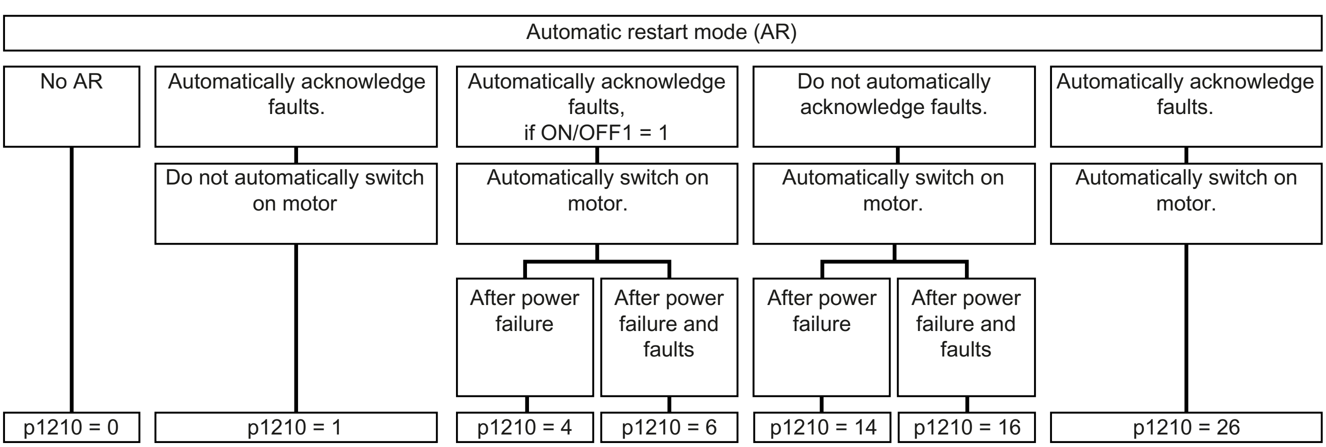
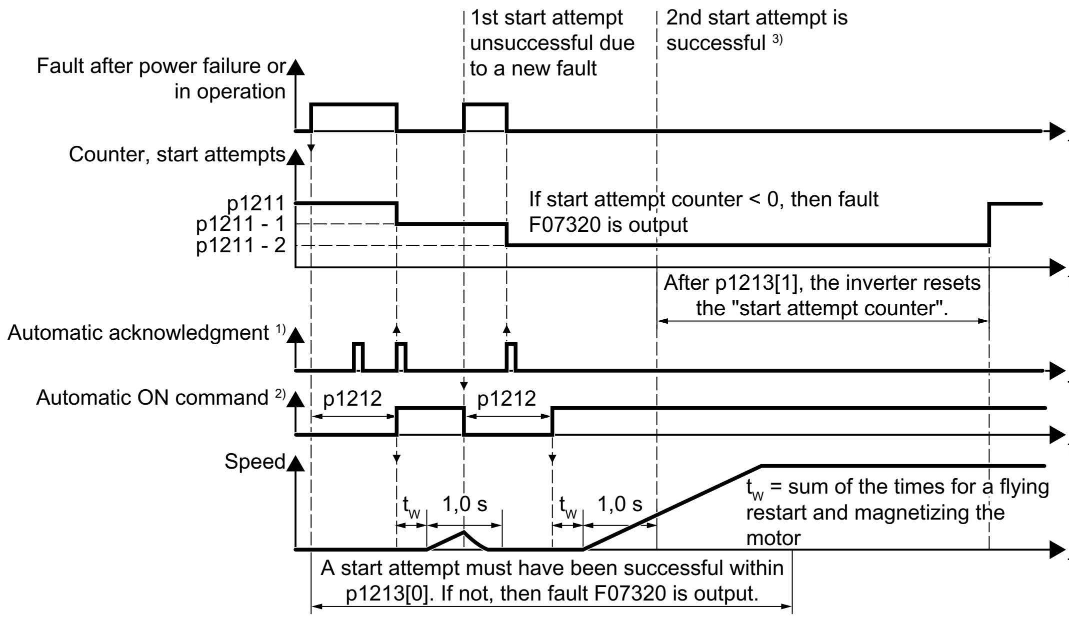


Figure 6-63 Automatic restart modes

The principle of operation of the other parameters is explained in the following diagram and in the table below.



1) The inverter automatically acknowledges faults under the following conditions:

- p1210 = 1 or 26: Always.
- p1210 = 4 or 6: If the command to switch-on the motor is available at a digital input or via the fieldbus (ON/OFF1 = 1).
- p1210 = 14 or 16: Never.

2) The inverter attempts to automatically switch the motor on under the following conditions:

- p1210 = 1: Never.
- p1210 = 4, 6, 14, 16, or 26: If the command to switch-on the motor is available at a digital input or via the fieldbus (ON/OFF1 = 1).

3) If, after a flying restart and magnetization (r0056.4 = 1) no fault occurs within one second, then the start attempt was successful.

Figure 6-64 Time response of the automatic restart

Parameter for setting the automatic restart

Parameter	Explanation	
p1210	**Automatic restart mode** (factory setting: 0)	
	0: 1: 4: 6: 14: 16: 26:	Disable automatic restart. Acknowledge all faults without restarting. Restart after power failure without further restart attempts. Restart after fault with further restart attempts. Restart after power failure after manual acknowledgement. Restart after fault after manual acknowledgement. Acknowledgement of all faults and restart with ON/OFF1 = 1 command.

Parameter	Explanation
p1211	**Automatic restart start attempts** (factory setting: 3) This parameter is only effective for the settings p1210 = 4, 6, 14, 16, 26. You define the maximum number of start attempts using p1211. After each successful acknowledgement, the inverter decrements its internal counter of start attempts by 1. p1211 = 0 or 1: The inverter only tries to start once. After an unsuccessful start attempt, the inverter issues fault F07320. p1211 = n, n > 1: The inverter tries to start n-times The inverter outputs fault F07320 if the nth starting attempt was unsuccessful. The inverter sets the start attempt counter back again to the value of p1211, if one of the following conditions is fulfilled: • After a successful start attempt, the time in p1213[1] has expired. • After fault F07320, switch off the motor (OFF1) and acknowledge the fault. • You change the start value p1211 or the mode p1210.
p1212	**Automatic restart wait time start attempt** (factory setting: 1.0 s) This parameter is only effective for the settings p1210 = 4, 6, 26. Examples for setting this parameter: 1. After a power failure, a certain time must elapse before the motor can be switched-on, e.g. because other machine components are not immediately ready. In this case, set p1212 longer than the time, after which all of the fault causes have been removed. 2. In operation, the inverter develops a fault condition. The lower you select p1212, then the sooner the inverter attempts to switch-on the motor again.
p1213[0]	**Automatic restart monitoring time for restart** (factory setting: 60 s) This parameter is only effective for the settings p1210 = 4, 6, 14, 16, 26. With this monitoring function, you limit the time in which the inverter may attempt to automatically switch-on the motor again. The monitoring function starts when a fault is identified and ends with a successful start attempt. If the motor has not successfully started after the monitoring time has expired, fault F07320 is signaled. Set the monitoring time longer than the sum of the following times: + p1212 + Time that the inverter requires to start the motor on the fly. + Motor magnetizing time (p0346) + 1 second You deactivate the monitoring function with p1213 = 0.
p1213[1]	**Automatic restart monitoring time to reset the fault counter** (factory setting: 0 s) This parameter is only effective for the settings p1210 = 4, 6, 14, 16, 26. Using this monitoring time, you prevent that faults, which continually occur within a certain time period, are automatically acknowledged each time. The monitoring function starts with a successful start attempt and ends after the monitoring time has expired. If, during the monitoring time p1213[1], the inverter made more successful starting attempts than defined in p1211, the inverter interrupts the automatic restart function and signals fault F07320. To switch on the motor again you must acknowledge the fault and switch on the inverter (ON/OFFS1 = 1).

Additional information is provided in the parameter list of the List Manual.

Advanced settings

If you with to suppress the automatic restart function for certain faults, then you must enter the appropriate fault numbers in p1206[0 … 9].

Example: p1206[0] = 07331 ⇒ No restart for fault F07331.

Suppressing the automatic restart only functions for the setting p1210 = 6, 16 or 26.

Note

Motor starts in spite of an OFF command via the fieldbus

The inverter responds with a fault if fieldbus communication is interrupted. For one of the settings p1210 = 6, 16 or 26, the inverter automatically acknowledges the fault and the motor restarts, even if the higher-level control attempts to send an OFF command to the inverter.

- In order to prevent the motor automatically starting when the fieldbus communication fails, you must enter the fault number of the communication error in parameter p1206.
  Example for PROFINET:
  Fault number F08501 means: Communication failure.
  Set p1206[n] = 8501 (n = 0 … 9).

6.28 Kinetic buffering (Vdc min control)

Kinetic buffering increases the drive availability. The kinetic buffering utilizes the kinetic energy of the load to buffer line dips and failures. During a line dip, the inverter keeps the motor in the switched-on state for as long as possible. One second is a typical, maximum buffer time.

Preconditions

The following prerequisites must be fulfilled to practically use the "kinetic buffering" function:

- The driven load has a sufficiently high inertia.
- The application allows a motor to be braked during a power failure.

Function

When the line supply dips or is interrupted, the DC link voltage in the inverter decreases. At an adjustable threshold, kinetic buffering intervenes ($V_{DC\ min}$ control). The $V_{DC\ min}$ control forces the load to go into slightly regenerative operation. As a consequence, the inverter covers its power loss and the losses in the motor with the kinetic energy of the load. The load speed decreases; however, during kinetic buffering, the DC voltage remains constant. After the line supply returns, the inverter immediately resumes normal operation.

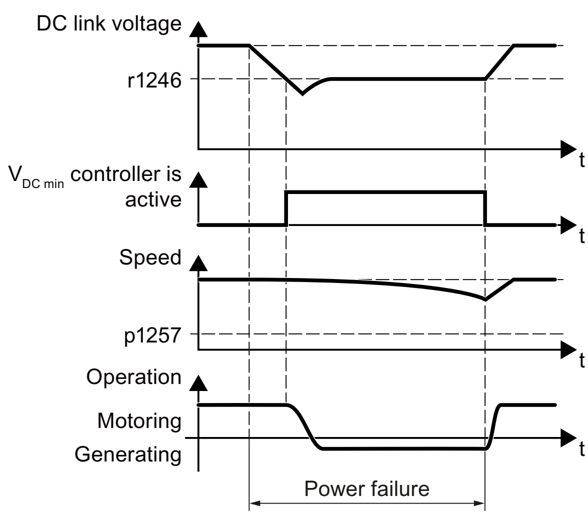


Figure 6-65 Principle mode of operation of kinetic buffering

Parameter	Description	
r0056.15	**Status word closed-loop control**	
	0 signal	$V_{DC\ min}$ controller is not active
	1 signal	$V_{DC\ min}$ controller is active (kinetic buffering)
p0210	**Device supply voltage** (factory setting: 400 V)	

Parameter	Description	
p1240	**V_{DC} controller configuration** (factory setting: 1)	
	0	Inhibit V_{DC} controller
	1	Enable $V_{DC\ max}$ controller
	2	Enable $V_{DC\ min}$ controller (kinetic buffering)
	3	Enable $V_{DC\ min}$ controller and $V_{DC\ max}$ controller
p1245	**$V_{DC\ min}$controller activation level** (kinetic buffering) (factory setting depends on the Power Module, 73 % or 76 %)	
r1246	**$V_{DC\ min}$ controller activation level**[V] r1246 = p1245 × √2 × p0210	
p1247	**$V_{DC\ min}$ controller dynamic factor** (factory setting: 300 %)	
p1255	**$V_{DC\ min}$ controller time threshold** (factory setting: 0 s) Maximum duration of the kinetic buffering If kinetic buffering lasts longer than that specified in the parameter value, the inverter outputs fault F7406. A value of 0 deactivates the monitoring.	
p1257	**$V_{DC\ min}$ controller speed threshold** (factory setting: 50 rpm) When fallen below, the inverter outputs fault F7405.	

6.29 Efficiency optimization

Overview

The efficiency optimization reduces the motor losses as far as possible.

Efficiency optimization functions under the following preconditions:

- Operation with an induction motor
- Vector control is set in the inverter.

Active efficiency optimization has the following advantages:

- Lower energy costs
- Lower motor temperature rise
- Lower motor noise levels

Active efficiency optimization has the following disadvantage:

- Longer acceleration times and more significant speed dips during torque surges.

The disadvantage is only relevant when the motor must satisfy high requirements relating to the dynamic performance. Even when efficiency optimization is active, the inverter closed-loop motor control prevents the motor from stalling.

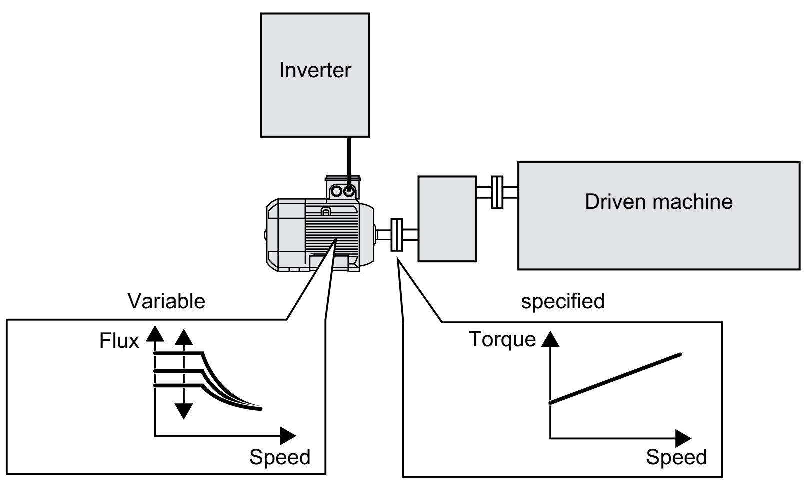


Figure 6-66 Efficiency optimization by changing the motor flux

The three variables that the inverter can directly set, which define efficiency of an induction motor, are speed, torque and flux.

However, in all applications, speed and torque are specified by the driven machine. As a consequence, the remaining variable for the efficiency optimization is the flux.

The inverter has two different methods of optimizing the efficiency.

Efficiency optimization, method 2

Generally, energy efficiency optimization method 2 achieves a better efficiency than method 1.

We recommend that you set method 2.

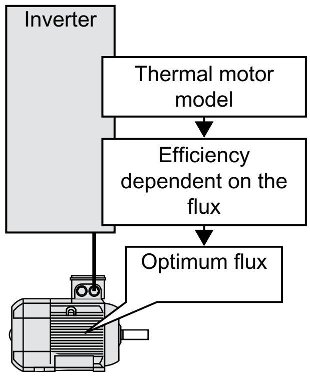
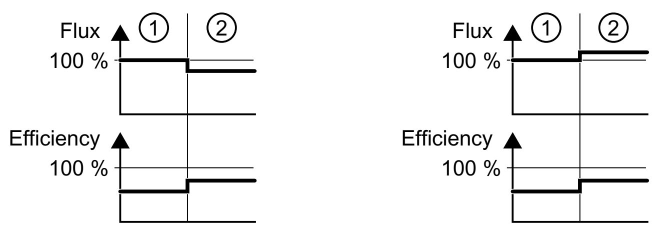


Figure 6-67 Determining the optimum flux from the motor thermal model

Based on its thermal motor model, the inverter continually determines - for the actual operating point of the motor - the interdependency between efficiency and flux. The inverter then sets the flux to achieve the optimum efficiency.



① Efficiency optimization is not active
② Efficiency optimization is active

Figure 6-68 Qualitative result of efficiency optimization, method 2

Depending on the motor operating point, the inverter either decreases or increases the flux in partial load operation of the motor.

The inverter calculates the parameters for the thermal motor model based on the motor data that has been set – and the motor data identification.

Parameter	Description
p1401	**Flux control configuration** .14 — 1 signal: Efficiency optimization 2 active
p1570	**Flux setpoint** (factory setting: 100%)
p3315	**Efficiency optimization 2 minimum flux limit value** (factory setting: 50%) Minimum limit value for the calculated optimal flux
p3316	**Efficiency optimization 2 maximum flux limit value** (factory setting: 110%) Maximum limit value for the calculated optimal flux

Efficiency optimization, method 1

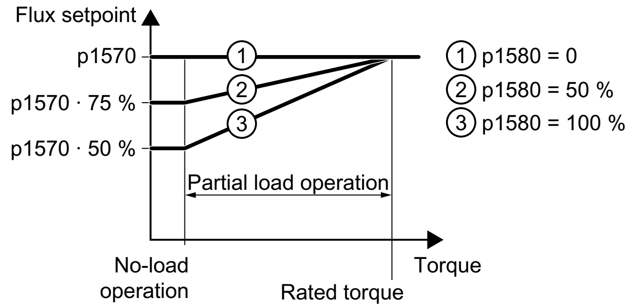


Figure 6-69 Reduce the flux setpoint in the partial load range of the motor

The motor operates in partial load mode between no-load operation and the rated motor torque. Depending on p1580, in the partial load range, the inverter reduces the flux setpoint linearly with the torque.

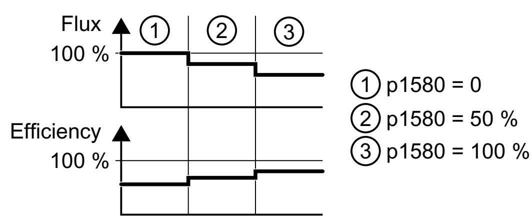


Figure 6-70 Qualitative result of efficiency optimization, method 1

The reduced flux in the motor partial load range results in higher efficiency.

Parameter	Description	
p1570	**Flux setpoint** (factory setting: 100%)	
p1580	**Efficiency optimization** (factory setting depends on the inverter)	
	0%	Efficiency optimization is deactivated.
	100%	In no-load operation, the inverter reduces the flux setpoint to 50% of the rated motor flux.

6.30 Line contactor control

A line contactor disconnects the inverter from the line supply, and therefore reduces the inverter losses when the motor is not operational.

The inverter can control its own line contactor using a digital output. You must supply the inverter with 24 V so that the line contactor control of the inverter also functions when disconnected from the line supply.

Activate line contactor control

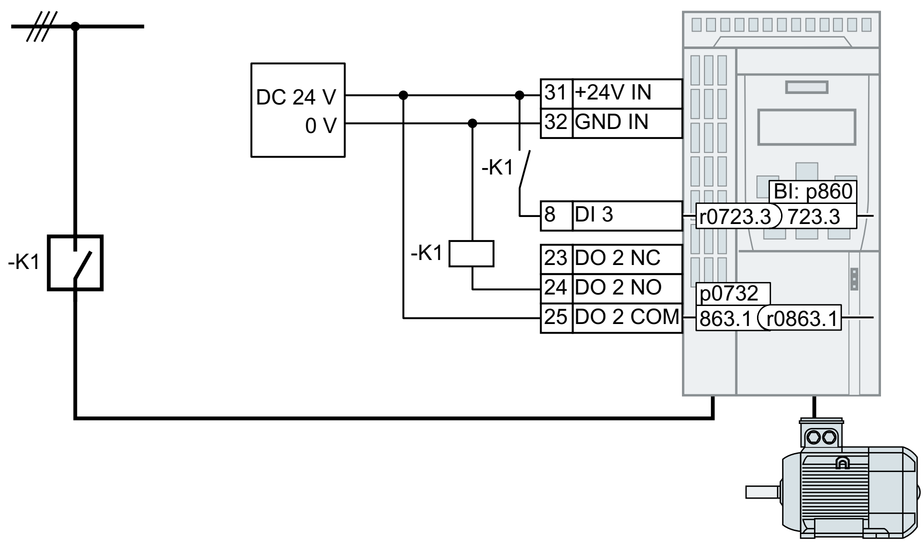


Figure 6-71 Line contactor control via DO 2 with feedback signal via DI 3

In order that the inverter controls line contactor K1 using one of its own digital outputs, you must interconnect the digital output with signal r0863.1 e.g. for DO 2: p0732 = 863.1.

Line contactor control with feedback signal

Interconnect p0860 with the inverted signal of a digital input: p0860 = 723.x.

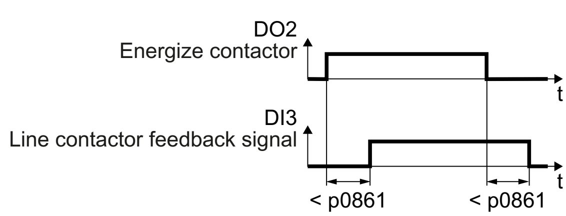


Figure 6-72 Line contactor control via DO 2 with feedback signal via DI 3

If the line contactor feedback signal is not available for longer than the time set in p0861, then the inverter signals fault F07300.

Line contactor control without feedback signal

Interconnect the feedback signal with the signal to control the line contactor: p0860 = 863.1.

Setting the line contactor control

Parameter	Explanation
p0860	**Line contactor feedback signal** • p0860 = 863.1: no feedback signal (factory setting) • p0860 = 723.x: Feedback signal via DIx
p0861	**Line contactor monitoring time** (Factory setting: 100 ms) Fault F07300 is output if, for an activated feedback signal, no feedback signal is received via the selected digital input after the time set here has expired.
r0863.1	**Drive coupling status/control word** Signal to activate the line contactor control
p0867	**Line contactor holding time after OFF1**(factory setting: 50 ms) Time for which the line contactor must remain closed after an OFF1.
p0869	**Sequence control configuration** • p0689 = 0: line contactor immediately opens when the "Safe Torque Off" function becomes active (STO) • p0689 = 1: Line contactor opens when STO is active after the time in p0867 expires

6.31 Calculating the energy saving for fluid flow machines

Fluid flow machines, which mechnically control the flow rate using valves or throttle flaps, operate with a constant speed corresponding to the line frequency.

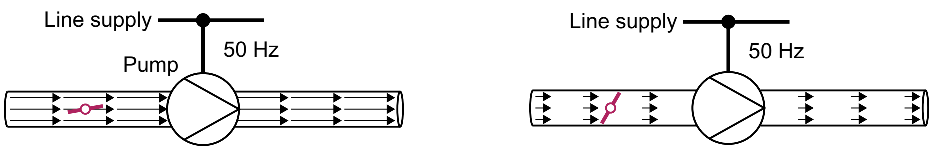


Figure 6-73 Flow control with pump and throttle connected to a 50 Hz line supply

The lower the flow rate, the poorer the efficiency of the fluid flow machine (pump). The fluid flow machine (pump) has the poorest efficiency when the throttle or valve is completely closed. Further, undesirable effects can occur, for example the formation of vapor bubbles in liquids (cavitation) or the temperature of the medium being pumped can increase.

The inverter controls the flow rate by appropriately varying the speed of the fluid flow machine. As a consequence, the fluid flow machine has the optimum efficiency for each flow rate, and draws less electric power in the partial load range than for closed-loop control concepts based on valves and throttle flaps.

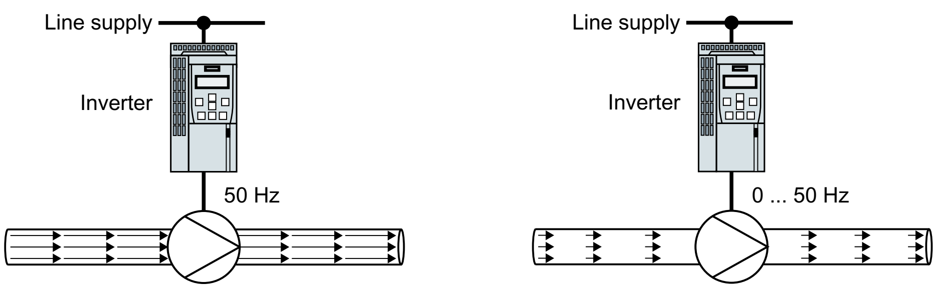
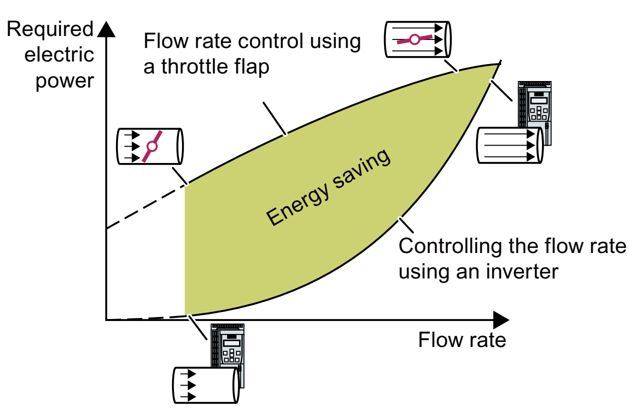


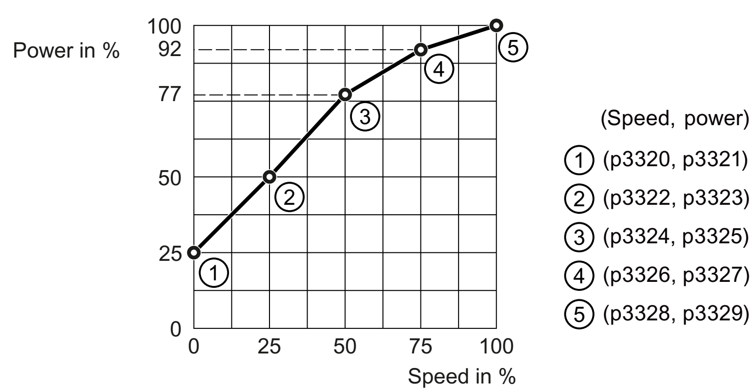
Figure 6-74 Flow control with pump and inverter

Function



The inverter calculates the energy saving from the flow characteristic associated with a mechanical flow control and the measured electric power that is drawn.

The calculation is suitable for centrifugal pumps, fans, radial and axial compressors, for instance.

Parameter	Description	
r0039	**Energy display** [kWh]	
	[0]	**Energy balance** Energy usage since the last reset
	[1]	Energy drawn since the last reset
	[2]	Energy fed back since the last reset
p0040	**Reset energy consumption display** A signal change 0 → 1 sets r0039[0…2] = 0, r0041 = 0 and r0042 = 0.	
r0041	**Energy consumption saved** (kWh) Energy saved referred to 100 operating hours. For less than 100 operating hours, the inverter interpolates the energy saving to 100 operating hours.	
r0042	**CO: Process energy display** [1 ≙ 1 Wh] For display as process variable. Enable with p0043.	
	[0]	**Energy balance** Energy consumption since the last reset.
	[1]	Energy drawn since the last reset
	[2]	Energy fed back since the last reset.
p0043	**BI: Enable energy usage display** 1 signal: Process energy display is active in r0042.	
p3320 … p3329	**Flow characteristic**  Factory setting of the flow characteristic To set the characteristic, you require the following data from the machine manufacturer for each speed interpolation point: • The flow rate of the fluid-flow machine associated with the 5 selected inverter speeds • The power drawn at constant speed associated with the five flow rates corresponds to the line frequency and mechanical throttling of the flow rate.	

6.32 Switchover between different settings

In several applications, the inverter must be able to be operated with different settings.

Example:

You connect different motors to one inverter. Depending on the particular motor, the inverter must operate with the associated motor data and the appropriate ramp-function generator.

Drive data sets (DDS)

Your can parameterize several inverter functions differently and then switch over between the different settings.

The associated parameters are indexed (index 0 or 1). Via control commands select one of the two indices and therefore one of the two saved settings.

The settings in the inverter with the same index are known as drive data set.

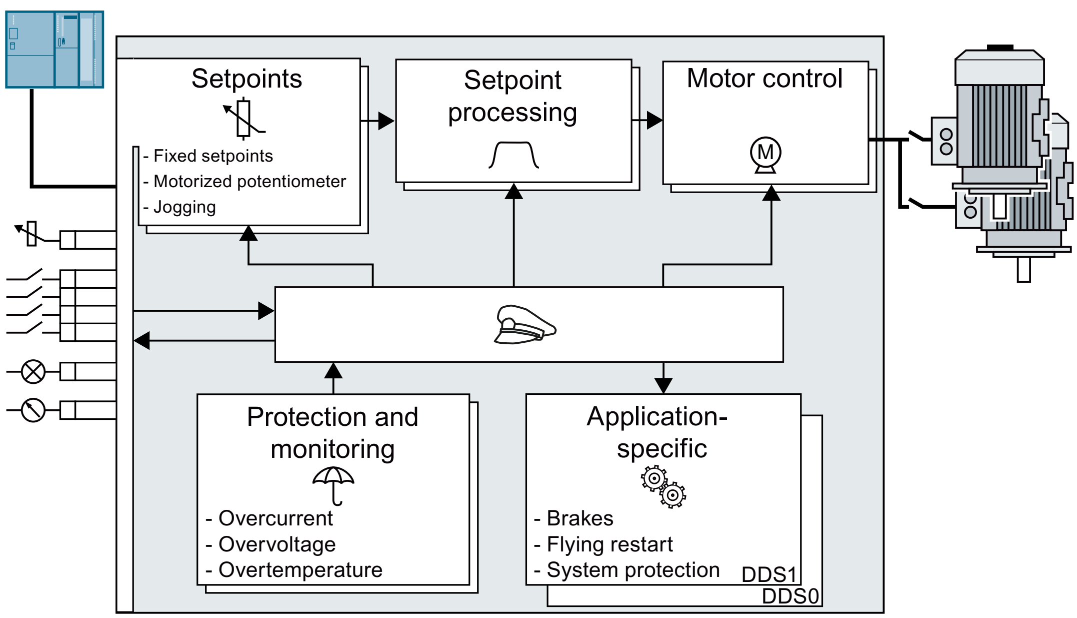


Figure 6-75 DDS switchover in the inverter

You can use parameter p0180 to define the number of drive data sets (1 or 2).

Table 6-57 Selecting the number of **drive data sets**

Parameter	Description
p0010 = 15	**Drive commissioning:** Data sets
p0180	**Drive data sets (DDS) number**(factory setting: 1)
p0010 = 0	**Drive commissioning:** Ready

Table 6-58 Parameters for switching the drive data sets:

Parameter	Description
p0820	**Drive data set selection DDS**
p0826	**Motor changeover, motor number**
r0051	**Displaying the number of the DDS that is currently effective**

For an overview of all the parameters that belong to the drive data sets and can be switched, see the Parameter Manual.

Note

You can only switch over the motor data of the drive data sets in the "ready for operation" state with the motor switched-off. The switchover time is approx. 50 ms.

If you do not switch over the motor data together with the drive data sets (i.e. same motor number in p0826), then the drive data sets can also be switched over in operation.

Table 6-59 Parameters for copying the drive data sets

Parameter	Description
p0819[0]	**Source drive data set**
p0819[1]	**Target drive data set**
p0819[2] = 1	**Start copy operation**

For more information, see the List Manual (the parameter list and function diagram 8565).

Saving settings and series commissioning 7

Saving settings outside the inverter

After commissioning, your settings are saved in the inverter so that they are protected against power failure.

We recommend that you additionally back up the settings on a storage medium outside the inverter. Without backup, your settings could be lost if the inverter develops a defect.

Replacing a converter without data backup (Page 380)

The following storage media are available for your settings:

- Memory card
- PG/PC
- Operator panel

Note

Data backup using Operator Panels with USB connection with the PG/PC is not possible

If the inverter is connected with a PG/PC via a USB cable, you cannot backup data to a memory card via an operator panel.

- Disconnect the USB connection between the PG/PC and inverter before you backup data to the memory card via an operator panel.

Carrying out series commissioning

Series commissioning is the commissioning of several identical drives.

Precondition

The Control Unit to which the settings are transferred has the same article number and the same or a higher firmware version as the source Control Unit.

Overview

You must proceed as follows to carry out series commissioning:

1. Commission the first inverter.
2. Back up the settings of the first inverter to an external storage medium.
3. Transfer the settings from the first inverter to an additional inverter via the data storage medium.

7.1 Saving settings on a memory card

7.1.1 Memory cards

Recommended memory cards

Table 7-1 Memory cards to back up inverter settings

Scope of delivery	Article number
Memory card without firmware	6SL3054-4AG00-2AA0
Memory card with firmware V4.7	6SL3054-7EH00-2BA0
Memory card with firmware V4.7 SP3	6SL3054-7TB00-2BA0
Memory card with firmware V4.7 SP6	6SL3054-7TD00-2BA0
Memory card with firmware V4.7 SP9	6SL3054-7TE00-2BA0

Using memory cards from other manufacturers

The inverter only supports memory cards up to 2 GB. SDHC cards (SD High Capacity) and SDXC cards (SD Extended Capacity) are not permitted.

If you use other SD or MMC memory cards, then you must format the memory card as follows:

- MMC: Format FAT 16
  - Insert the card into your PC's card reader.
  - Command to format the card:
    format x: /fs:fat (x: Drive code of the memory card on your PC)
- SD: Format FAT 16 or FAT 32
  - Insert the card into your PC's card reader.
  - Command to format the card:
    format x: /fs:fat or format x: /fs:fat32 (x: Drive code of the memory card on your PC.)

Functional restrictions with memory cards from other manufacturers

The following functions are either not possible – or only with some restrictions – when using memory cards from other manufacturers:

- Licensing functions is only possible using the recommended memory cards.
- Know-how protection is only possible with one of the recommended memory cards.
- Under certain circumstances, memory cards from other manufacturers do not support writing or reading data from/to the inverter.

7.1.2 Saving setting on memory card

We recommend that you insert the memory card before switching on the inverter. The inverter always also backs up its settings on an inserted card.

If you wish to back up the inverter settings on a memory card, you have two options:

Automatically backing up

Preconditions

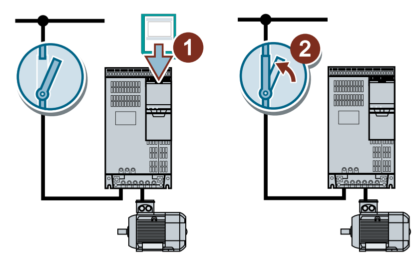
- The inverter power supply has been switched off.
- No USB cable is inserted in the inverter.

Procedure

1.
2.

Proceed as follows to automatically back up your settings:

1. Insert an empty memory card into the inverter.
2. Switch on the operating voltage of the inverter.



After the power supply has been switched on, the inverter copies its changed settings to the memory card.

Note

Accidental damage to the inverter firmware

If the memory card contains inverter firmware, the inverter may perform an operating system update the next time the supply voltage is switched on. If you switch off the supply voltage during the operating system update, the inverter firmware may be incompletely loaded and damaged. The inverter cannot be operated with corrupt firmware.

- Before inserting the memory card, ascertain whether it also contains inverter firmware.
- Do not switch off inverter supply voltage during an operating system update.

Firmware upgrade and downgrade (Page 391)

Note

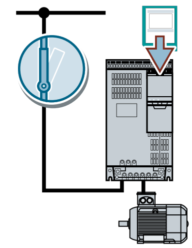
Accidental overwrite of the inverter settings

When the supply voltage is switched on, the inverter automatically accepts the settings already backed up on the memory card. If you use a memory card on which settings are already backed up, you will overwrite the settings of the inverter.

- To automatically backup your settings, use only a memory card that does not contain any other settings.

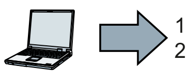
Manually backing up

Requirements



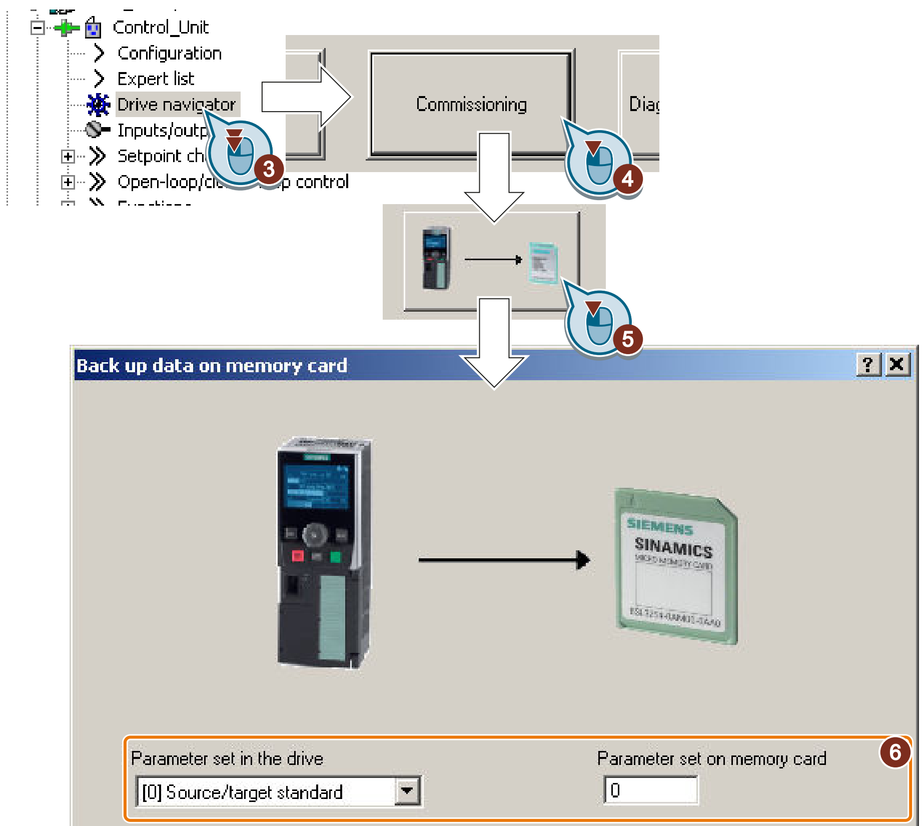
- The inverter power supply has been switched on.
- No memory card is inserted in the inverter.

Procedure with STARTER



Proceed as follows to back up your settings on a memory card:

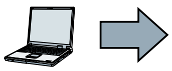
1. Go online.
2. Press the “Copy RAM to ROM” button .
3. In your drive, select "Drive Navigator".



4. Select the "Commissioning" button.
5. Select the button to transfer the settings to the memory card.
6. Select the settings as shown in the diagram and start the data backup.
7. Wait until STARTER signals that the data backup has been completed.
8. Close the screen forms.

■ You have backed up the settings of the inverter on the memory card.

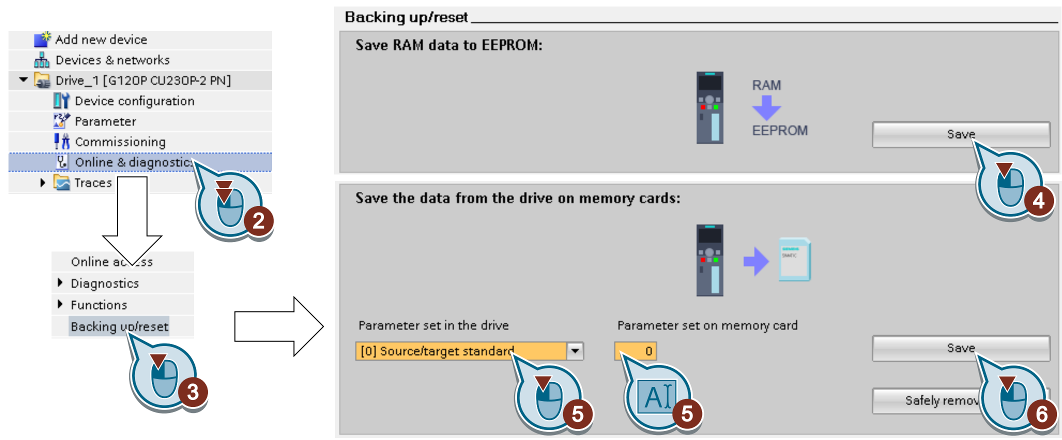
Procedure with Startdrive



1
2

Proceed as follows to back up the inverter settings to a memory card:

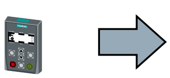
1. Go online.
2. Select "Online & diagnostics".



3. Select "Backing up/reset".
4. Back up the settings to the EEPROM of the inverter.
5. Select the settings as shown in the diagram.
6. Start data transfer
7. Wait until Startdrive has signaled that the data backup has been completed.

■ You have backed up the inverter settings to a memory card.

Procedure with BOP-2



1
2

Proceed as follows to back up your settings on a memory card:

1. Remove any USB cable that is inserted in the inverter.

EXTRAS
TO CARD

2. In the "OPTIONS" menu, select "TO CARD".

PARAM SET 1

3. Set the number of your data backup. You can back up 99 different settings on the memory card.

ESC / OK

4. Start data transfer with OK.

SAVING PArAS

5. Wait until the inverter has backed up the settings to the memory card.

CLONING XXX-YYY

TO CARD -dOnE-

You have backed up the settings of the inverter on the memory card.

7.1.3 Transferring the setting from the memory card

Automatically transferring

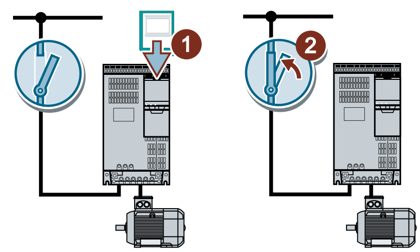
Precondition

The inverter power supply has been switched off.

Procedure

Proceed as follows to automatically transfer your settings:

1. Insert the memory card into the inverter.
2. Then switch on the inverter power supply.

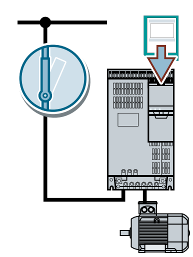


If there is valid parameter data on the memory card, then the inverter accepts the data from the memory card.

Manually transferring

Requirements

- The inverter power supply has been switched on.
- No memory card is inserted in the inverter.

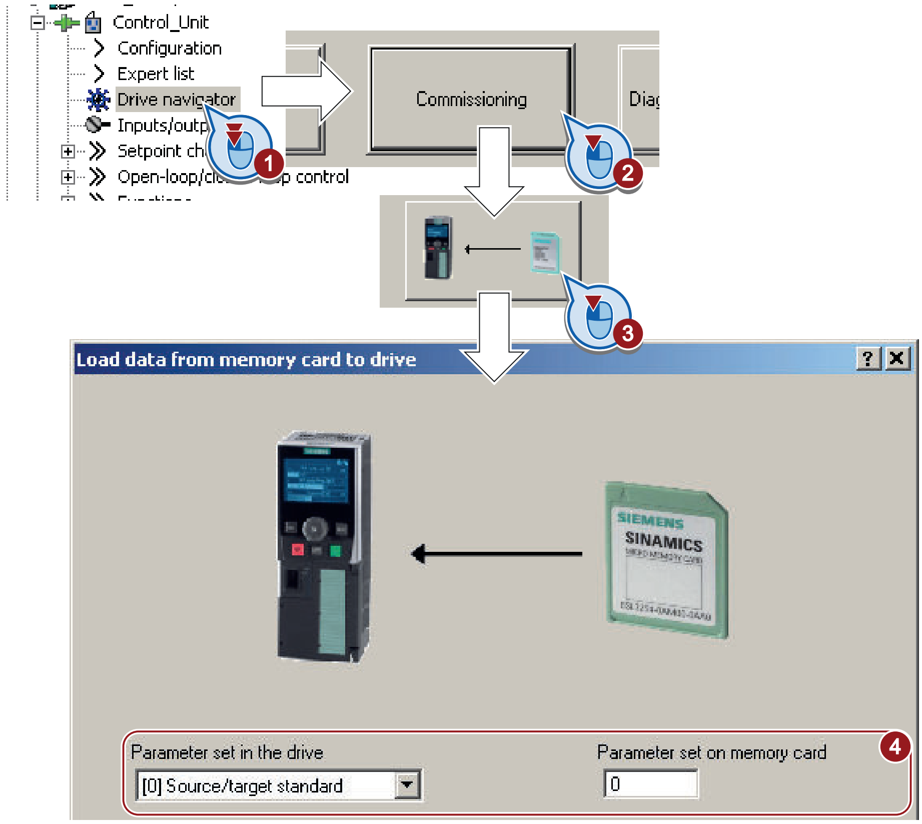


Procedure with STARTER

Proceed as follows to transfer settings from a memory card to the inverter:

1. Go online and in your drive, select the "Drive Navigator".
2. Select the "Commissioning" button.
3. Select the button to transfer the data from the memory card to the inverter.

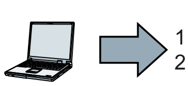
4. Select the settings as shown in the diagram and start the data backup.



5. Wait until STARTER signals that the data backup has been completed.
6. Close the screen forms.
7. Go offline.
8. Switch off the inverter power supply.
9. Wait until all LEDs on the inverter are dark.
10. Switch on the inverter power supply again.
    Your settings become effective after switching on.

You have now transferred your settings from a memory card to the inverter.

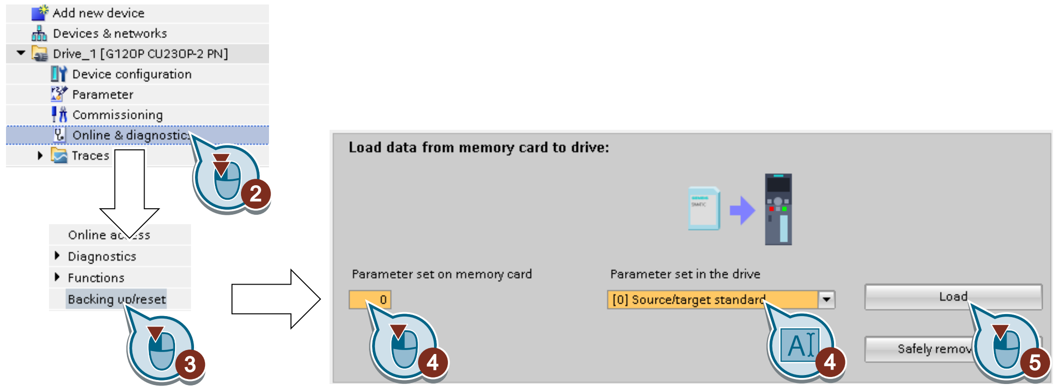
Procedure with Startdrive



Proceed as follows to transfer settings from a memory card to the inverter:

1. Go online.
2. Select "Online & diagnostics".

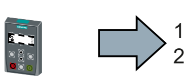
3. Select "Backing up/reset".



4. Select the settings as shown in the diagram.
5. Start data transfer
6. Wait until Startdrive has signaled that the data transfer has been completed.
7. Go offline.
8. Switch off the inverter power supply.
9. Wait until all LEDs on the inverter are dark.
10. Switch on the inverter power supply again.
    Your settings become effective after switching on.

You have now transferred your settings from a memory card to the inverter.

Procedure with the BOP-2



Proceed as follows to transfer settings from a memory card to the inverter:

1. Remove any USB cable that is inserted in the inverter.

EXTRAS
FROM CRD

2. In the "OPTIONS" menu, select "FROM CRD".

PARAM SET 1

3. Set the number of your data backup. You can back up 99 different settings on the memory card.

ESC / OK

4. Start data transfer with OK.

CLONING XXX-YYY

5. Wait until the inverter has transferred the settings from the memory card.

FROM CRD -dOnE-

6. Switch off the inverter power supply.
7. Wait until all inverter LEDs are dark.
8. Switch on the inverter power supply again.

You have transferred the settings from the memory card to the inverter.

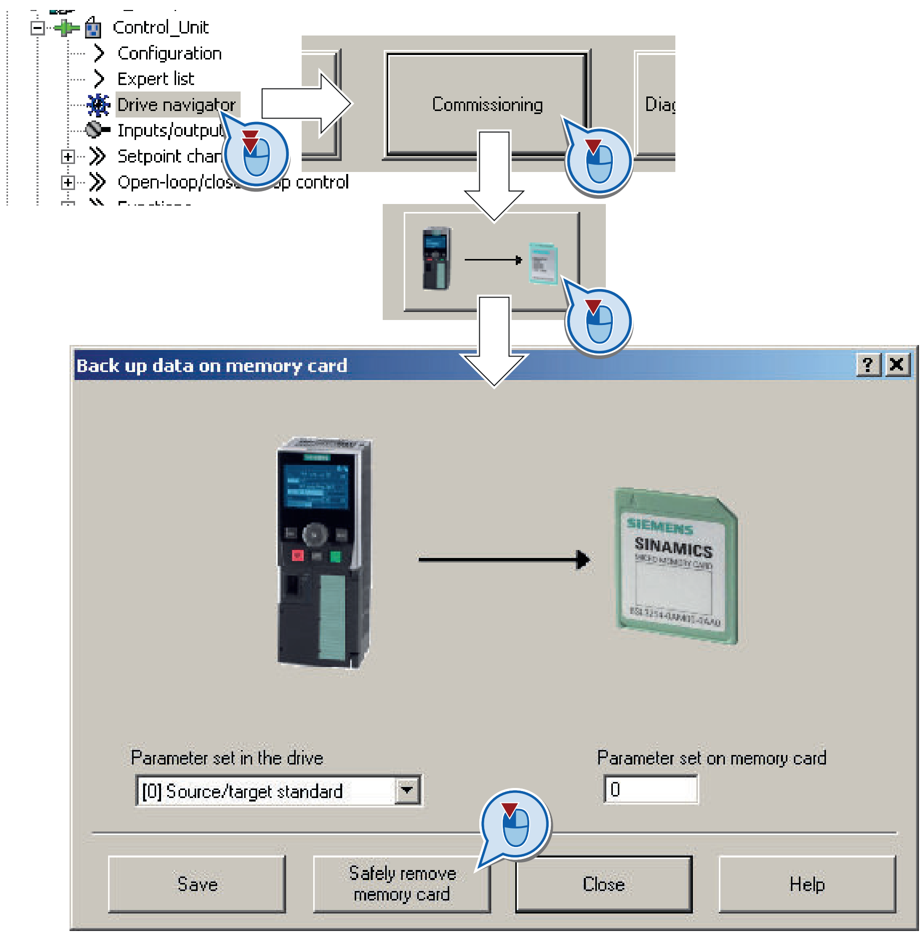
7.1.4 Safely remove the memory card

NOTICE
Data loss from improper handling of the memory card
If you remove the memory card when the converter is switched on without implementing the "safe removal" function you may destroy the file system on the memory card. The data on the memory card are lost. The memory card will only function again after formatting. • Only remove the memory card using the "safe removal" function.

Procedure with STARTER

To safely remove the memory card, proceed as follows:

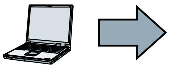
1. Go online.
2. In the Drive Navigatorselect the following screen form:



3. Click on the button to safely remove the memory card.
   STARTER will tell you whether you can remove the memory card from the inverter.

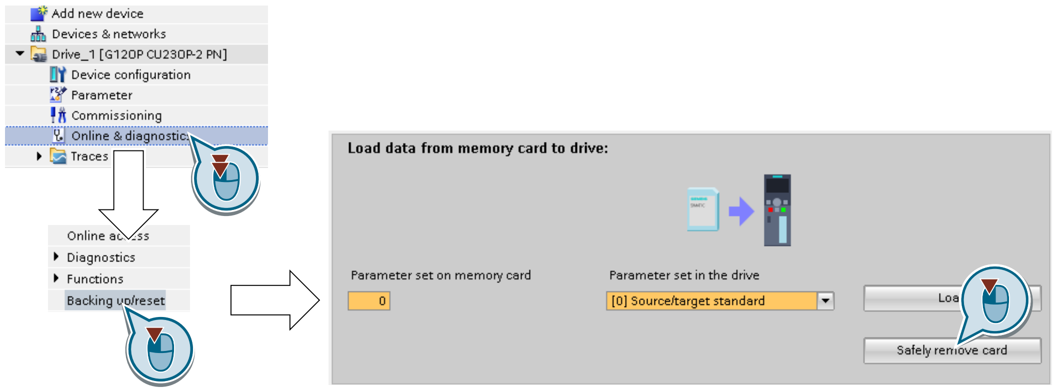
You have now safely removed the memory card from the inverter.

Procedure with Startdrive



To safely remove the memory card, proceed as follows:

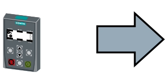
1. In the Drive Navigatorselect the following screen form:



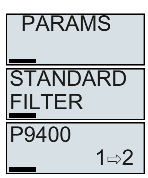
2. Click on the button to safely remove the memory card.
   Startdrive will tell you whether you can remove the memory card from the inverter.

You have now safely removed the memory card from the inverter.

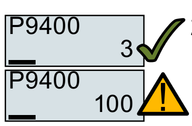
Procedure with the BOP-2



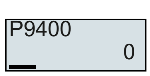
To safely remove the memory card using BOP-2, proceed as follows:



1. Set p9400 = 2.
   If a memory card is inserted, p9400 = 1.



2. The inverter sets p9400 = 3 or p9400 = 100.
   - p9400 = 3: You may remove the memory card from the inverter.
   - p9400 = 100: It is not permissible that you remove the memory card. Wait for several seconds and then set p9400 = 2 again.



3. Remove the memory card. After removing the memory card, p9400 = 0.

You have now safely removed the memory card using BOP-2.

7.1.5 Activate message for a memory card that is not inserted

Function

The inverter identifies that a memory card is not inserted, and signals this state. The message is deactivated in the inverter factory setting.

Activate message

Procedure

To activate alarm A01101 for a memory card that is not inserted, proceed as follows:

1. Set p2118[x] = 1101, x = 0, 1, … 19
2. Set p2119[x] = 2

You have activated message A01101 for a memory card that is not inserted.

To cyclically signal to a higher-level control that a memory card is not inserted, interconnect parameter r9401 to the send data of a PROFIdrive telegram of your choice.

Deactivate message

Procedure

To deactivate alarm A01101 for a memory card that is not inserted, proceed as follows:

1. Set p2118[x] = 1101, x = 0, 1, … 19
2. Set p2119[x] = 3

You have deactivated message A01101 for a memory card that is not inserted.

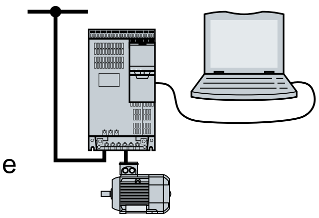
Parameter

Parameter	Explanation	
p2118[0 … 19]	**Change message type message number** (factory setting: 0)	
p2119[0 … 19]	**Change message type** (factory setting: 0) 1: Fault 2: Alarm 3: No message	
r9401	**Safely remove memory card status**	
	.00	1 signal: Memory card inserted
	.01	1 signal: Memory card activated
	.02	1 signal: SIEMENS memory card
	.03	1 signal: Memory card used as USB data storage medium from the PC

7.2 Saving the settings to a PC

You can transfer the inverter settings to a PG/PC, or vice versa, the data from a PG/PC to the inverter.

Requirements



- The inverter power supply has been switched on.
- One of the commissioning tools STARTER or Startdrive is installed on the PG/PC.
  Tools to commission the inverter (Page 116)
- PC and inverter are connected with one another via a USB cable or the fieldbus

Inverter → PC/PG

Procedure with STARTER

To back up the settings with STARTER, proceed as follows:

1. Go online: .
2. Click the "Download project to PG" button: .
3. Save the project: .
4. Wait until STARTER reports that data backup has been completed.
5. Go offline: .

You have backed up the settings with STARTER.

Procedure with Startdrive

To back up the settings with Startdrive, proceed as follows:

1. Go online.
2. Select "Online" > "Upload device to PG/PC."
3. Back up the project with "Project" > "Save."
4. Wait until Startdrive reports that data backup has been completed.
5. Go offline.

You have backed up the settings with Startdrive.

PC/PG → inverter

The procedure depends on whether you also transfer settings of safety functions or not.

Procedure with STARTER without enabled safety functions

To load the settings from the PG to the inverter with STARTER, proceed as follows:

1. Go online: .
2. Click the "Download project to target system" button: .

3. Wait until STARTER reports that loading has been completed.
4. To save the data to the non-volatile memory of the inverter, select the "Copy RAM to ROM" button: .
5. Go offline: .

☐ You have transferred the settings from the PG to the inverter with STARTER.

Procedure with Startdrive without enabled safety functions

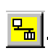
To transfer the settings from the PG to the inverter with Startdrive, proceed as follows:

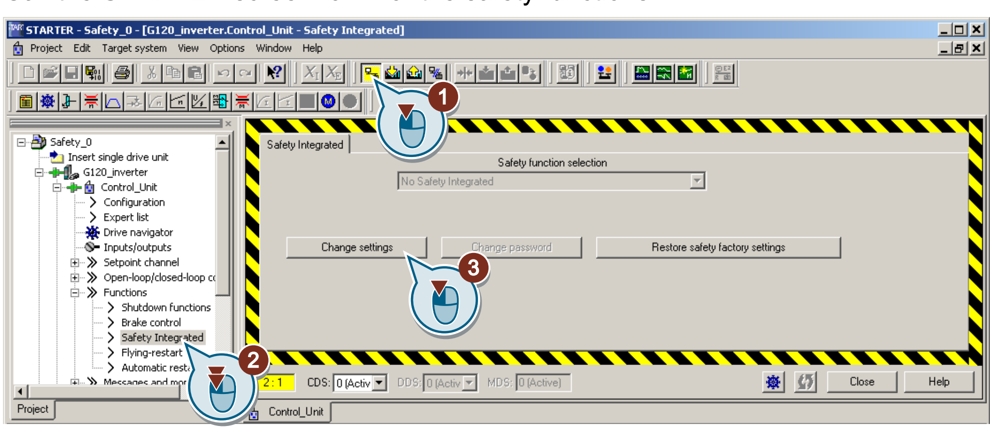
1. Go online.
2. Select "Load to device" > "Hardware and software" from the shortcut menu.
3. Wait until Startdrive reports that loading has been completed.
4. Go offline.
5. Confirm the dialog box that then opens by clicking "Yes" to save the data to the non-volatile memory of the inverter (Copy from RAM to ROM).

☐ You have transferred the settings from the PG to the inverter with Startdrive.

Procedure with STARTER with enabled safety functions

To load the settings from the PG to the inverter with STARTER and to activate the safety functions, proceed as follows:

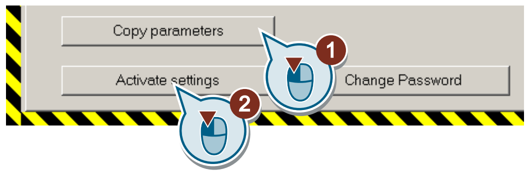
1. Go online: .
2. Click the "Download project to target system" button: .
3. Call the STARTER screen form for the safety functions.



You have transferred the settings from the PG to the inverter.

To activate the safety functions, proceed as follows:

1. Select the "Copy parameter" button.
2. Press the "Activate settings" button.



3. To save the data in the inverter, click the "Copy RAM to ROM" button: .
4. Go offline: .
5. Switch off the inverter power supply.
6. Wait until all LEDs on the inverter go off.
7. Switch on the inverter power supply again. Your settings only become effective after this power-on reset.

You have transferred the settings from the PG to the inverter with STARTER and activated the safety functions.

Procedure with Startdrive when the safety functions are enabled

To transfer the settings from the PG to the inverter with Startdrive and activate the safety functions, proceed as follows:

1. Save the project.
2. Select "Load to device."

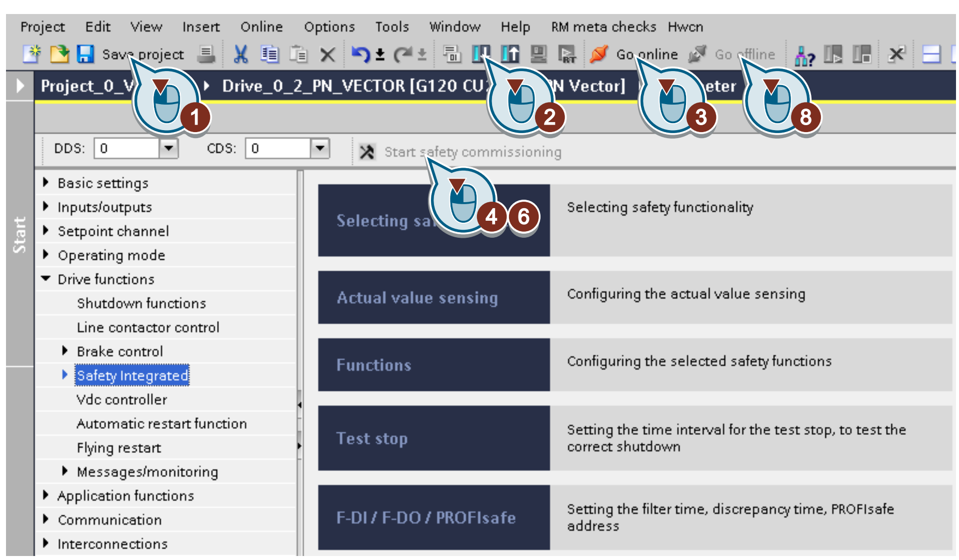


Figure 7-1 Activating settings in Startdrive

3. Connect Startdrive online with the drive.
4. Click the "Start safety commissioning" button.

5. Enter the password for the safety functions.
   If the password is the factory default, you are prompted to change the password.
   If you try to set a password that is not permissible, the old password will not be changed.
6. Click the "End safety commissioning" button.
7. Confirm the prompt for saving your settings (copy RAM to ROM).
8. Disconnect the online connection.
9. Switch off the inverter supply voltage.
10. Wait until all LEDs on the inverter go dark (no voltage condition).
11. Switch on the inverter supply voltage again.

You have transferred the settings from the PG to the inverter with Startdrive and have activated the safety functions.

7.3 Saving settings to an operator panel

You can transfer the inverter settings to the Operator Panel BOP-2 or vice versa, the data from the BOP-2 to the inverter.

Precondition

The inverter power supply has been switched on.

Inverter → BOP-2

Procedure

1.
2.

To back up the settings on the BOP-2, proceed as follows:

EXTRAS
TO BOP

1. In the "OPTIONS" menu, select "TO BOP".

ESC / OK

2. Start data transfer with OK.

SAVING PArAS
ZIPING FILES
CLONING XXX-YYY
TO BOP -dOnE-

3. Wait until the inverter has backed up the settings to the BOP-2.

You have backed up the settings on the BOP-2.

BOP-2 → inverter

Procedure

1.
2.

To transfer the settings to the inverter, proceed as follows:

EXTRAS
FROM BOP

1. In the "OPTIONS" menu, select "FROM BOP".

ESC / OK

2. Start data transfer with OK.

CLONING XXX-YYY
UNZIPING FILES
FROM BOP -dOnE-

3. Wait until the inverter has written the settings to the memory card.

4. Switch off the inverter power supply.

5. Wait until all inverter LEDs are dark.
6. Switch on the inverter power supply again. Your settings become effective after switching on.

You have transferred the settings to the inverter.

7.4 Other ways to back up settings

In addition to the default setting, the inverter has an internal memory for backing up three other settings.

On the memory card, you can back up 99 other settings in addition to the default setting.

Additional information is available in the Internet: Memory options (http://support.automation.siemens.com/WW/view/en/43512514).

7.5 Write protection

The write protection prevents unauthorized changing of the inverter settings. If you are working with a PC tool, such as STARTER, then write protection is only effective online. The offline project is not write-protected.

Write protection is applicable for all user interfaces:

- Operator Panel BOP-2 and IOP-2
- STARTER or Startdrive PC tool
- Parameter changes via fieldbus

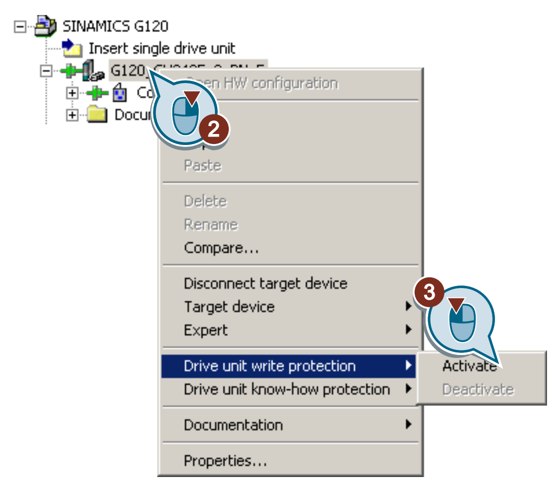
No password is required for write protection.

Activate and deactivate write protection

Procedure with STARTER

Proceed as follows to activate or deactivate the write protection:

1. Go online.
2. Open the shortcut menu of the required inverter.
3. Activate or deactivate write protection.
4. Press the “Copy RAM to ROM” button to retentively save the settings.



You have activated or deactivated write protection.

Active write protection can be identified as in the expert list the input fields of adjustable parameters p … are shaded gray.

Parameters		
r7760	**Write protection/know-how protection status**	
	.00	1 signal: Write protection active
p7761	**Write protection** (factory setting: 0)	
	0:	Deactivate write protection
	1:	Activate write protection

Exceptions to write protection

Some functions are excluded from write protection, e.g.:

- Activating/deactivating write protection
- Changing the access level (p0003)
- Saving parameters (p0971)
- Safely removing the memory card (p9400)
- Restoring the factory setting
- Transfer the settings from an external data backup, e.g. upload into the inverter from a memory card.

The parameters that are not write protected are in the List Manual in Section "Parameters for write protection and know-how protection".

Note

Write protection for multimaster fieldbus systems

Via multimaster fieldbus systems, e.g. BACnet or Modbus RTU, in spite of write protection being activated, parameters can still be changed. So that write protection is also active when accessing via these fieldbuses, you must additionally set p7762 to 1.

In STARTER and Startdrive, this setting is only possible using the expert list.

7.6 Know-how protection

Know-how protection prevents unauthorized reading of the inverter settings.

A password is required to activate or to change know-how protection.

Know-how protection with and without copy protection.

To protect your inverter settings against unauthorized copying, in addition to know-how protection, you can also activate copy protection.

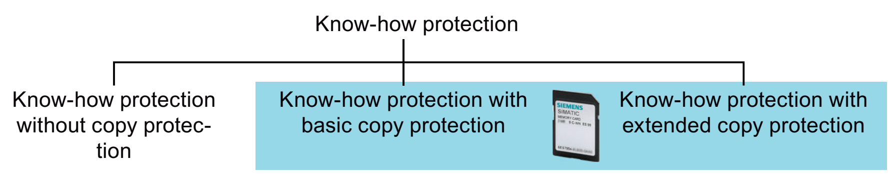


Figure 7-2 Setting options for know-how protection

Know-how protection without copy protection is possible with or without memory card

Know-how protection with copy protection is only possible with a Siemens memory card.

Memory cards (Page 322)

Know-how protection without copy protection

The inverter can be operated with or without memory card. You can transfer inverter settings to other inverters using a memory card, an operator panel STARTER or Startdrive.

Know-how protection with basic copy protection

The inverter can only be operated if the associated memory card with the inverter settings is inserted in the inverter. After replacing an inverter, to be able to operate the new inverter with the settings of the replaced inverter without knowing the password, the memory card must be inserted in the new inverter.

Know-how protection with extended copy protection

The inverter can only be operated if the associated memory card with the inverter settings is inserted in the inverter. It is not possible to insert and use the memory card in another inverter without knowing the password.

Features when know-how protection is active

The active know-how protection provides the following:

- With just a few exceptions, the values of all adjustable parameters p … are invisible. In STARTER, instead of the parameter values, the text "Know-how protection" is displayed. You can hide know-how protected parameters in the expert list of STARTER using the "Without know-how protection" display filter.
- The values of monitoring parameters r … remain visible.

- STARTER does not display any screen forms.
- Adjustable parameters cannot be changed using commissioning tools, e.g. an operator panel or Startdrive.

When know-how protection is active, support can only be provided (from Technical Support) after prior agreement from the machine manufacturer (OEM).

Adjustable parameters that can be changed when know-how protection is active

Several adjustable parameters can be read and changed when know-how protection is active. You can find a list of the adjustable parameters that can be read and changed in the List Manual under "KHP_WRITE_NO_LOCK".

In addition, you can define an exception list of adjustable parameters, which end users may change.

Adjustable parameters that can be read when know-how protection is active

Several adjustable parameters can be read but not changed when know-how protection is active. You can find a list of the adjustable parameters that can be read in the List Manual under "KHP_ACTIVE_READ".

Functions that are inhibited when know-how protection is active

Active know-how protection inhibits the following functions:

- Download of inverter settings using STARTER or Startdrive
- Automatic controller optimization
- Stationary or rotating measurement of the motor data identification
- Deleting the alarm history and the fault history
- Generating acceptance documentation for the safety functions

Functions that can be executed when know-how protection is active

The following functions can be executed when know-how protection is active:

- Restoring the factory setting
- Acknowledging faults
- Displaying faults, alarms, fault history and alarm history
- Reading out the diagnostic buffer
- Controlling the inverter via the control panel in STARTER or Startdrive
- Uploading adjustable parameters that can be changed or read when know-how protection is active
- Displaying the generated acceptance documentation for the safety functions

Depending on the know-how protection settings, the trace function in STARTER can also be active when know-how protection is active.

Commissioning know-how protection

Maintain the following sequence:

1. Check as to whether you must extend the exception list.
   List of exceptions (Page 345)
2. Activate the know-how protection.
   Know-how protection (Page 346)

7.6.1 Extending the exception list for know-how protection

In the factory setting, the exception list only includes the password for know-how protection.

Before activating know-how protection, you can additionally enter the adjustable parameters in the exception list, which must still be able to be read and changed by end users – even if know-how protection has been activated.

You do not need to change the exception list, if, with exception of the password, you do not require additional adjustable parameters in the exception list.

Absolute know-how protection

If you remove password p7766 from the exception list, it is no longer possible to enter or change the password for know-how protection.

You must reset the inverter to the factory settings in order to be able to gain access to the inverter adjustable parameters. When restoring the factory settings, you lose what you have configured in the inverter, and you must recommission the inverter.

Extending the exception list

Procedure with STARTER

Proceed as follows to extend the exception list for know-how protection:

1. Backup the inverter settings using the button on the PC.
2. Go offline ()
3. Using p7763, in the expert list, define the required number of parameters n (n = 1 … 500) of the exception list.
4. Save the project.
5. Go online.
6. Load the project using the button in the inverter.
7. In p7764[0 … n-1], assign the required parameter numbers to the indices of p7763.

You have extended the exception list for know-how protection.

Parameter

Parameter	Description
p7763	**KHP OEM exception list number of indices for p7764** (factory setting 1)
p7764	**KHP OEM exception list** (factory setting [0] 7766, [1 …499] 0) p7766 is the password for know-how protection

7.6.2 Activating and deactivating know-how protection

Activating know-how protection

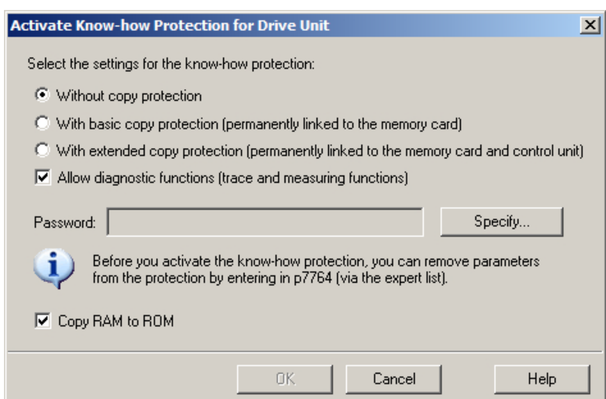
Preconditions

- The inverter has now been commissioned.
- You have generated the exception list for know-how protection.
- To guarantee know-how protection, you must ensure that the project does not remain at the end user as a file.

Procedure with STARTER

Proceed as follows to activate know-how protection:

1. Go online with STARTER.
   If you have generated a project offline on your computer, you must load the project into the inverter and go online.
2. Select the required inverter in the project.
3. In the shortcut menu, select "Know-how protection drive unit/activating ....".



4. The "Without copy protection" option is active by default. If an appropriate memory card is inserted in the Control Unit, you can select one of two copy protection options:
   – With basic copy protection (permanently linked to the memory card)
   – With extended copy protection (permanently linked to the memory card and Control Unit)

   Select the required copy protection option.
5. If, in spite of active know-how protection, you wish to permit diagnostic functions, activate option "Allow diagnostic functions (trace and measuring functions)".
6. Click on "Define"

7. Enter your password. Length of the password: 1 … 30 characters.
   Recommendation for assigning a password:
   - Only use characters from the ASCII set of characters.
     If you use arbitrary characters for the password, changing the windows language settings after activating know-how protection can result in problems when subsequently checking a password.
   - For an adequately secure password, the password must have a minimum length of 8 characters, and must include uppercase and lowercase letters as well as a combination of letters, numbers and special characters.
8. The "Copy RAM to ROM" option is active as standard.
   The option must be active in order that the inverter keeps the know-how protection settings after switching off and switching on the power supply.
9. Click on "OK".

You have activated know-how protection.

Preventing data reconstruction from the memory card

As soon as know-how protection has been activated, the inverter only backs up encrypted data to the memory card.

In order to guarantee know-how protection, after activating know-how protection, we recommend that you insert a new, empty memory card. For memory cards that have already been written to, previously backed up data that was not encrypted can be reconstructed.

Changing the password

Procedure with STARTER

Select the inverter in the project and open the dialog screen form using the shortcut menu "Know-how protection drive unit → Change password ...".

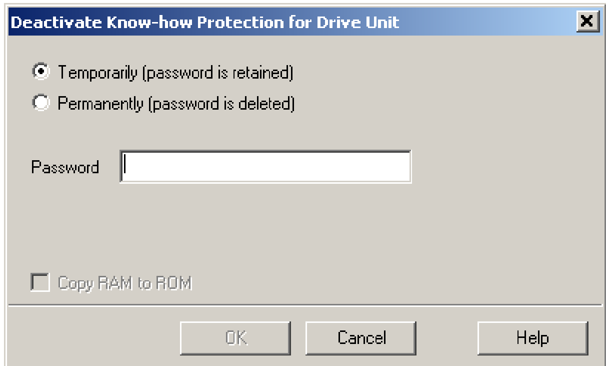
Deactivating know-how protection, deleting a password

Procedure with STARTER

Proceed as follows to deactivate know-how protection:

1. Go online with STARTER.
2. Select the required inverter in the project.

3. Using the right-hand mouse key, open the dialog window "Know-how protection drive unit → Deactivate…".



4. Select the required option:
   – Temporary status: Know-how protection is again active after switching off the power supply and switching on again.
   – Final status: Also select "Copy RAM to ROM".
   The inverter deletes the password. However, after switching off and switching on the power supply, the password remains deleted.
5. Enter the password for know-how protection.
6. Exit the screen form with OK.

You have deactivated know-how protection.

Parameter

Parameter	Description	
r7758[0...19]	**KHP Control Unit serial number**	
p7759[0...19]	**KHP Control Unit reference serial number**	
r7760	**Write protection/know-how protection status**	
	.01	1 signal: Know-how protection active
	.02	1 signal: Know-how protection temporarily unlocked
	.03	1 signal: Know-how protection cannot be deactivated
	.04	1 signal: Extended copy protection active
	.05	1 signal: Basic copy protection active
	.06	1 signal: Trace and measurement functions for diagnostic purposes active
p7765	**KHP configuration**	
p7766[0...29]	**KHP password input**	
p7767[0...29]	**KHP password new**	
p7768[0...29]	**KHP password confirmation**	
p7769[0...20]	**KHP memory card reference serial number**	
r7843[0...20]	**Memory card serial number**	

Alarms, faults and system messages

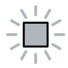
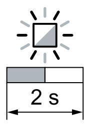
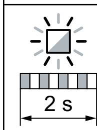
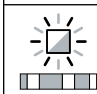
8

The inverter has the following diagnostic types:

- LED
  The LEDs at the front of the inverter immediately inform you about the most important inverter states.
- Alarms and faults
  Every alarm and every fault has a unique number.
  The inverter signals alarms and faults via the following interfaces:
  - Fieldbus
  - Terminal strip with the appropriate setting
  - Interface to the BOP-2 or IOP-2 operator panel
  - Interface to STARTER or Startdrive
- Identification & maintenance data (I&M)
  If requested, the inverter sends data to the higher-level control via PROFIBUS or PROFINET:
  - Inverter-specific data
  - Plant-specific data

8.1 Operating states indicated on LEDs

Table 8-1 Explanation of symbols for the following tables

	LED is ON
	LED is OFF
	LED flashes slowly
	LED flashes quickly
	LED flashes with variable frequency

Please contact Technical Support for LED states that are not described in the following.

Table 8-2 Basic states

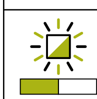
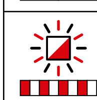
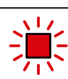
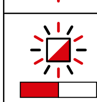
RDY	Explanation
	Temporary state after the supply voltage is switched on.
	The inverter is free of faults
	Commissioning or reset to factory settings
	A fault is active
	Firmware update is active
	Inverter waits until the power supply is switched off and switched on again after a firmware update

Table 8-3 Integrated safety functions

SAFE	Explanation
	One or more safety functions are enabled, but not active.
	One or more safety functions are active and error-free.
	The inverter has detected a safety function fault and initiated a stop response.

Table 8-4 PROFINET fieldbus

LNK	Explanation
	Communication via PROFINET is error-free
	Device naming is active
	No communication via PROFINET

Table 8-5 Fieldbuses via RS 485 interface

<table>
<tr><th>BF</th><th colspan="2">Explanation</th></tr>
<tr><td></td><td colspan="2">Data exchange between the inverter and control system is active</td></tr>
<tr><td rowspan="2"></td><td colspan="2">The fieldbus is active, however, the inverter is not receiving any process data</td></tr>
<tr><td>RDY</td><td>When LED RDY flashes simultaneously:
Inverter waits until the power supply is switched off and switched on again after a firmware update</td></tr>
<tr><td rowspan="2"></td><td colspan="2">No fieldbus connection is available</td></tr>
<tr><td>RDY</td><td>When LED RDY flashes simultaneously:
Incorrect memory card</td></tr>
<tr><td></td><td colspan="2">Firmware update failed</td></tr>
<tr><td></td><td colspan="2">Firmware update is active</td></tr>
</table>

Communication via Modbus or USS:

If the fieldbus monitoring is deactivated with p2040 = 0, the BF-LED remains dark, independent of the communication state.

Table 8-6 PROFINET and PROFIBUS fieldbuses

BF	Explanation	
	Data exchange between the inverter and control system is active	
	Fieldbus interface is not being used	
	The fieldbus is improperly configured.	
	RDY	In conjunction with a synchronously flashing LED RDY: Inverter waits until the power supply is switched off and switched on again after a firmware update
	No communication with higher-level controller	
	RDY	In conjunction with an asynchronously flashing LED RDY: Incorrect memory card
	Firmware update failed	
	Firmware update is active	

8.2 Identification & maintenance data (I&M)

I&M data

The inverter supports the following identification and maintenance (I&M) data.

I&M data	Format	Explanation	Associated parameters	Example for the content
I&M0	u8[64] PROFIBUS u8[54] PROFINET	Inverter-specific data, read only	-	See below
I&M1	Visible String [32]	Plant/system identifier	p8806[0 … 31]	"ak12-ne.bo2=fu1"
	Visible String [22]	Location code	p8806[32 … 53]	"sc2+or45"
I&M2	Visible String [16]	Date	p8807[0 … 15]	"2013-01-21 16:15"
I&M3	Visible String [54]	Any comment	p8808[0 … 53]	-
I&M4	Octet String[54]	Check signature to track changes for Safety Integrated. This value can be changed by the user. The test signature is reset to the value generated by the machine is p8805 = 0 is used.	p8809[0 … 53]	Values of r9781[0] and r9782[0]

When requested, the inverted transfers its I&M data to a higher-level control or to a PC/PG with installed STEP 7, STARTER or TIA-Portal.

I&M0

Designation	Format	Example for the content	Valid for PROFINET	Valid for PROFIBUS
Manufacturer-specific	u8[10]	00 … 00 hex	---	✓
MANUFACTURER_ID	u16	42d hex (=Siemens)	✓	✓
ORDER_ID	Visible String [20]	„6SL3246-0BA22-1FA0“	✓	✓
SERIAL_NUMBER	Visible String [16]	„T-R32015957“	✓	✓
HARDWARE_REVISION	u16	0001 hex	✓	✓
SOFTWARE_REVISION	char, u8[3]	„V“ 04.70.19	✓	✓
REVISION_COUNTER	u16	0000 hex	✓	✓
PROFILE_ID	u16	3A00 hex	✓	✓
PROFILE_SPECIFIC_TYPE	u16	0000 hex	✓	✓
IM_VERSION	u8[2]	01.02	✓	✓
IM_SUPPORTED	bit[16]	001E hex	✓	✓

8.3 Alarms, alarm buffer, and alarm history

Alarms

Alarms have the following properties:

- Incoming alarms have no direct influence on the inverter.
- Alarms disappear again when the cause is eliminated.
- Alarms do not have to be acknowledged.
- Alarms are displayed as follows:
  - Display via bit 7 in status word 1 (r0052)
  - Display on the operator panel with Axxxxx
  - Display in Startdrive or STARTER

Alarm code or alarm value describe the cause of the alarm.

Alarm buffer

Alarm code	Alarm value		Alarm time received		Alarm time removed
	I32	float	ms		ms
r2122[0]	r2124[0]	r2134[0]	r2123[0]	Old	r2125[0]
[1]	[1]	[1]	[1]		[1]
[2]	[2]	[2]	[2]		[2]
[3]	[3]	[3]	[3]		[3]
[4]	[4]	[4]	[4]		[4]
[5]	[5]	[5]	[5]		[5]
[6]	[6]	[6]	[6]		[6]
[7]	[7]	[7]	[7]	New	[7]

Figure 8-1 Alarm buffer

The inverter saves incoming alarms in the alarm buffer. An alarm includes an alarm code, an alarm value, and two alarm times:

- Alarm code: r2122
- Alarm value: r2124 in fixed-point format "I32", r2134 in floating point format "Float"
- Alarm time received = r2123
- Alarm time removed = r2125

Up to 8 alarms can be saved in the alarm buffer.

In the alarm buffer, the warnings are sorted according to "Warning time received". If the alarm buffer is completely filled and an additional alarm occurs, then the inverter overwrites the values with Index [7].

Alarm history

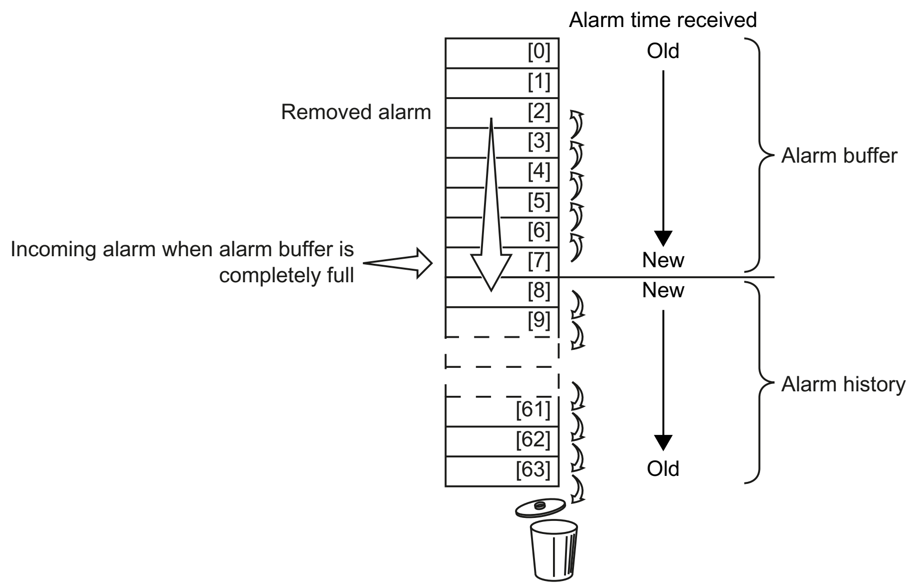


Figure 8-2 Shifting removed alarms into the alarm history

If the alarm buffer is completely filled and an additional alarm occurs, the inverter shifts all removed alarms into the alarm history. The following occurs in detail:

1. To create space after position [8] in the alarm history, the inverter shifts the alarms already stored in the alarm history "down" by one or more positions.
   If the alarm history is completely full, the inverter will delete the oldest alarms.
2. The inverter moves the removed alarms from the alarm buffer to the now freed up positions of the alarm history.
   Alarms that have not been removed remain in the alarm buffer.
3. The inverter closes gaps in the alarm buffer that occurred when the removed alarms were shifted in the alarm history by shifting the alarms that have not been removed "up".
4. The inverter saves the received alarm as the latest alarm in the alarm buffer.

The alarm history saves up to 56 alarms.

In the alarm history, alarms are sorted according to the "alarm time received". The latest alarm has Index [8].

Parameters of the alarm buffer and the alarm history

Parameter	Description
p2111	**Alarm counter** Number of alarms that have occurred after the last reset When setting p2111 = 0, all of the alarms that have been removed from the alarm buffer [0...7] are transferred into the alarm history [8...63]
r2122	**Alarm code** Displays the numbers of alarms that have occurred

Parameter	Description
r2123	**Alarm time received in milliseconds** Displays the time in milliseconds when the alarm occurred
r2124	**Alarm value** Displays additional information about the alarm
r2125	**Alarm time removed in milliseconds** Displays the time in milliseconds when the alarm was removed
r2132	**Actual alarm code** Displays the code of the alarm that last occurred
r2134	**Alarm value for float values** Displays additional information about the alarm that occurred for float values

Extended settings for alarms

Table 8-7 Extended settings for alarms

Parameter	Description
You can change up to 20 different alarms into a fault or suppress alarms:	
p2118	**Setting the message number for the message type** Select the alarms for which the message type should be changed
p2119	**Setting the message type** Setting the message type for the selected alarm 1: Fault 2: Alarm 3: No message

You will find details in function diagram 8075 and in the parameter description of the List Manual.

8.4 Faults, alarm buffer and alarm history

Faults

Faults have the following properties:

- In general, a fault leads to the motor being switched off.
- A fault must be acknowledged.
- Faults are displayed as follows:
  – Display in bit 3 of status word 1 (r0052)
  – Display on the operator panel with Fxxxxx
  – Display on the inverter via the LED RDY
  – Display in Startdrive or STARTER

Fault buffer

Fault code	Fault value		Fault time received			Fault time removed	
	I32	float	Days	ms		Days	ms
r0945[0]	r0949[0]	r2133[0]	r2130[0]	r0948[0]	Old	r2136[0]	r2109[0]
[1]	[1]	[1]	[1]	[1]	↓	[1]	[1]
[2]	[2]	[2]	[2]	[2]		[2]	[2]
[3]	[3]	[3]	[3]	[3]		[3]	[3]
[4]	[4]	[4]	[4]	[4]		[4]	[4]
[5]	[5]	[5]	[5]	[5]		[5]	[5]
[6]	[6]	[6]	[6]	[6]		[6]	[6]
[7]	[7]	[7]	[7]	[7]	New	[7]	[7]

Figure 8-3 Fault buffer

The inverter saves incoming faults in the fault buffer. A fault includes a fault code, a fault value, and two fault times:

- Fault code: r0945
  The fault code and fault value describe the cause of the fault.
- Fault value: r0949 in fixed-point format "I32", r2133 in floating point format "Float"
- Fault time received = r2130 + r0948
- Fault time removed = r2136 + r2109

Up to 8 faults can be saved in the fault buffer.

In the fault buffer, the faults are sorted according to "Fault time received". If the fault buffer is completely filled and an additional fault occurs, then the inverter overwrites the values with Index [7].

Acknowledge fault

To acknowledge a fault, you have the following options:

- PROFIdrive control word 1, bit 7 (r2090.7)
- Acknowledging via a digital input
- Acknowledging via n operator panel
- Switch-off the inverter power supply and switch-on again

Faults detected during the inverter-internal monitoring of hardware and firmware can be acknowledged only by switching the supply voltage off and on again. In the list of faults in the List Manual, at the corresponding fault codes you may find the information on limitations when acknowledging.

Fault history

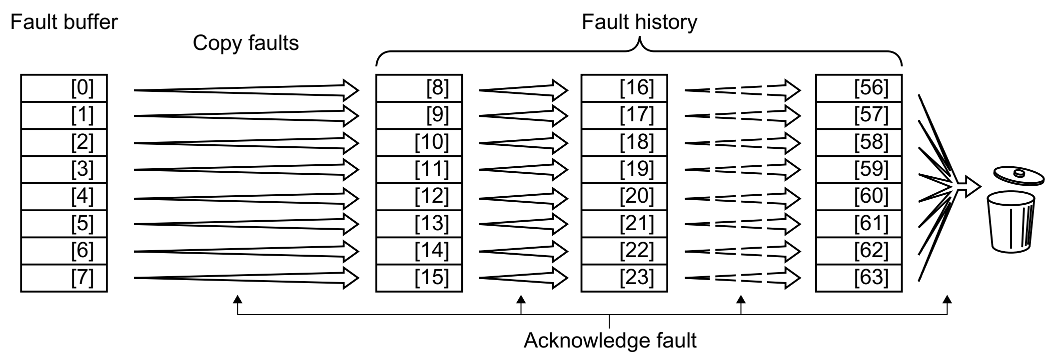


Figure 8-4 Fault history after acknowledging the faults

If at least one of the fault causes in the fault buffer has been removed and you acknowledge the faults, the following takes place:

1. The inverters shifts the values previously saved in the fault history each by eight indices.
   The inverter deletes the faults that were saved in the indexes [56 … 63] before the acknowledgement.
2. The inverter copies the contents of the fault buffer to the save locations [8 … 15] in the fault history.
3. The inverter deletes the faults that have been removed from the fault buffer.
   The faults that have not been removed are now saved both in the fault buffer and in the fault history.
4. The inverter writes the time of acknowledgement of the removed faults to "Fault time removed".
   The "Fault time removed" of the faults that have not been removed retains the value = 0.

The fault history can contain up to 56 faults.

Deleting the fault history

To delete all faults from the fault history, set parameter p0952 to zero.

Parameters of the fault buffer and the fault history

Parameter	Description
r0945	**Fault code** Displays the numbers of faults that have occurred
r0948	**Fault time received in milliseconds** Displays the time in milliseconds when the fault occurred
r0949	**Fault value** Displays additional information about the fault
p0952	**Fault cases, counter** A fault case can contain one or several faults. Number of fault cases that have occurred since the last acknowledgement. With p0952 = 0 you delete the fault buffer and the fault history.
r2109	**Fault time removed in milliseconds** Displays the time in milliseconds when the fault was removed
r2130	**Fault time received in days** Displays the time in days when the fault occurred
r2131	**Actual fault code** Displays the code of the oldest fault that is still active
r2133	**Fault value for float values** Displays additional information about the fault that occurred for float values
r2136	**Fault time removed in days** Displays the time in days when the fault was removed

Extended settings for faults

Parameter	Description
p2100[0 … 19]	**Setting the fault number for fault response** Selecting the faults for which the fault response should be changed. You can modify the motor fault response for up to 20 different fault codes.
p2101[0 … 19]	**Setting, fault response** Setting the fault response for the selected fault
p2118[0 … 19]	**Setting the message number for the message type** Selection of the message for which the message type should be changed. You can change up to 20 different faults into an alarm, or suppress faults:
p2119[0 … 19]	**Setting the message type** Setting the message type for the selected fault 1: Fault 2: Alarm 3: No message

Parameter	Description
p2126[0 … 19]	**Setting the fault number for the acknowledgement mode** Selection of the faults for which the acknowledgement type should be changed. You can modify the acknowledgement type for up to 20 different fault codes.
p2127[0 … 19]	**Setting, acknowledgement mode** Setting the acknowledgement type for the selected fault 1: Can only be acknowledged using POWER ON 2: IMMEDIATE acknowledgement after removing the fault cause

You will find details in function diagram 8075 and in the parameter description of the List Manual.

8.5 List of alarms and faults

Axxxxx Alarm

Fyyyyy: Fault

Table 8-8 The most important alarms and faults

Number	Cause	Remedy
F01000	Internal software error	Replace the inverter.
F01001	FloatingPoint exception	Switch off the inverter and switch on again
F01015	Internal software error	Upgrade firmware or contact technical support.
F01018	Power-up aborted more than once	1. Switch off the inverter power supply and switch it on again. 2. After this fault, the inverter powers up with the factory settings. 3. Recommission the inverter.
A01028	Configuration error	Explanation: The parameter assignments on the memory card were made with a different type of module (article no.). Check the module parameters and recommission if necessary.
F01033	Switching over units: Reference parameter value invalid	Set the value of the reference parameter not equal to 0.0 (p0304, p0305, p0310, p0596, p2000, p2001, p2002, p2003, r2004).
F01034	Switching over units: Calculation of the parameter values after reference value change unsuccessful	Select the value of the reference parameter so that the parameters involved can be calculated in the per unit notation (p0304, p0305, p0310, p0596, p2000, p2001, p2002, p2003, r2004).
F01040	Parameters must be saved	Backup parameter (p0971). Switch off the inverter and switch on again.
F01044	Error loading data from memory card	Replace the memory card or the inverter.
A01101	Memory card not available	Insert a memory card or deactivate alarm A01101. Activate message for a memory card that is not inserted (Page 332)
F01105	CU: Insufficient memory	Reduce number of data sets.
F01122	Frequency at the probe input too high	Reduce the frequency of the pulses at the probe input.
F01205	CU: Time slice overflow	Contact technical support.
F01250	CU hardware fault	Replace the inverter.
F01512	An attempt has been made to establish a conversion factor for scaling which does not exist	Create scaling or check transfer value.
A01590	Motor maintenance interval elapsed	Carry out the maintenance.
F01600	STOP A initiated	Select STO and then deselect again.
F01625	Sign-of-life error in the Safety data	• Check the electrical cabinet design and cable routing for EMC compliance. • Check whether an impermissible voltage is connected at one of the digital outputs. • Check whether a digital output is loaded with an impermissible current. • Check whether additional faults exist and perform diagnostics if applicable. • Select STO safety function and then deselect again. • Switch off the inverter power supply and switch it on again.

<table>
<tr><th>Number</th><th>Cause</th><th>Remedy</th></tr>
<tr><td>F01650</td><td>Acceptance test required</td><td>Carry out an acceptance test and create test certificate.
Switch off the Control Unit and switch on again.</td></tr>
<tr><td>F01659</td><td>Write task for parameter rejected</td><td>Cause: The inverter should be reset to the factory setting. However, it is not permissible to reset the safety functions as the safety functions are currently enabled.
Remedy with operator panel:<table><tr><td>p0010 = 30</td><td>Parameter reset</td></tr><tr><td>p9761 = …</td><td>Enter password for the safety functions.</td></tr><tr><td>p0970 = 5</td><td>Reset start safety parameter.
The inverter sets p0970 = 5 once it has reset the parameters.</td></tr></table>Then reset the inverter to the factory setting again.</td></tr>
<tr><td>F01662</td><td>Error, internal communications</td><td>• Check the electrical cabinet design and cable routing for EMC compliance.
• Check whether an impermissible voltage is connected at one of the digital outputs.
• Check whether a digital output is loaded with an impermissible current.
If the checks are unsuccessful:
• Switch off the inverter power supply and switch it on again
• Upgrade the firmware
• Contact technical support</td></tr>
<tr><td>A01666</td><td>Static 1 signal at the F-DI for safe acknowledgement</td><td>Set fail-safe digital input F-DI to a logical 0 signal.</td></tr>
<tr><td>A01698</td><td>Commissioning mode active for safety functions</td><td>This message is withdrawn after the Safety commissioning has ended.</td></tr>
<tr><td>A01699</td><td>Switch-off signal path test required</td><td>After the next time that the "STO" function is deselected, the message is withdrawn and the monitoring time is reset.</td></tr>
<tr><td>A01900</td><td>PROFIBUS: Configuration telegram faulty</td><td>Explanation: A PROFIBUS master is attempting to establish a connection with a faulty configuration telegram.
Check the bus configuration on the master and slave side.</td></tr>
<tr><td>A01910
F01910</td><td>Fieldbus SS setpoint timeout</td><td>The alarm is generated when p2040 ≠ 0 ms and one of the following causes is present:
• The bus connection is interrupted
• The MODBUS master is switched off
• Communications error (CRC, parity bit, logical error)
An excessively low value for the fieldbus monitoring time (p2040)</td></tr>
<tr><td>A01920</td><td>PROFIBUS: Cyclic connection interrupt</td><td>Explanation: The cyclic connection to PROFIBUS master is interrupted.
Establish the PROFIBUS connection and activate the PROFIBUS master with cyclic operation.</td></tr>
<tr><td>F03505</td><td>Analog input, wire break</td><td>Check the connection to the signal source for interrupts.
Check the level of the signal supplied.
The input current measured by the analog input can be read out in r0752.</td></tr>
<tr><td>A03520</td><td>Temperature sensor fault</td><td>Check that the sensor is connected correctly.</td></tr>
</table>

Number	Cause	Remedy
A05000 A05001 A05002 A05004 A05006	Power Module overtemperature	Check the following: - Is the ambient temperature within the defined limit values? - Are the load conditions and duty cycle configured accordingly? - Has the cooling failed?
F06310	Supply voltage (p0210) incorrectly parameterized	Check the parameterized supply voltage and if required change (p0210). Check the line voltage.
F07011	Motor overtemperature	Reduce the motor load. Check ambient temperature. Check the wiring and connection of the sensor.
A07012	I2t motor model overtemperature	Check and if necessary reduce the motor load. Check the motor's ambient temperature. Check the thermal time constant p0611. Check overtemperature fault threshold p0605.
A07015	Motor temperature sensor alarm	Check that the sensor is connected correctly. Check the parameter assignment (p0601).
F07016	Motor temperature sensor fault	Make sure that the sensor is connected correctly. Check the parameterization (p0601).
F07086 F07088	Switching over units: Parameter limit violation	Check the adapted parameter values and if required correct.
F07320	Automatic restart aborted	Increase the number of restart attempts (p1211). The current number of start attempts is shown in r1214. Increase the wait time in p1212 and/or monitoring time in p1213. Connect an ON command (p0840). Increase the monitoring time of the power unit or switch off (p0857). Reduce the wait time for resetting the fault counter p1213[1] so that fewer faults are registered in the time interval.
A07321	Automatic restart active	Explanation: The automatic restart (AR) is active. During voltage recovery and/or when remedying the causes of pending faults, the drive is automatically switched back on.
F07330	Search current measured too low	Increase search current (P1202), check motor connection.
A07400	V_{DC_max} controller active	If the controller is not to intervene: • Increase the ramp-down times. • Deactivate the V_{DC_max} controller (p1240 = 0 for vector control, p1280 = 0 for V/f control).
A07409	V/f control, current limiting controller active	The alarm automatically disappears after one of the following measures: • Increase the current limit (p0640). • Reduce the load. • Increase the ramp-up time to the speed setpoint.
F07426	Technology controller actual value limited	• Adapt the limits to the signal level (p2267, p2268). • Check the actual value scaling (p2264).
A07444	PID autotuning is activated	Automatic setting of the PID controller (autotuning) is active (p2350 > 0). The alarm disappears automatically after completion of the autotuning.

Number	Cause	Remedy
F07445	PID autotuning canceled	The inverter has canceled the automatic setting of the PID controller (autotuning) because of a fault. Remedy: Increase p2355 and restart autotuning.
F07801	Motor overcurrent	Check current limits (p0640). V/f control: Check the current limiting controller (p1340 … p1346). Increase the acceleration ramp (p1120) or reduce the load. Check the motor and motor cables for short-circuit and ground fault. Check motor for star-delta connection and rating plate parameterization. Check power unit / motor combination. Select the flying restart function (p1200) if switched to rotating motor.
A07805	Drive: Power unit overload I2t	• Reduce the continuous load. • Adapt the load cycle. • Check the assignment of rated currents of the motor and power unit.
F07807	Short-circuit detected	• Check the inverter connection on the motor side for any phase-phase short-circuit. • Rule out that line and motor cables have been interchanged.
A07850	External alarm 1	The signal for "external alarm 1" has been triggered. Parameter p2112 defines the signal source of the external alarm. Remedy: Rectify the cause of this alarm.
F07860	External fault 1	Remove the external causes for this fault.
F07900	Motor blocked	• Make sure that the motor can rotate freely. • Check the torque limit: r1538 for a positive direction of rotation; r1539 for a negative direction of rotation.
F07901	Motor overspeed	Activate precontrol of the speed limiting controller (p1401 bit 7 = 1).
F07902	Motor stalled	Check whether the motor data has been parameterized correctly and perform motor identification. Check the current limits (p0640, r0067, r0289). If the current limits are too low, the drive cannot be magnetized. Check whether motor cables are disconnected during operation.
A07903	Motor speed deviation	Increase p2163 and/or p2166. Increase the torque, current and power limits.
A07910	Motor overtemperature	Check the motor load. Check the motor's ambient temperature. Check the KTY84 or PT1000 sensor.
A07920	Torque/speed too low	The torque deviates from the torque/speed envelope curve. • Check the connection between the motor and the load. • Adapt the parameterization corresponding to the load.
A07921	Torque/speed too high	
A07922	Torque/speed out of tolerance	
F07923	Torque/speed too low	• Check the connection between the motor and the load. • Adapt the parameterization corresponding to the load.
F07924	Torque/speed too high	
A07927	DC braking active	Not required
A07980	Rotary measurement activated	Not required
A07981	No enabling for rotary measurement	Acknowledge pending faults. Establish missing enables (see r00002, r0046).

Number	Cause	Remedy
A07991	Motor data identification activated	Switch on the motor and identify the motor data.
F08501	Setpoint timeout	• Check the PROFINET connection. • Set the controller to RUN mode. • If the error occurs repeatedly, check the monitoring time set (p2044).
F08502	Monitoring time, sign-of-life expired	• Check the PROFINET connection.
F08510	Send configuration data not valid	• Check the PROFINET configuration
A08511	Receive configuration data not valid	
A08526	No cyclic connection	• Activate the control with cyclic operation. • Check the parameters "Name of Station" and "IP of Station" (r61000, r61001).
A08565	Consistency error affecting adjustable parameters	Check the following: • IP address, subnet mask or default gateway is not correct. • IP address or station name used twice in the network. • Station name contains invalid characters.
F13100	Know-how protection: Copy protection error	The know-how protection and the copy protection for the memory card are active. An error occurred when checking the memory card. • Insert a suitable memory card and switch the inverter supply voltage temporarily off and then on again (POWER ON). • Deactivate the copy protection (p7765).
F13101	Know-how protection: Copy protection cannot be activated	Insert a valid memory card.
F30001	Overcurrent	Check the following: • Motor data, if required, carry out commissioning • Motor connection method (Y / Δ) • V/f operation: Assignment of rated currents of motor and Power Module • Line quality • Make sure that the line commutating reactor is connected properly • Power cable connections • Power cables for short-circuit or ground fault • Power cable length • Line phases If this doesn't help: • V/f operation: Increase the acceleration ramp • Reduce the load • Replace the power unit
F30002	DC-link voltage overvoltage	Increase the ramp-down time (p1121). Set the rounding times (p1130, p1136). Activate the DC-link voltage controller (p1240, p1280). Check the line voltage (p0210). Check the line phases.
F30003	DC-link voltage undervoltage	Check the line voltage (p0210).

Number	Cause	Remedy
F30004	Inverter overtemperature	Check whether the inverter fan is running. Check whether the ambient temperature is in the permissible range. Check whether the motor is overloaded. Reduce the pulse frequency.
F30005	I2t inverter overload	Check the rated currents of the motor and inverter. Reduce the current limit p0640. When operating with V/f characteristic: Reduce p1341.
F30011	Line phase failure	Check the inverter's input fuses. Check the motor cables.
F30015	Motor cable phase failure	Check the motor cables. Increase the ramp-up or ramp-down time (p1120).
F30021	Ground fault	• Check the power cable connections. • Check the motor. • Check the current transformer. • Check the cables and contacts of the brake connection (a wire might be broken).
F30022	Power Module: Monitoring U_{CE}	Check or replace the inverter.
F30027	Time monitoring for DC link pre-charging	Check the line voltage. Check the line voltage setting (p0210).
F30035	Overtemperature, intake air	• Check whether the fan is running. • Check the fan filter elements. • Check whether the ambient temperature is in the permissible range.
F30036	Overtemperature, inside area	
F30037	Rectifier overtemperature	See F30035 and, in addition: • Check the motor load. • Check the line phases
A30049	Internal fan defective	Check the internal fan and if required replace.
F30052	Incorrect Power Module data	Replace the inverter or upgrade the inverter firmware.
F30053	Error in FPGA data	Replace the inverter.
F30059	Internal fan defective	Check the internal fan and if required replace.
F30074	Communications error between Control Unit and Power Module	There is a communications fault between the Control Unit and the Power Module. Possible cause: • The external 24 V Control Unit power supply has dipped to ≤95% of the rated voltage for ≤3 ms
A30502	DC link overvoltage	• Check the device supply voltage (p0210). • Check the line reactor dimensioning
F30662	CU hardware fault	Switch off the inverter and switch on again, upgrade the firmware or contact technical support.
F30664	CU power up aborted	Switch off the inverter and switch on again, upgrade the firmware or contact technical support.
F30850	Software fault in the Power Module	Replace the inverter or contact technical support.
A30920	Temperature sensor fault	Check that the sensor is connected correctly.

Number	Cause	Remedy
A50001	PROFINET configuration error	A PROFINET control is attempting to establish a connection with a faulty configuration telegram. Check whether "Shared Device" is activated (p8929 = 2).
A50010	PROFINET name of station invalid	Correct the name of station (p8920) and activate (p8925 = 2).
A50020	PROFINET: Second control missing	"Shared Device" is activated (p8929 = 2). However, only the connection to a PROFINET control is present.

For further information, please refer to the List Manual.

Overview of the manuals (Page 459)

9 Corrective maintenance

9.1 Spare parts compatibility

Continuous development within the scope of product maintenance

Inverter components are being continuously developed within the scope of product maintenance. Product maintenance includes, for example, measures to increase the ruggedness or hardware changes which become necessary as components are discontinued.

These further developments are "spare parts-compatible" and do not change the article number.

In the scope of such spare parts-compatible ongoing development, plug connector or connection positions are sometimes slightly modified. This does not cause any problems when the components are properly used. Please take this fact into consideration in special installation situations (e.g. allow sufficient reserve regarding the cable length).

9.2 Replacing inverter components

⚠ WARNING
Fire or electric shock due to defective components
If an overcurrent protection device is triggered, the inverter may be defective. A defective inverter can cause a fire or electric shock.
• Have the inverter and the overcurrent protection device checked by a specialist.

Repair

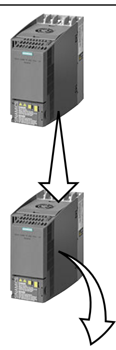
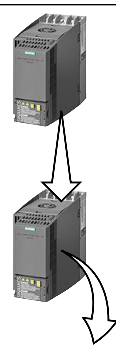
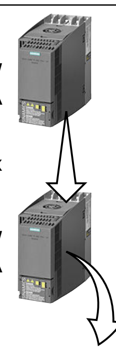
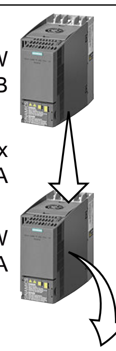
⚠ WARNING
Fire or electric shock due to improper repair
Improper repair of the inverter may cause malfunctions or result in consequential damage such as fire or electric shock.
• Only commission the following persons to repair the inverter: – Siemens customer service – A repair center that has been authorized by Siemens – Specialist personnel who are thoroughly acquainted with all the warnings and operating procedures contained in this manual.
• Only use original spare parts when carrying out repairs.

9.2.1 Overview of how to replace an inverter

Permissible replacement

You must replace the inverter if it continually malfunctions.

In the following cases you will need to replace the inverter:

Replacement: • Same power rating • Same firmware version	Replacement: • Same power rating • *Higher* firmware version (e.g. replace FW V4.2 by FW V4.3)	Replacement: • Same frame size • *Higher* power rating • Same firmware version	Replacement: • Same frame size • *Higher* power rating • *Higher* firmware version (e.g. replace FW V4.2 by FW V4.3)
x kW Firmware A  x kW Firmware A	x kW Firmware B B > A  x kW Firmware A	y kW Firmware A y > x  x kW Firmware A	y kW Firmware B y > x B > A  x kW Firmware A
		Inverter and motor must match one another (ratio between the motor and inverter rated power > 1/4)	

⚠ WARNING

Unexpected machine movements caused by incorrect/inappropriate inverter settings

Replacing inverters of different types can result in incomplete or incorrect/inappropriate inverter settings. As a consequence, unexpected machine motion, e.g. speed oscillation, overspeed or incorrect direction of rotation. Unexpected machine motion can result in death, injury or material damage.

- In all cases that are not permitted according to the table above, recommission the drive after replacing an inverter.

Special issue relating to communication via PROFINET: Device replacement without removable data storage medium

The inverter supports the PROFINET functionality, replacing the device without data storage medium.

Requirement

The topology of the PROFINET IO system with the IO device involved is configured in your higher-level control system.

Replacing the device

The inverter can be replaced without having to insert a removable data storage medium (e.g. a memory card) with the saved device names in the inverter – or having to reassign the device names with a PG.

Details of the device replacement without removable storage medium can be found in the Internet:

PROFINET system description (http://support.automation.siemens.com/WW/view/en/19292127).

9.2.2 Replacing a converter with enabled safety function

WARNING

Electric shock as a result of a residual charge in power components

After the power supply has been switched off, it takes up to 5 min. until the capacitors in the inverter have discharged so that the remaining voltage is at a non-hazardous level. Death or serious injury can result when live parts are touched.

- Check that the inverter connections are in a no-voltage condition before you carry out any installation work.

NOTICE

Machine damage due to interchanged motor connecting cables

The direction in which the motor rotates switches if you swap the two phases of the motor line. A motor running backwards may damage the machine or installation. Driven loads with only one permissible direction of rotation include certain saws.

- Connect the three phases of the motor lines in the right order.
- After replacing the inverter, check the direction in which the motor rotates.

Replacing an inverter with data backup on a memory card

Procedure

1.
2.

To replace the inverter, proceed as follows:

1. Disconnect the line voltage to the inverter and (if installed) the external 24 V supply or the voltage for the digital outputs of the inverter.
2. Remove the connecting cables of the inverter.
3. Remove the defective inverter.
4. Install the new inverter.
5. Remove the memory card from the old inverter, and insert this into the new inverter.
6. Connect all of the cables to the inverter.
7. Reconnect the line voltage, and (if being used) the external 24 V supply or the voltage for the digital outputs of the inverter.

8. The inverter loads the settings from the memory card.
9. After loading, check whether the inverter outputs Alarm A01028.
   – Alarm A01028:
     The loaded settings are not compatible with the inverter.
     Set p0971 = 1 to delete the alarms. Check the inverter settings. We recommend that you recommission the drive.
   – No alarm A01028:
     Perform a **reduced** acceptance test.
     Reduced acceptance after component replacement and firmware change (Page 398)

You have replaced the inverter and transferred the safety function settings from the memory card to the new inverter.

Replacing an inverter with data backup in STARTER

Requirement

You have backed up the actual settings of the inverter to be replaced to a PC using STARTER.

Procedure

To replace the inverter, proceed as follows:

1. Disconnect the line voltage to the inverter and (if installed) the external 24 V supply or the voltage for the digital outputs of the inverter.
2. Remove the connecting cables of the inverter.
3. Remove the defective inverter.
4. Install the new inverter.
5. Connect all of the cables to the inverter.
6. Reconnect the line voltage, and (if being used) the external 24 V supply or the voltage for the digital outputs of the inverter.
7. Open the project that matches the drive in STARTER.
8. Go online and transfer the settings from the PC to the inverter by pressing the button.
   The inverter signals faults after the download. Ignore these faults, as they will be automatically acknowledged by the following steps.
9. In STARTER, select the screen form for the safety functions.
10. Select the "Change settings" button.
11. Select the "Activate settings" button.
12. Save your settings (copy RAM to ROM).
13. Switch off the inverter power supply.
14. Wait until all LEDs on the inverter are dark.

15. Switch on the inverter power supply again.
16. Perform a **reduced** acceptance test.
    Reduced acceptance after component replacement and firmware change (Page 398)

You have replaced the inverter and transferred the safety function settings from the PC to the new inverter.

Replacing an inverter with data backup in Startdrive

Requirement

You have backed up the actual settings of the inverter to be replaced to a PC using Startdrive.

Procedure

To replace the inverter, proceed as follows:

1. Disconnect the line voltage to the inverter and (if installed) the external 24 V supply or the voltage for the digital outputs of the inverter.
2. Remove the connecting cables of the inverter.
3. Remove the defective inverter.
4. Install the new inverter.
5. Connect all of the cables to the inverter.
6. Reconnect the line voltage, and (if being used) the external 24 V supply or the voltage for the digital outputs of the inverter.
7. In Startdrive, open the project that matches the drive.
8. Select "Load to device".
9. Connect Startdrive online with the drive.
   The inverter signals faults after the download. Ignore these faults, as they will be automatically acknowledged by the following steps.
10. Press the "Start safety commissioning" button.
11. Enter the password for the safety functions.
12. Confirm the prompt for saving your settings (copy RAM to ROM).
13. Disconnect the online connection.
14. Switch off the inverter power supply.
15. Wait until all LEDs on the inverter are dark.
16. Switch on the inverter power supply again.
17. Perform a **reduced** acceptance test.
    Reduced acceptance after component replacement and firmware change (Page 398)

You have replaced the inverter and transferred the safety function settings from the PC to the new inverter.

Replacing the inverter with data backup in the Operator Panel (BOP-2 or IOP-2)

Procedure

To replace the inverter, proceed as follows:

1. Disconnect the line voltage to the inverter and (if installed) the external 24 V supply or the voltage for the digital outputs of the inverter.
2. Remove the connecting cables of the inverter.
3. Remove the defective inverter.
4. Install the new inverter.
5. Connect all of the cables to the inverter.
6. Reconnect the line voltage, and (if being used) the external 24 V supply or the voltage for the digital outputs of the inverter.
7. Attach the Operator Panel to the inverter.
8. Transfer the settings from the Operator Panel to the inverter, e.g. via menu "EXTRAS" - "FROM BOP" in the BOP-2.
9. Wait until the transfer is complete.
10. After loading, check whether the inverter outputs Alarm A01028.
    – Alarm A01028:
    The loaded settings are not compatible with the inverter.
    Set p0971 = 1 to delete the alarms. Check the inverter settings. We recommend that you recommission the drive.
    – No alarm A01028: Proceed with the next step.
11. Switch off the inverter power supply.
12. Wait until all LEDs on the inverter are dark.
13. Switch on the inverter power supply again.
    The inverter reports the faults F01641, F01650, F01680 and F30680. Ignore these faults, as they will be automatically acknowledged by the following steps.
14. Set p0010 to 95.
15. Set p9761 to the safety password.
16. Set p9701 to AC hex.
17. Set p0010 = 0.
18. Back up the settings so they are not lost when the power fails:
    – For BOP-2, in the menu "EXTRAS" - "RAM-ROM".
    – For IOP-2 in the menu "SAVE RAM TO ROM".
19. Switch off the inverter power supply.
20. Wait until all LEDs on the inverter are dark.

21. Switch on the inverter power supply again.
22. Perform a **reduced** acceptance test.
    Reduced acceptance after component replacement and firmware change (Page 398)

You have replaced the inverter and transferred the safety function settings from the Operator Panel to the new inverter.

9.2.3 Replacing a converter without enabled safety function

Replacing an inverter with data backup on a memory card

Procedure

To replace the inverter, proceed as follows:

1. Disconnect the line voltage to the inverter and (if installed) the external 24 V supply or the voltage for the digital outputs of the inverter.

WARNING
Electric shock as a result of a residual charge in power components
After the power supply has been switched off, it takes up to 5 min. until the capacitors in the inverter have discharged so that the residual charge is at a non-hazardous level.
• Check the voltage at the inverter connections before you carry out any installation work.

2. Remove the connecting cables of the inverter.
3. Remove the defective inverter.
4. Install the new inverter.
5. Remove the memory card from the old inverter, and insert this into the new inverter.
6. Connect all of the cables to the inverter.

NOTICE
Damage from swapping the motor's connection lines
The direction in which the motor rotates switches if you swap the two phases of the motor line.
• Connect the three phases of the motor lines in the right order.
• After replacing the power module, check the direction in which the motor rotates.

7. Reconnect the line voltage, and (if being used) the external 24 V supply or the voltage for the digital outputs of the inverter.
8. The inverter loads the settings from the memory card.
9. After loading, check whether the inverter outputs Alarm A01028.
   – Alarm A01028:
     The loaded settings are not compatible with the inverter.
     Clear the alarm with p0971 = 1 and recommission the drive.
   – No alarm A01028:
     The inverter has accepted the settings that have been loaded.

You have successfully replaced the inverter.

Replacing an inverter with data backup in the PC

Procedure

To replace the inverter, proceed as follows:

1. Disconnect the line voltage to the inverter and (if installed) the external 24 V supply or the voltage for the digital outputs of the inverter.

> **WARNING**
>
> **Electric shock as a result of a residual charge in power components**
>
> After the power supply has been switched off, it takes up to 5 min. until the capacitors in the inverter have discharged so that the residual charge is at a non-hazardous level.
>
> - Check the voltage at the inverter connections before you carry out any installation work.

2. Remove the connecting cables of the inverter.
3. Remove the defective inverter.
4. Install the new inverter.
5. Connect all of the cables to the inverter.
6. Reconnect the line voltage, and (if being used) the external 24 V supply or the voltage for the digital outputs of the inverter.
7. Open the project that matches the drive in STARTER.
8. Go online and transfer the settings from the PC into the inverter by pressing the button.
   The inverter signals faults after the download. Ignore these faults, as they will be automatically acknowledged by the following steps.
9. In STARTER, select the screen form for the safety functions.
10. Select the "Change settings" button.
11. Select the "Activate settings" button.
12. Save your settings (copy RAM to ROM).

You have successfully replaced the inverter.

9.2.4 Replacing a converter without data backup

If the settings have not been backed up, after replacing the inverter, you must recommission the drive.

Procedure

To replace the inverter, proceed as follows:

1. Disconnect the line voltage to the inverter and (if installed) the external 24 V supply or the voltage for the digital outputs of the inverter.
2. Remove the connecting cables of the inverter.
3. Remove the defective inverter.
4. Install the new inverter.
5. Connect all of the cables to the inverter.
6. Reconnect the line voltage, and (if being used) the external 24 V supply or the voltage for the digital outputs of the inverter.
7. Recommission the drive.

Inverter commissioning has been completed after it has been commissioned.

9.2.5 Replacing devices with active know-how protection

Replacing devices with know-how protection without copy protection

In the case of know-how protection without copy protection, the inverter settings can be transferred to another inverter using a memory card.

Saving setting on memory card (Page 323)
Transferring the setting from the memory card (Page 327)

Replacing devices with know-how protection with copy protection

The know-how protection with copy protection hides the inverter settings and also prevents the duplication of the inverter settings.

If the inverter settings can neither be copied nor forwarded, a recommissioning is required after inverter replacement.

To avoid the recommissioning, you must use a Siemens memory card, and the machine manufacturer must have an identical prototype machine that it uses as sample.

There are two options for replacing the device:

Option 1: The machine manufacturer only knows the serial number of the new inverter

1. The end customer provides the machine manufacturer with the following information:
   - For which machine must the inverter be replaced?
   - What is the serial number (r7758) of the new inverter?
2. The machine manufacturer performs the following steps online on the prototype machine:
   - Deactivating know-how protection
     Activating and deactivating know-how protection (Page 346)
   - Enter the serial number of the new inverter in p7759.
   - Enter the serial number of the inserted memory card as reference serial number in p7769.
   - Activate know-how protection with copy protection. "Copy RAM to ROM" must be activated.
     Activating and deactivating know-how protection (Page 346)
   - Write the configuration with p0971 = 1 to the memory card.
   - Send the memory card to the end customer.
3. The end customer inserts the memory card and switches on the power supply for the inverter.

When powering up, the inverter checks the serial numbers of the card and when there is a match, the inverter goes into the "ready to start" state.

If the numbers do not match, then the inverter signals fault F13100 (no valid memory card).

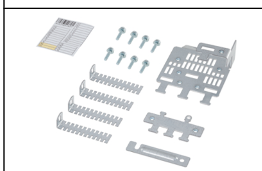
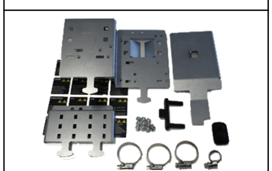
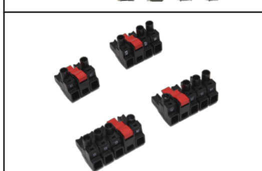
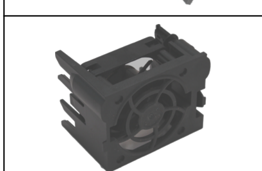
Option 2: The machine manufacturer knows the serial number of the new inverter and the serial number of the memory card

1. The end customer provides the machine manufacturer with the following information:
   - For which machine must the inverter be replaced?
   - What is the serial number (r7758) of the new inverter?
   - What is the serial number of the memory card?
2. The machine manufacturer performs the following steps online on the prototype machine:
   - Deactivating know-how protection
     Activating and deactivating know-how protection (Page 346)
   - Enter the serial number of the new inverter in p7759.
   - Enter the serial number of the customer's memory card as reference serial number in p7769.
   - Activate know-how protection with copy protection. "Copy RAM to ROM" must be activated.
     Activating and deactivating know-how protection (Page 346)
   - Write the configuration with p0971 = 1 to the memory card.
   - Copy the encrypted project from the card to the associated PC.
   - Send the encrypted project to the end customer, e.g. via e-mail.
3. The end customer copies the project to the Siemens memory card that belongs to the machine, inserts it in the inverter and switches on the power supply for the inverter.

When powering up, the inverter checks the serial numbers of the card and when there is a match, the inverter goes into the "ready to start" state.

If the numbers do not match, then the inverter signals fault F13100 (no valid memory card).

9.2.6 Spare parts

Spare part			Article number
	5 I/O terminal sets, 1 front door set and 1 blanking cover for the operator panel	Frame size AA … Frame size C	6SL3200-0SK41-0AA0
	1 set of small parts for installation	Frame size D … frame size F	6SL3200-0SK08-0AA0
	1 set of shield plates and mounting accessories	Frame size AA	6SL3266-1ER00-0KA0
		Frame size A	6SL3266-1EA00-0KA0
		Frame size B	6SL3266-1EB00-0KA0
		Frame size C	6SL3266-1EC00-0KA0
		Frame size D	6SL3262-1AD01-0DA0
		Frame size E	6SL3262-1AE01-0DA0
		Frame size F	6SL3262-1AF01-0DA0
	1 set of plug connectors for line supply, motor and braking resistor	Frame sizes AA, A	6SL3200-0ST05-0 AA0
		Frame size B	6SL3200-0ST06-0AA0
		Frame size C	6SL3200-0ST07-0AA0
	1 set of connection covers	Frame size D	6SL3200-0SM13-0AA0
		Frame size E	6SL3200-0SM14-0AA0
		Frame size F	6SL3200-0SM15-0AA0
	Fan unit for the heat sink, comprising a housing that can be plugged on with integrated fan	Frame size A	6SL3200-0SF12-0AA0
		Frame size B	6SL3200-0SF13-0AA0
		Frame size C	6SL3200-0SF14-0AA0
		Frame size D	6SL3200-0SF15-0AA0
		Frame size E	6SL3200-0SF16-0AA0
		Frame size F	6SL3200-0SF17-0AA0
	Upper fan, comprising upper cover with installed fan	Frame size AA	6SL3200-0SF38-0AA0
		Frame size A	6SL3200-0SF40-0AA0
		Frame size B	6SL3200-0SF41-0AA0
		Frame size C	6SL3200-0SF42-0AA0

Additional information is provided on the Internet:

Spares on Web (https://www.automation.siemens.com/sow?sap-language=EN)

9.2.7 Replace the fan unit for the heat sink

Inverters, frame sizes FSA … FSF have a fan unit for the heat sink. The fan unit for the heat sink is located at the lower side of the inverter.

When must the fan unit be replaced?

A defective fan unit in operation results in an overtemperature condition of the inverter. For example, the following messages indicate that the fan unit is defective:

- A05002 (air intake overtemperature)
- A05004 (rectifier overtemperature)
- F30004 (heat sink overtemperature)
- F30024 (temperature model overtemperature)
- F30025 (chip overtemperature)
- F30035 (air intake overtemperature)
- F30037 (rectifier overtemperature)

Remove fan unit, FSA ... FSC

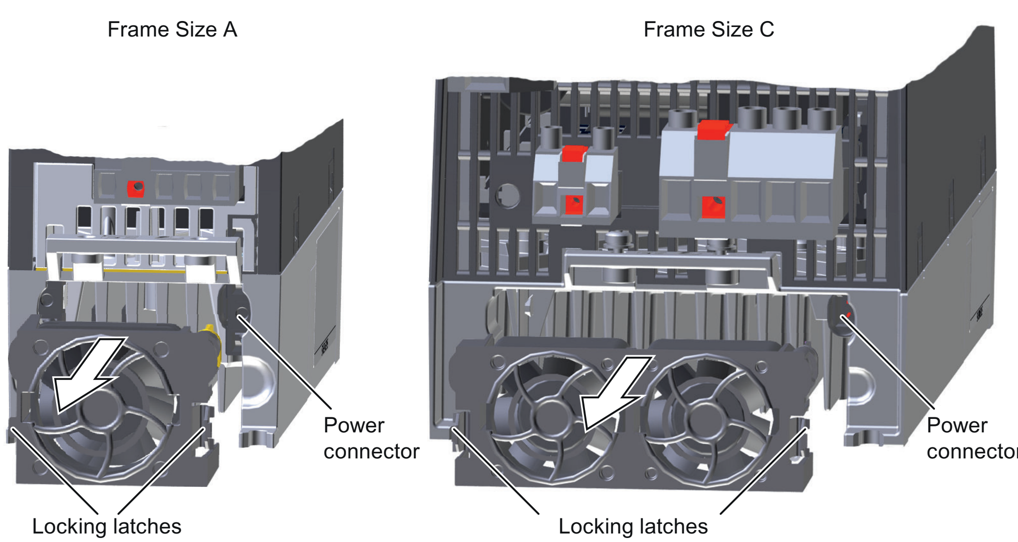


Figure 9-1 Remove fan unit for heat sink

Procedure

Proceed as follows to remove the fan unit:

1. Switch off the inverter power supply.

⚠ WARNING
Electric shock as a result of a residual charge in power components
After the power supply has been switched off, it takes up to 5 min. until the capacitors in the inverter have discharged so that the residual charge is at a non-hazardous level.
• Check the voltage at the inverter connections before you carry out any installation work.

2. Withdraw the cables for the line supply, motor and braking resistor.
3. Remove the shield plate.
4. Using your fingers, press on the sides of the fan unit locking lugs.
5. Withdraw the fan unit from the housing.

You have withdrawn the fan unit.

Install fan unit, FSA ... FSC

Procedure

Proceed as follows to install the fan unit:

1. Align the power supply connection of the fan unit to the connector in the inverter.
2. Carefully insert the fan unit into the heatsink until until the locking lugs engage.
3. Mount the shield plate.
4. Insert the cables for the line supply, motor and braking resistor.
5. Switch on the power supply for the inverter.

You have installed the fan unit.

Removing the fan unit, FSD … FSF

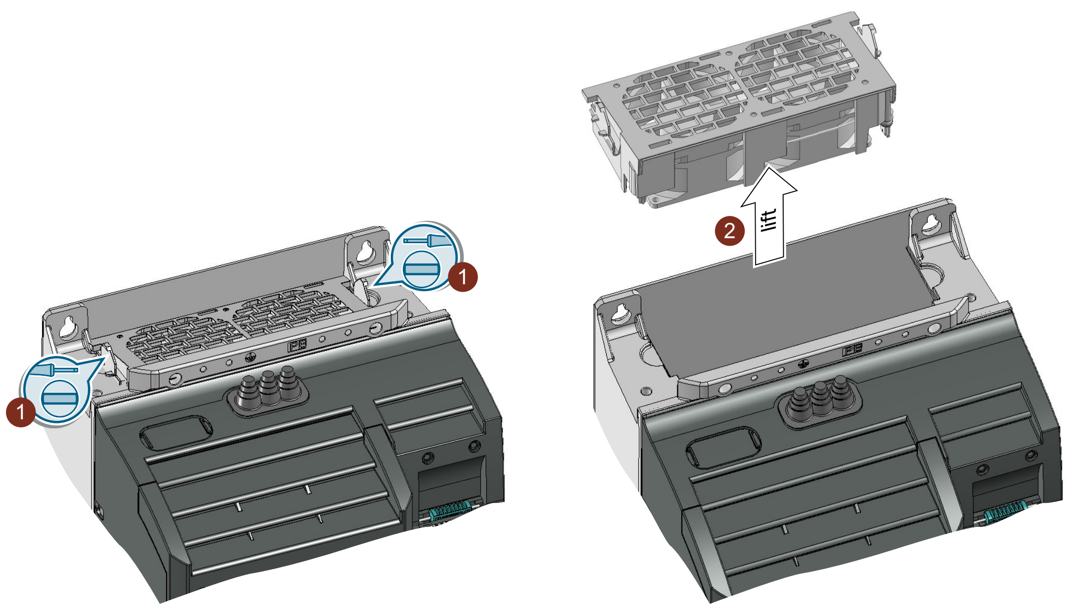
Procedure

Proceed as follows to remove the fan unit:

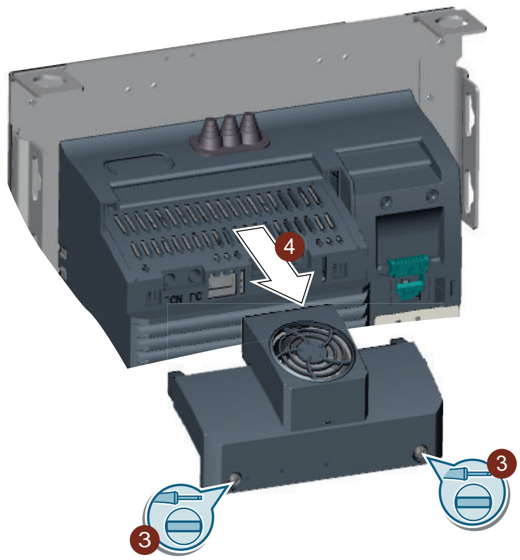
1. Switch off the inverter power supply.

⚠ WARNING
Electric shock due to residual charge in power components
After the power supply has been switched off, it takes up to 5 min. until the capacitors in the inverter have discharged so that the remaining charge is at a non-hazardous level.
• Check the voltage at the inverter connections before you carry out any installation work.

2. Remove the fan unit from the Power Module in steps ① and ② as shown in the diagram. Use a screwdriver if necessary.



3. Additionally for PT devices:
   Remove the interior fan as shown below.



■ You have withdrawn the fan unit.

Installing the fan unit, FSD … FSF

Install the fan unit in the reverse order to what is described above.

When inserting the fan unit, you establish the electrical connection between the inverter and fan unit.

9.2.8 Replacing the roof-mounted fan

Inverters, frame sizes FSAA … FSC have a roof-mounted fan. The roof-mounted fan is located at the upper side of the inverter.

When must the roof-mounted fan be replaced?

A defective roof-mounted fan in operation results in an overtemperature condition of the inverter. For example, the following messages indicate that a roof-mounted fan is defective:

- A30034 (overtemperature inside the enclosure)
- F30036 (overtemperature, inside area)
- A30049 (defective fan inside the enclosure)
- F30059 (defective fan inside the enclosure)

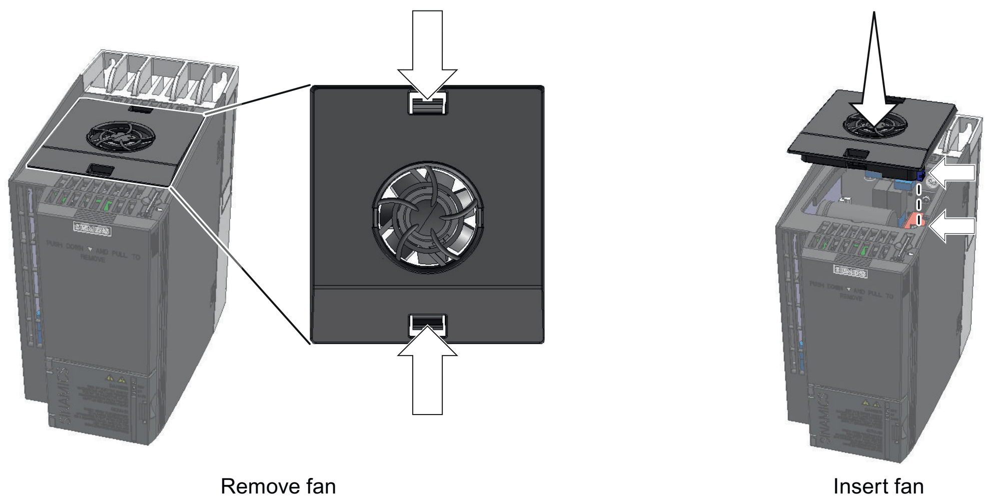


Figure 9-2 Removing and installing the interior fan

Removing the roof-mounted fan

Procedure

Proceed as follows to remove the roof-mounted fan:

1. Switch off the inverter power supply.

> ⚠ **WARNING**
>
> **Electric shock as a result of a residual charge in power components**
>
> After the power supply has been switched off, it takes up to 5 min. until the capacitors in the inverter have discharged so that the residual charge is at a non-hazardous level.
>
> - Check the voltage at the inverter connections before you carry out any installation work.

2. Using a screwdriver, press the locking lugs of the roof-mounted fan together.
3. Withdraw the roof-mounted fan from the inverter.

■ You have removed the roof-mounted fan

Installing the roof-mounted fan

Procedure

Proceed as follows to install the roof-mounted fan:

1. Align the power supply connection of the roof-mounted fan to the connector in the inverter.
2. Carefully insert the roof-mounted fan into the inverter until it engages in the inverter housing.
3. Switch on the power supply for the inverter.

■ You have inserted the roof-mounted fan.

9.3 Firmware upgrade and downgrade

Preparing a memory card for a firmware upgrade or downgrade

Procedure

Proceed as follows to prepare a memory card for the firmware upgrade or downgrade:

1. Download the required firmware to your PC from the Internet.
   Download (https://support.industry.siemens.com/cs/ww/en/view/67364620)
2. Extract the files to a directory of your choice on your PC.
3. Transfer the unzipped files into the root directory of the memory card.

USER	ATMG168.UFW	B2XX_BE.10
B2XX_BE.15	B2XX_DSP.10	B2XX_DSP.15
B2XX_S.5	B2XX_S.10	B230.10
BET200.10	BG110M.10	cbe20_1.ufw
CONTENT.TXT	F230P.BIN	F230P_BT.BIN
F240B.BIN	F240D.BIN	F240E.BIN
F250D.BIN	F250S.BIN	FET200.BIN
FG110M.BIN	FG120C.BIN	img_G120MC.lst
UPDATE.CTR	UPDATER.INF	

Figure 9-3 Example of memory card contents after the file transfer

Depending on the firmware, the filenames and the number of files may differ from the display above.
The "USER" directory does not exist on unused memory cards. After the memory card is plugged in for the first time, the inverter creates a new "USER" directory.

You have prepared the memory card for the firmware upgrade or downgrade.

Memory cards that can be ordered: Memory cards (Page 322)

Overview of firmware upgrades and downgrades

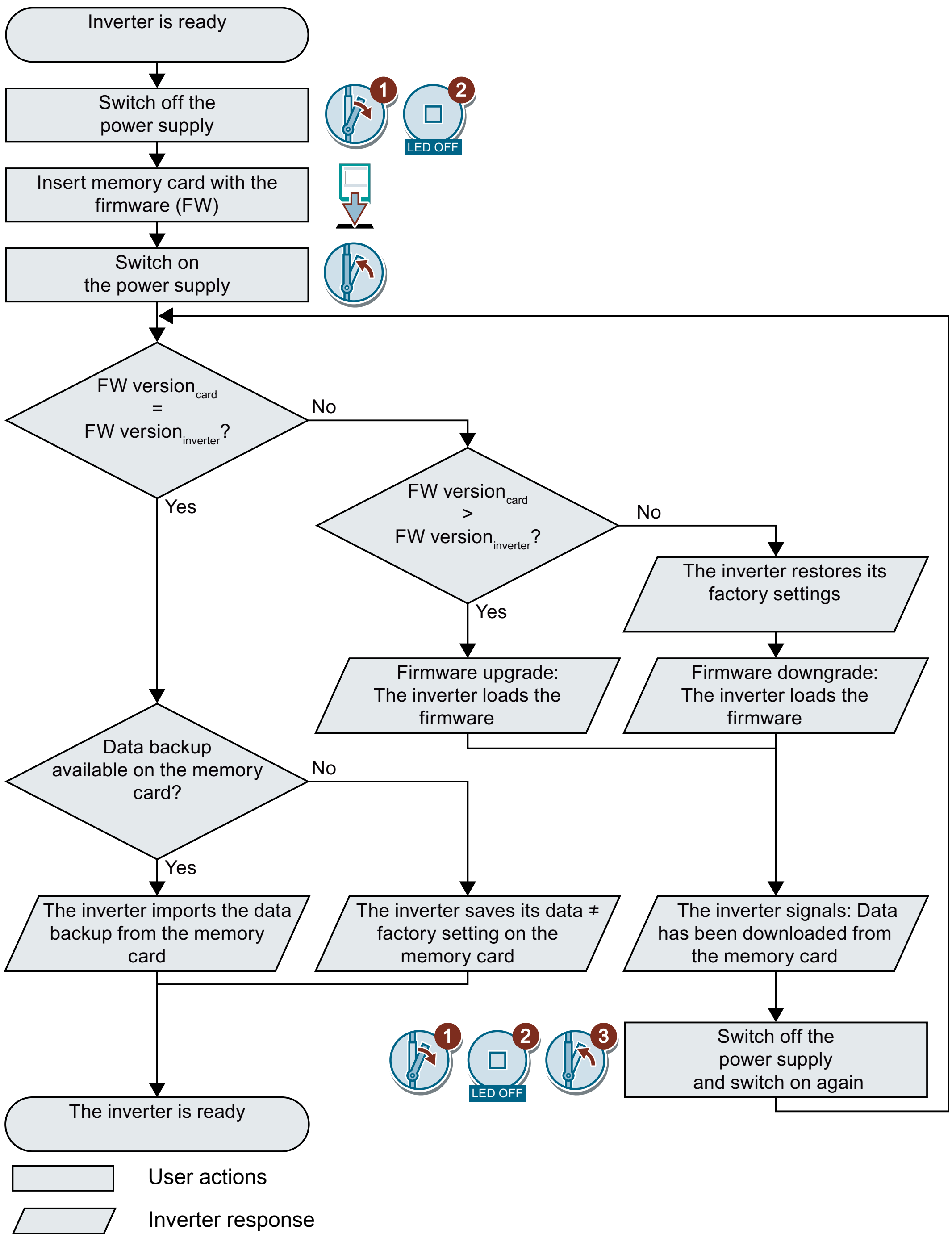


Figure 9-4 Overview of the firmware upgrade and firmware downgrade

9.3.1 Upgrading the firmware

When upgrading the firmware, you replace the inverter firmware by a later version. Only update the firmware to a later version if you require the expanded functional scope of the newer version.

Precondition

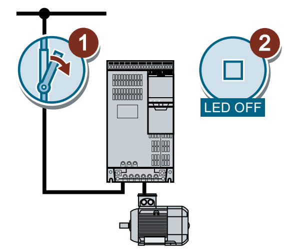
- The firmware version of your inverter is at least V4.5.
- Inverter and memory card have different firmware versions.

Procedure

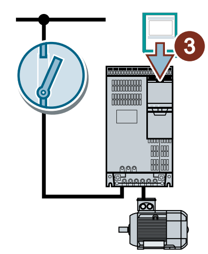
1.
2.

Proceed as follows to upgrade the inverter firmware to a later version:

1. Switch off the inverter power supply.
2. Wait until all LEDs on the inverter are dark.



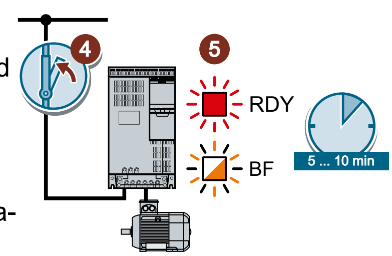
3. Insert the card with the matching firmware into the inverter slot until it latches into place.



4. Switch on the inverter power supply again.
5. The inverter transfers the firmware from the memory card into its memory.

   The transfer takes approximately 5 … 10 minutes.

   While data is being transferred, the LED RDY on the inverter stays red. The LED BF flashes orange with a variable frequency.

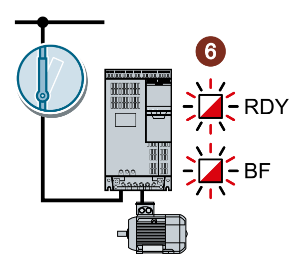


6. At the end of the transfer, the LED RDY and BF slowly flash red (0.5 Hz).

   Power supply failure during transfer

   The inverter firmware will be incomplete if the power supply fails during the transfer.

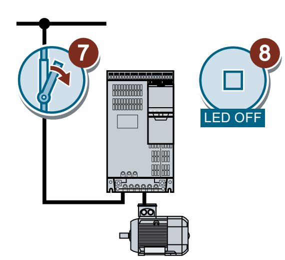
   - Start again with step 1 of the instructions.



7. Switch off the inverter power supply.
8. Wait until all LEDs on the inverter are dark.

   Decide whether you will withdraw the memory card from the inverter:

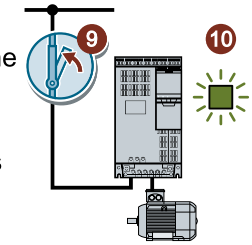
   - You remove the memory card:
     ⇒ The inverter keeps its settings.



- You leave the memory card in the inverter:
  ⇒ If the memory card still does not have a data backup of the inverter settings, in step 9 the inverter writes its settings to the memory card.
  ⇒ If the memory card already includes a data backup, the inverter imports the settings from the memory card in step 9.

9. Switch on the inverter power supply again.
10. If the firmware upgrade was successful, after several seconds the inverter LED RDY turns green.

    If the memory card is still inserted, depending on the previous content of the memory card, one of the two following cases has occurred:



- The memory card contains a data backup:
  ⇒ The inverter has taken the settings from the memory card.
- There was no data backup on the memory card:
  ⇒ The inverter has written its settings to the memory card.

■ You have upgraded the inverter firmware.

Memory cards with license

If the memory card includes a license, e.g. for the basic positioner, then the memory card must remain inserted after the firmware has been updated.

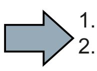
9.3.2 Firmware downgrade

When downgrading the firmware, you replace the inverter firmware by an older version. Only downgrade the firmware to an older version if, after replacing an inverter, you require the same firmware in all of your inverters.

Precondition

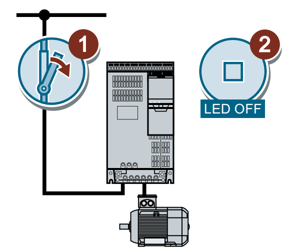
- The firmware version of your inverter is at least V4.6.
- Inverter and memory card have different firmware versions.
- You have backed up your settings on the memory card, in an Operator Panel or in a PC.

Procedure

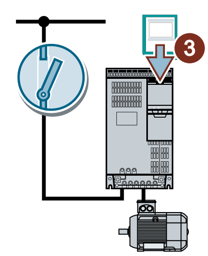


Proceed as follows to downgrade the inverter firmware to an older version:

1. Switch off the inverter power supply.
2. Wait until all LEDs on the inverter are dark.



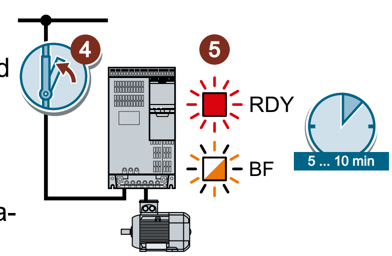
3. Insert the card with the matching firmware into the inverter slot until it latches into place.



4. Switch on the inverter power supply again.
5. The inverter transfers the firmware from the memory card into its memory.

   The transfer takes approximately 5 … 10 minutes.

   While data is being transferred, the LED RDY on the inverter stays red. The LED BF flashes orange with a variable frequency.

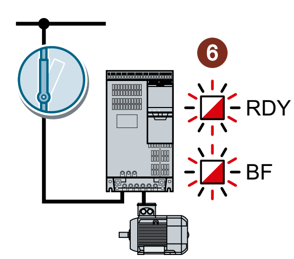


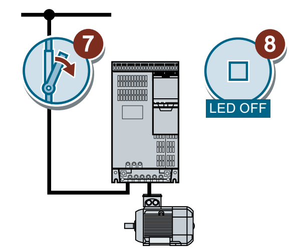
6. At the end of the transfer, the LED RDY and BF slowly flash red (0.5 Hz).

   Power supply failure during transfer

   The inverter firmware will be incomplete if the power supply fails during the transfer.

   - Start again with Step 1 of these instructions.

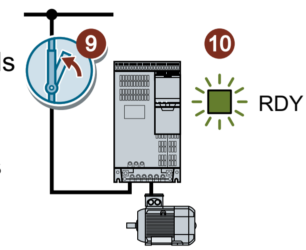




7. Switch off the inverter power supply.
8. Wait until all LEDs on the inverter are dark.

   Decide whether you want to withdraw the memory card from the inverter:

   - The memory card contains a data backup:
     ⇒ The inverter has taken the settings from the memory card.
   - There was no data backup on the memory card:
     ⇒ The inverter has the factory setting.



9. Switch on the inverter power supply again.
10. If the firmware downgrade was successful, after several seconds the inverter LED RDY turns green.

    If the memory card is still inserted, depending on the previous content of the memory card, one of the two following cases has occurred:

    - The memory card contains a data backup:
      ⇒ The inverter has taken the settings from the memory card.
    - There was no data backup on the memory card:
      ⇒ The inverter has the factory setting.
11. If the memory card did not contain a data backup of the inverter settings, then you must transfer your settings to the inverter from another data backup.

    Saving settings and series commissioning (Page 321)

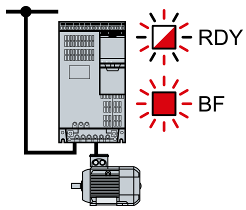
You have replaced the inverter's firmware by an older version.

Memory cards with license

If the memory card includes a license, e.g. for the basic positioner, then the memory card must remain inserted after the firmware has been updated.

9.3.3 Correcting an unsuccessful firmware upgrade or downgrade

How does the inverter signal an unsuccessful upgrade or downgrade?



The inverter signals an unsuccessful firmware upgrade or downgrade by a quickly flashing LED RDY and the lit LED BF.

Correcting an unsuccessful upgrade or downgrade

You can check the following to correct an unsuccessful firmware upgrade or downgrade:

- Does the firmware version of your inverter fulfill the preconditions?
  - For an upgrade, as a minimum V4.5.
  - For a downgrade, as a minimum V4.6.
- Have you correctly inserted the card?
- Does the card contain the correct firmware?
- Repeat the appropriate procedure.

9.4 Reduced acceptance after component replacement and firmware change

After a component has been replaced or the firmware updated, a reduced acceptance test of the safety functions must be performed.

<table>
<tr><th rowspan="2">Measure</th><th colspan="2">Reduced acceptance test</th></tr>
<tr><th>Acceptance test</th><th>Documentation</th></tr>
<tr><td>Replacing the inverter with an identical type</td><td rowspan="3">No.
Only check the direction of rotation of the motor.</td><td>• Supplement the inverter data
• Log the new checksums
• Countersignature
• Supplement the hardware version in the inverter data.</td></tr>
<tr><td>Replacing the motor with an identical pole pair number</td><td rowspan="2">No change.</td></tr>
<tr><td>Replace the gearbox with an identical ratio</td></tr>
<tr><td>Replacing safety-related I/O devices (e.g. Emergency Stop switch).</td><td>No.
Only check the control of the safety functions affected by the components that have been replaced.</td><td>No change.</td></tr>
<tr><td>Inverter firmware update.</td><td>No.</td><td>• Supplement firmware version in the inverter data
• Log the new checksums
• Countersignature.</td></tr>
</table>

9.5 If the converter no longer responds

If the inverter no longer responds

For example, when loading an incorrect file from the memory card, the inverter can go into a state where it can no longer respond to commands from the operator panel or from a higher-level control system. In this case, you must reset the inverter to its factory setting and recommission it. This inverter state is manifested in two different ways:

Case 1

- The motor is switched off.
- You cannot communicate with the inverter, either via the operator panel or other interfaces.
- The LEDs flicker and after 3 minutes the inverter has still not powered up.

Procedure

Proceed as follows to restore the inverter factory settings:

1. Remove the memory card if one is inserted in the inverter.
2. Switch off the inverter power supply.
3. Wait until all LEDs on the inverter go dark. Then switch on the inverter power supply again.
4. Repeat steps 2 and 3 as often as required until the inverter outputs fault F01018:
5. Set p0971 = 1.
6. Switch off the inverter power supply.
7. Wait until all LEDs on the inverter go dark. Then switch on the inverter power supply again. The inverter now powers up with the factory settings.
8. Recommission the inverter.

You have restored the inverter factory settings.

Case 2

- The motor is switched off.
- You cannot communicate with the inverter, either via the operator panel or other interfaces.
- The LEDs flash and are dark - this process is continually repeated.

Procedure

Proceed as follows to restore the inverter factory settings:

1. Remove the memory card if one is inserted in the inverter.
2. Switch off the inverter power supply.
3. Wait until all LEDs on the inverter go dark. Then switch on the inverter power supply again.
4. Wait until the LEDs flash orange.
5. Repeat steps 2 and 3 as often as required until the inverter outputs fault F01018.
6. Now set p0971 = 1.

7. Switch off the inverter power supply.
8. Wait until all LEDs on the inverter go dark. Then switch on the inverter power supply again. The inverter now powers up with the factory settings.
9. Recommission the inverter.

You have restored the inverter factory settings.

The motor cannot be switched-on

If the motor cannot be switched-on, then check the following:

- Is a fault present?
  If there is, then remove the fault cause and acknowledge the fault.
- Has the inverter been completely commissioned p0010 = 0?
  If not, the inverter is e.g. still in a commissioning state.
- Is the inverter reporting the "ready to start" status (r0052.0 = 1)?
- Is the inverter missing some enable signals (r0046)?
- How does the inverter receive its setpoint and commands?
  Digital inputs, analog inputs or fieldbus?

Technical data 10

10.1 Technical data of inputs and outputs

Feature	Data
24 V power supply	There are two options regarding the 24 V supply. • The inverter generates its 24 V power supply from the line voltage • The inverter obtains is 24 V power supply via terminals 31 and 32 with 20.4 … 28.8 VDC. Typical current drain: 0.5 A
Output voltages	• 24 V (max. 100 mA) • 10 V ± 0.5 V (max. 10 mA)
Setpoint resolution	0.01 Hz
Digital inputs	• 6 digital inputs, DI 0 … DI 5, isolated; • Voltage: ≤ 30 V • Voltage for "low" state: < 5 V • Voltage for "high" state: > 11 V • Current for 24 V input voltage: 2.7 mA … 4.7 mA • Minimum current for the "high" state: 1.8 mA … 3.9 mA • Compatible to SIMATIC outputs • Response time for debounce time p0724 = 0. 5.5 ms ± 1 ms
Analog input (differential input, 12-bit resolution)	• AI 0 switchable: – 0 V … 10 V or -10 V … +10 V: Typical current drain: 0.1 mA, maximum voltage 35 V – 0 mA … 20 mA: Maximum voltage 10 V, maximum current 80 mA • Response time: 10 ms ± 2 ms • If AI 0 has been configured as additional digital input: Maximum voltage < 35 V, low < 1.6 V, high > 4.0 V, 13 ms ± 1 ms response time for debounce time p0724 = 0.
Digital outputs /relay outputs	• DO 0: Relay output, 30 V DC / ≤ 0.5 A for resistive load • DO 1: Transistor output, 30 V DC / ≤ 0.5 A for ohmic loads, reverse polarity protection. • Output current from DO1 for "low" state: ≤ 0.5 mA • Update time of all DO: 2 ms
Analog output	• AO 0 switchable: – 0 V … 10 V – 0 mA … 20 mA – 16-bit resolution – Update time: 4 ms

Feature	Data
Temperature sensor	• PTC: Short-circuit monitoring < 22 Ω, switching threshold 1650 Ω • KTY84: Short-circuit monitoring < 50 Ω, wire-breakage > 2120 Ω • Pt1000: Short-circuit monitoring < 603 Ω, wire-breakage > 2120 Ω • Sensor with isolated contact
Safety input	• If you enable safety function STO, then DI 4 and DI 5 form a safety-related input. • Input voltage ≤ 30 V, 5.5 mA • Response time: – When the debounce time p9651 > 0: Typical 5 ms + p9651, worst case 15 ms + p9651 – When debounce time = 0: Typical 6 ms, worst case 16 ms
PFH (Probability of Failure per Hour)	Probability of failure of the safety functions: 5 × 10E-8
USB interface	Mini-B

10.2 High Overload and Low Overload

Permissible inverter overload

The inverter has two different power data: "**Low Overload**" (LO) and "**High Overload**" (HO), depending on the expected load.

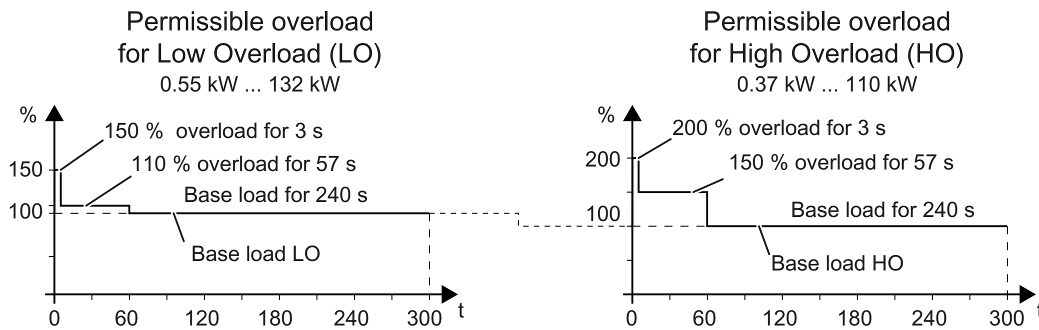


Figure 10-1 Duty cycles, "High Overload" and "Low Overload"

10.3 Overload capability of the inverter

Overload capability is the property of the inverter to temporarily supply a current that is higher than the rated current to accelerate a load. Two typical load cycles are defined to clearly demonstrate the overload capability: "Low Overload" and "High Overload"

Definitions

Base load

Constant load between the accelerating phases of the drive

Low Overload

- **LO base load input current**
  Permissible input current for a "Low Overload" load cycle
- **LO base load output current**
  Permissible output current for a "Low Overload" load cycle
- **LO base load power**
  Rated power based on the LO base load output current

High Overload

- **HO base load input current**
  Permissible input current for a "High Overload" load cycle
- **HO base load output current**
  Permissible output current for a "High Overload" load cycle
- **HO base load power**
  Rated power based on the HO base load output current

If not specified otherwise, the power and current data in the technical data always refer to a load cycle according to Low Overload.

We recommend the "SIZER" engineering software to select the inverter.

You will find additional information about SIZER on the Internet: Download SIZER (http://support.automation.siemens.com/WW/view/en/10804987/130000).

Load cycles and typical applications:

"Low Overload" load cycle

The "Low Overload" load cycle assumes a uniform base load with low requirements placed on brief accelerating p phases. Typical applications when designing according to "Low Overload" include:

- Pumps, fans and compressors
- Wet or dry blasting technology
- Mills, mixers, kneaders, crushers, agitators
- Basic spindles
- Rotary kilns
- Extruders

"High Overload" load cycle

The "High Overload" load cycle permits, for reduced base load, dynamic accelerating phases. Typical applications when designing according to "High Overload" include:

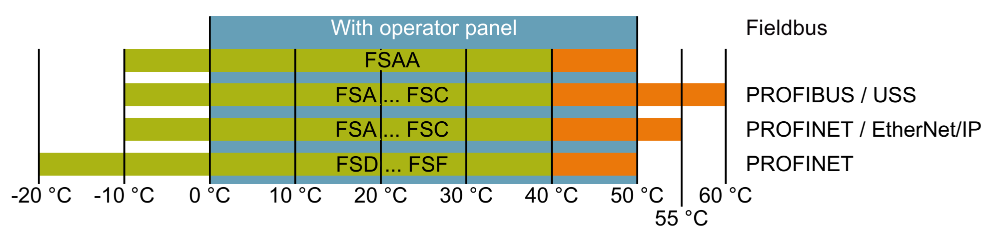
- Horizontal and vertical conveyor technology (conveyor belts, roller conveyors, chain conveyors)
- Centrifuges
- Escalators/moving stairways
- Lifters/Lowerers
- Elevators
- Gantry cranes
- Cable railways
- Storage and retrieval machines

10.4 General inverter technical data

Feature	Data
Line supply voltage	3-phase 380 … 480 VAC + 10% - 20% The actual permissible line voltage depends on the installation altitude.
Input frequency	47 Hz … 63 Hz
Output voltage	3 AC 0 V … line voltage × 0.95
Degree of protection	IP20, installation in a control cabinet
Short-circuit current rating (SCCR)	100 kA
Ambient temperature during operation	0 °C … 40 °C no restrictions
	0 °C … 50 °C for reduced output current Restrictions for special ambient conditions (Page 414)
	An extended ambient temperature is possible and depends on the inverter frame size and also the options used. Technical data dependent on the power (Page 406)
Relative humidity	< 95%. Condensation is not permissible.
Installation altitude	Up to 1000 m above sea level Higher installation altitudes are permissible for a reduced output current.
Ambient temperature when stored	-40 °C … +70 °C (-40 °F … 158 °F)
Shock and vibration	Long-term storage in the transport packaging according to Class 1M2 according to EN 60721-3-1: 1997 Transport in the transport packaging according to Class 2M3 according to EN 60721-3-2: 1997 Vibration in operation according to Class 3M2 according to EN 60721-3-3: 1995

10.5 Technical data dependent on the power

Feature	Data	
	FSAA … FSC	**FSD … FSF**
Required line impedance U_K	1 % ≤ U_K < 4 % For U_K < 1 %, we recommend a line reactor or an inverter with the next higher power rating.	U_K < 4 % A line reactor is not required.
Power factor λ	0.7 without line reactor for U_K ≥ 1 % 0.85 with line reactor for U_K < 1 %	> 0.9
Pulse frequency	Factory setting: 4 kHz	Factory setting: 4 kHz for inverters with an LO base load power < 75 kW 2 kHz for inverters with an LO base load power ≥ 75 kW
	Change in 2-kHz steps: 2 kHz … 16 kHz	Change in 2-kHz steps: 2 kHz … 16 kHz for inverters with an LO base load power < 55 kW 2 kHz … 8 kHz for inverters with an LO base load power = 55 kW … 90 kW 2 kHz … 4 kHz for inverters with an LO base load power ≥ 110 kW
	If you increase the pulse frequency above the factory setting then the inverter reduces the maximum output current.	
Permissible ambient temperature	The permissible ambient temperature depends on the following conditions: • Frame size (FS) of the inverter • Inverter fieldbus interface • Operator panel	



Permissible ambient temperature without reducing the output current

Permissible ambient temperature when reducing the output current

Permissible ambient temperature with the operator panel inserted

Restrictions for special ambient conditions (Page 414)

Device-dependent technical data

The inverter input currents specified in the following are applicable for an input voltage of 400 V.

For inverters FSAA … FSCC, a line supply with U_K = 1 % has been assumed, referred to the inverter power rating. When using a line reactor, the currents are reduced by several percentage points.

Table 10-1 Frame size AA, 3-phase 380 … 480 VAC, +10%, -20%

Article No. without filter **Article No. with filter**	**6SL3210-1KE11-8U . 2** **6SL3210-1KE11-8A . 2**	**6SL3210-1KE12-3U . 2** **6SL3210-1KE12-3A . 2**	**6SL3210-1KE13-2U . 2** **6SL3210-1KE13-2A . 2**
Rated/LO base load power	0.55 kW	0.75 kW	1.1 kW
Rated/LO base load input current	2.3 A	2.9 A	4.1 A
Rated/LO base load output current	1.7 A	2.2 A	3.1 A
HO base load power	0.37 kW	0.55 kW	0.75 kW
HO base load input current	1.9 A	2.5 A	3.2 A
HO base load output current	1.3 A	1.7 A	2.2 A
Power loss with filter	41 W	45 W	54 W
Power loss without filter	40 W	44 W	53 W
Required cooling air flow	5 l/s	5 l/s	5 l/s
Weight with filter	1.4 kg	1.4 kg	1.4 kg
Weight without filter	1.2 kg	1.2 kg	1.2 kg

Table 10-2 Frame size AA, 3-phase 380 … 480 VAC, +10%, -20%

Article No. without filter **Article No. with filter**	**6SL3210-1KE14-3U . 2** **6SL3210-1KE14-3A . 2**	**6SL3210-1KE15-8U . 2** **6SL3210-1KE15-8A . 2**	
Rated/LO base load power	1.5 kW	2.2 kW	
Rated/LO base load input current	5.5 A	7.4 A	
Rated/LO base load output current	4.1 A	5.6 A	
HO base load power	1.1 kW	1.5 kW	
HO base load input current	4.5 A	6.0 A	
HO base load output current	3.1 A	4.1 A	
Power loss with filter	73 W	91 W	
Power loss without filter	72 W	89 W	
Required cooling air flow	5 l/s	5 l/s	
Weight with filter	1.4 kg	1.9 kg	
Weight without filter	1.2 kg	1.7 kg	

Table 10-3 Frame size A, 3-phase 380 … 480 VAC, +10%, -20%

Article No. without filter **Article No. with filter**	**6SL3210-1KE11-8U . 1** **6SL3210-1KE11-8A . 1**	**6SL3210-1KE12-3U . 1** **6SL3210-1KE12-3A . 1**	**6SL3210-1KE13-2U . 1** **6SL3210-1KE13-2A . 1**
Rated/LO base load power	0.55 kW	0.75 kW	1.1 kW
Rated/LO base load input current	2.3 A	2.9 A	4.1 A
Rated/LO base load output current	1.7 A	2.2 A	3.1 A

Article No. without filter Article No. with filter	6SL3210-1KE11-8U . 1 6SL3210-1KE11-8A . 1	6SL3210-1KE12-3U . 1 6SL3210-1KE12-3A . 1	6SL3210-1KE13-2U . 1 6SL3210-1KE13-2A . 1
HO base load power	0.37 kW	0.55 kW	0.75 kW
HO base load input current	1.9 A	2.5 A	3.2 A
HO base load output current	1.3 A	1.7 A	2.2 A
Power loss with filter	41 W	45 W	54 W
Power loss without filter	40 W	44 W	53 W
Required cooling air flow	5 l/s	5 l/s	5 l/s
Weight with filter	1.9 kg	1.9 kg	1.9 kg
Weight without filter	1.7 kg	1.7 kg	1.7 kg

Table 10-4 Frame size A, 3-phase 380 … 480 VAC, +10%, -20%

Article No. without filter Article No. with filter	6SL3210-1KE14-3U . 1 6SL3210-1KE14-3A . 1	6SL3210-1KE15-8U . 1 6SL3210-1KE15-8A . 1
Rated/LO base load power	1.5 kW	2.2 kW
Rated/LO base load input current	5.5 A	7.4 A
Rated/LO base load output current	4.1 A	5.6 A
HO base load power	1.1 kW	1.5 kW
HO base load input current	4.5 A	6.0 A
HO base load output current	3.1 A	4.1 A
Power loss with filter	73 W	91 W
Power loss without filter	72 W	89 W
Required cooling air flow	5 l/s	5 l/s
Weight with filter	1.9 kg	1.9 kg
Weight without filter	1.7 kg	1.7 kg

Table 10-5 Frame size A, 3-phase 380 … 480 VAC, +10%, -20%

Article No. without filter Article No. with filter	6SL3210-1KE17-5U . 1 6SL3210-1KE17-5A . 1	6SL3210-1KE18-8U . 1 6SL3210-1KE18-8A . 1
Rated/LO base load power	3.0 kW	4.0 kW
Rated/LO base load input current	9.5 A	11.4 A
Rated/LO base load output current	7.3 A	8.8 A
HO base load power	2.2 kW	3.0 kW
HO base load input current	8.2 A	10.6 A
HO base load output current	5.6 A	7.3 A
Power loss with filter	136 W	146 W
Power loss without filter	132 W	141 W
Required cooling air flow	5 l/s	5 l/s
Weight with filter	1.9 kg	1.9 kg
Weight without filter	1.7 kg	1.7 kg

Table 10-6 Frame size B, 3-phase 380 … 480 VAC, +10%, -20%

Article No. without filter	**6SL3210-1KE21-3U . 1**	**6SL3210- 1KE21-7U . 1**
Article No. with filter	**6SL3210-1KE21-3A . 1**	**6SL3210-1KE21-7A . 1**
Rated/LO base load power	5.5 kW	7.5 kW
Rated/LO base load input current	16.5 A	21.5 A
Rated/LO base load output current	12.5 A	16.5 A
HO base load power	4.0 kW	5.5 kW
HO base load input current	12.8 A	18.2 A
HO base load output current	8.8 A	12.5 A
Power loss with filter	177 W	244 W
Power loss without filter	174 W	240 W
Required cooling air flow	9 l/s	9 l/s
Weight with filter	2.5 kg	2.5 kg
Weight without filter	2.3 kg	2.3 kg

Table 10-7 Frame size C, 3-phase 380 … 480 VAC, +10%, -20%

Article No. without filter	**6SL3210-1KE22-6U . 1**	**6SL3210-1KE23-2U . 1**	**6SL3210-1KE23-8U . 1**
Article No. with filter	**6SL3210-1KE22-6A . 1**	**6SL3210-1KE23-2A . 1**	**6SL3210-1KE23-8A . 1**
Rated/LO base load power	11 kW	15 kW	18.5 kW
Rated/LO base load input current	33.0 A	40.6 A	48.2 A
Rated/LO base load output current	25 A	31 A	37 A
HO base load power	7.5 kW	11 kW	15 kW
HO base load input current	24.1 A	36.4 A	45.2 A
HO base load output current	16.5 A	25 A	31 A
Power loss with filter	349 W	435 W	503 W
Power loss without filter	344 W	429 W	493 W
Required cooling air flow	18 l/s	18 l/s	18 l/s
Weight with filter	4.7 kg	4.7 kg	4.7 kg
Weight without filter	4.4 kg	4.4 kg	4.4 kg

Table 10-8 Frame size D, 3 AC 380 V … 480 V, +10 %, -20 %

Article No. without filter	**6SL3210-1KE24-4U . 1**	**6SL3210-1KE26-0U . 1**	**6SL3210-1KE27-0U . 1**
Article No. with filter	**6SL3210-1KE24-4A . 1**	**6SL3210-1KE26-0A . 1**	**6SL3210-1KE27-0A . 1**
Rated/LO base load power	22 kW	30 kW	37 kW
Rated/LO base load input current	41 A	53 A	64 A
Rated/LO base load output current	43 A	58 A	68 A
HO base load power	18.5 kW	22 kW	30 kW
HO base load input current	39 A	44 A	61 A
HO base load output current	37 A	43 A	58 A
Power loss with filter	650 W	933 W	1.032 kW

Article No. without filter Article No. with filter	6SL3210-1KE24-4U . 1 6SL3210-1KE24-4A . 1	6SL3210-1KE26-0U . 1 6SL3210-1KE26-0A . 1	6SL3210-1KE27-0U . 1 6SL3210-1KE27-0A . 1
Power loss without filter	647 W	927 W	1.024 kW
Required cooling air flow	55 l/s	55 l/s	55 l/s
Weight with filter	19 kg	19 kg	20 kg
Weight without filter	17 kg	17 kg	18 kg

Table 10-9 Frame size D, 3 AC 380 V … 480 V, +10 %, -20 %

Article no. without filter Article no. with filter	6SL3210-1KE28-4U . 1 6SL3210-1KE28-4A . 1
LO base load power	45 kW
LO base load input current	76 A
LO base load output current	82.5 A
HO base load power	37 kW
HO base load input current	69 A
HO base load output current	68 A
Power loss with filter	1.304 kW
Power loss without filter	1.291 kW
Required cooling air flow	55 l/s
Weight with filter	20 kg
Weight without filter	18 kg

Table 10-10 Frame size E, 3 AC 380 V … 480 V, +10 %, -20 %

Article no. without filter Article no. with filter	6SL3210-1KE31-1U . 1 6SL3210-1KE31-1A . 1
LO base load power	55 kW
LO base load input current	96 A
LO base load output current	103 A
HO base load power	45 kW
HO base load input current	85 A
HO base load output current	83 A
Power loss with filter	1.476 kW
Power loss without filter	1.466 kW
Required cooling air flow	83 l/s
Weight with filter	29 kg
Weight without filter	27 kg

Table 10-11 Frame size F, 3 AC 380 V … 480 V

Article no. without filter **Article no. with filter**	**6SL3210-1KE31-4U . 1** **6SL3210-1KE31-4A . 1**	**6SL3210-1KE31-7U . 1** **6SL3210-1KE31-7A . 1**	**6SL3210-1KE32-1U . 1** **6SL3210-1KE32-1A . 1**
LO base load power	75 kW	90 kW	110 kW
LO base load input current	134 A	156 A	187 A
LO base load output current	136 A	164 A	201 A
HO base load power	55 kW	75 kW	90 kW
HO base load input current	112 A	144 A	169 A
HO base load output current	103 A	136 A	164 A
Power loss with filter	1.474 kW	1.885 kW	2.245 kW
Power loss without filter	1.456 kW	1.859 kW	2.223 kW
Required cooling air flow	153 l/s	153 l/s	153 l/s
Weight with filter	62 kg	62 kg	66 kg
Weight without filter	59 kg	59 kg	64 kg

Table 10-12 Frame size F, 3 AC 380 V … 480 V

Article no. without filter **Article no. with filter**	**6SL3210-1KE32-4U . 1** **6SL3210-1KE32-4A . 1**
LO base load power	132 kW
LO base load input current	221 A
LO base load output current	237 A
HO base load power	110 kW
HO base load input current	207 A
HO base load output current	201 A
Power loss with filter	2.803 kW
Power loss without filter	2.772 kW
Required cooling air flow	153 l/s
Weight with filter	66 kg
Weight without filter	64 kg

10.6 Data regarding the power loss in partial load operation

You can find data regarding power loss in partial load operation in the Internet:

Partial load operation (http://support.automation.siemens.com/WW/view/en/94059311)

10.7 Current reduction depending on pulse frequency

Interrelationship between pulse frequency and rated output current

Table 10-13 Current reduction depending on the pulse frequency [1)]

Rated power based on LO	Rated output current for a pulse frequency of							
	2 kHz	**4 kHz**	**6 kHz**	**8 kHz**	**10 kHz**	**12 kHz**	**14 kHz**	**16 kHz**
0.55 kW	1.7 A	1.7 A	1.4 A	1.2 A	1.0 A	0.9 A	0.8 A	0.7 A
0.75 kW	2.2 A	2.2 A	1.9 A	1.5 A	1.3 A	1.1 A	1.0 A	0.9 A
1.1 kW	3.1 A	3.1 A	2.6 A	2.2 A	1.9 A	1.6 A	1.4 A	1.2 A
1.5 kW	4.1 A	4.1 A	3.5 A	2.9 A	2.5 A	2.1 A	1.8 A	1.6 A
2.2 kW	5.6 A	5.6 A	4.8 A	3.9 A	3.4 A	2.8 A	2.5 A	2.2 A
3.0 kW	7.3 A	7.3 A	6.2 A	5.1 A	4.4 A	3.7 A	3.3 A	2.9 A
4.0 kW	8.8 A	8.8 A	7.5 A	6.2 A	5.3 A	4.4 A	4.0 A	3.5 A
5.5 kW	12.5 A	12.5 A	10.6 A	8.8 A	7.5 A	6.3 A	5.6 A	5.0 A
7.5 kW	16.5 A	16.5 A	14.0 A	11.6 A	9.9 A	8.3 A	7.4 A	6.6 A
11.0 kW	25.0 A	25.0 A	21.3 A	17.5 A	15.0 A	12.5 A	11.3 A	10.0 A
15.0 kW	31.0 A	31.0 A	26.4 A	21.7 A	18.6 A	15.5 A	14.0 A	12.4 A
18.5 kW	37.0 A	37.0 A	31.5 A	25.9 A	22.2 A	18.5 A	16.7 A	14.8 A
22 kW	43 A	43 A	36.6 A	30.1 A	25.8 A	21.5 A	19.4 A	17.2 A
30 kW	58 A	58 A	49.3 A	40.6 A	34.8 A	29 A	26.1 A	23.2 A
37 kW	68 A	68 A	57.8 A	47.6 A	40.8 A	34 A	30.6 A	27.2 A
45 kW	82.5 A	82.5 A	70.1 A	57.8 A	49.5 A	41.3 A	37.1 A	33 A
55 kW	103 A	103 A	87.6 A	72.1 A	---	---	---	---
75 kW	136 A	136 A	115.6 A	95.2 A	---	---	---	---
90 kW	164 A	164 A	139.4 A	114.8 A	---	---	---	---
110 kW	201 A	140.7 A	---	---	---	---	---	---
132 kW	237 A	165.9 A	---	---	---	---	---	---

[1)] The permissible motor cable length depends on the cable type and the selected pulse frequency.

10.8 Restrictions for special ambient conditions

Permissible line supplies dependent on the installation altitude

- For installation altitudes ≤ 2000 m above sea level, it is permissible to connect the inverter to any of the line supplies that are specified for it.
- For installation altitudes 2000 m ... 4000 m above sea level, the following applies:
  - Connection to a TN line system with grounded neutral point is permissible.
  - TN systems with grounded line conductor are not permitted.
  - The TN line system with grounded neutral point can also be supplied using an isolation transformer.
  - The phase-to-phase voltage does not have to be reduced.

Current derating depending on the installation altitude

The permissible inverter output current is reduced above an installation altitude of 1000 m.

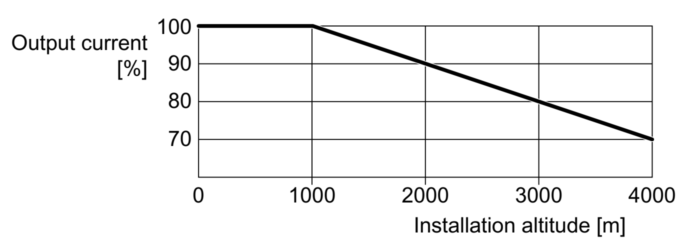


Figure 10-2 Current derating depending on the installation altitude, FSAA … FSC

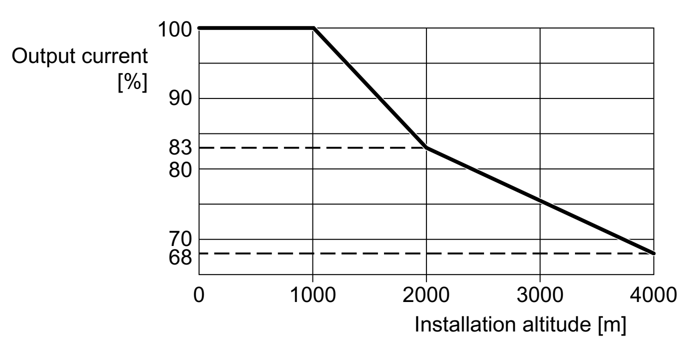


Figure 10-3 Current derating depending on the installation altitude, FSD … FSF

Temperature reduction as a function of the installation altitude

The permissible inverter ambient temperature is reduced above an installation altitude of 1000 m.

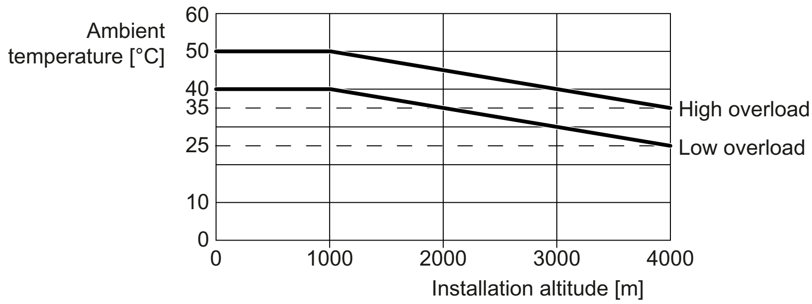


Figure 10-4 Temperature reduction as a function of the installation altitude

Maximum current at low speeds

NOTICE
Negative impact on the inverter service life as a result of overheating.
Loading the inverter with a high output current and at the same time with a low output frequency can cause the current-conducting components in the inverter to overheat. Excessively high temperatures can damage the inverter or have a negative impact on the inverter service life. • Never operate the inverter continuously with an output frequency = 0 Hz. • Only operate the inverter in the permissible operating range.

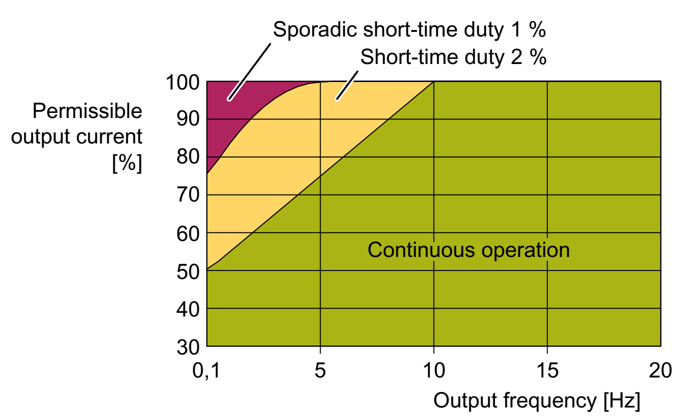


Figure 10-5 Permissible operating range of the inverter

- Continuous operation:
  Operating state that is permissible for the complete operating time.
- Short-time duty:
  Operating state that is permissible for less than 2 % of the operating time.
- Sporadic short-time duty:
  Operating state that is permissible for less than 1 % of the operating time.

Derating as a function of the ambient temperature

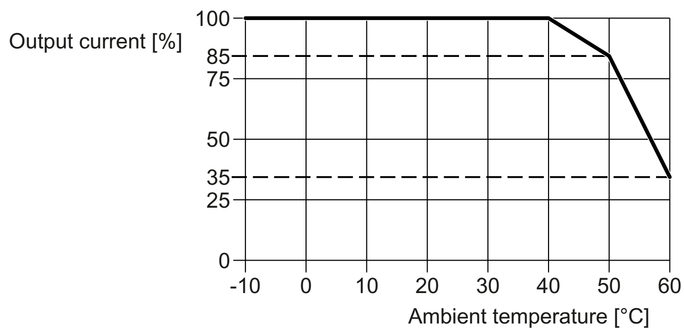


Figure 10-6 Permissible output current as a function of the ambient temperature, FSAA … FSC

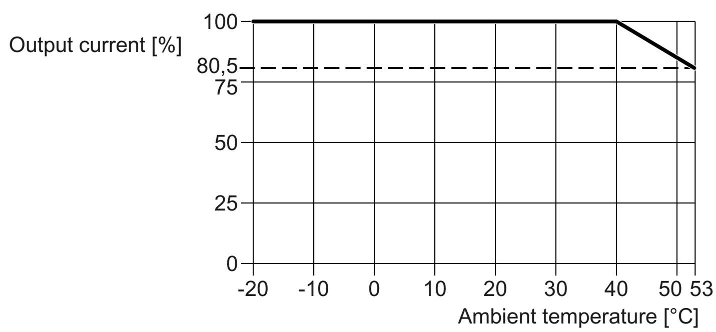


Figure 10-7 Permissible output current as a function of the ambient temperature, FSD … FSF

Derating as a function of the operating voltage

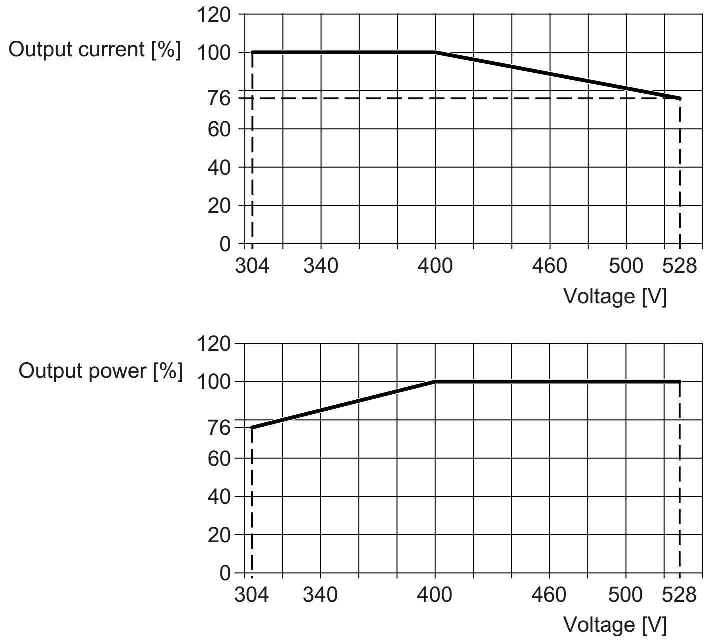


Figure 10-8 Current and voltage derating as a function of the input voltage

10.9 Electromagnetic compatibility of the inverter

EMC (electromagnetic compatibility) means that the devices function satisfactorily without interfering with other devices and without being disrupted by other devices. EMC applies when the emitted interference (emission level) and the interference immunity are matched with each other.

The product standard IEC/EN 61800-3 describes the EMC requirements placed on "Variable-speed drive systems".

A variable-speed drive system (or Power Drive System PDS) consists of the inverter as well as the associated electric motors and encoders including the connecting cables.

The driven machine is not part of the drive system.

Note

PDS as component of machines or systems

When you install PDS into machines or systems, additional measures may be required so that the product standards of these machines or systems is complied with. The machine or system builder is responsible for taking these measures.

Environments and categories

Environments

IEC/EN 61800-3 makes a distinction between the "first environment" and "second environment" - and defines different requirements for these environments.

- **First environment:**
  Residential buildings or locations at which the PDS is directly connected to a public low-voltage supply without intermediate transformer.
- **Second environment:**
  All industrial plant/systems or locations that are connected to the public grid through their own, dedicated transformer.

Categories

IEC/EN 61800-3 makes a distinction between four drive system categories:

- **Category C1:**
  Drive systems for rated voltages < 1000 V for unrestricted use in the "first environment"
- **Category C2:**
  Stationary PDS for rated voltages < 1000 V for operation in the "second environment".
  Appropriately qualified personnel are required to install the PDS. An appropriately trained and qualified person has the necessary experience for installing and commissioning a PDS, including the associated EMC aspects.
  Additional measures are required for operation in the "first environment".

- **Category C3:**
  PDS for rated voltages < 1000 V - only for operation in the "second environment".
- **Category C4:**
  PDS for IT line supplies for operation in complex systems in the "second environment".
  An EMC plan is required.

Second environment - category C4

An unfiltered inverter corresponds to category C4.

EMC measures in the "second environment", category C4, are implemented on the basis of an EMC plan at the system level.

EMC-compliant setup of the machine or plant (Page 41).

Second environment - category C3

Immunity

The inverters comply with the requirements of the standard.

Interference emission for unfiltered inverters

Inverters with integrated filter comply with the requirements of the standard.

Cable-conducted, high-frequency noise emission of an unfiltered inverter

Either install an external filter for the inverter - or install corresponding filters at the system level.

Field-conducted, high-frequency noise emission of an unfiltered inverter

When installed professionally in accordance with EMC guidelines, the inverters fulfill the requirements of the standard.

Second environment - category C2

Immunity

The inverter is suitable for the "second environment".

Emitted interference

The inverters fulfill the requirements of the standard when the following conditions are satisfied.

- You are using an inverter with an integrated filter.
- The inverter is connected to a TN or TT line supply with grounded neutral point.
- You use a shielded motor cable with low capacitance.
- You maintain the permissible motor cable length.
  Maximum permissible motor cable length (Page 77)

- Inverter and motor have been installed in compliance with EMC, carefully taking into consideration the installation notes.
- Condition for the inverter pulse frequency:
  - FSAA … FSC: Pulse frequency < 4 kHz
  - FSD … FSF: The pulse frequency is not higher than the value set in the factory.

See also

Technical data dependent on the power (Page 406)

First environment - category C2

To enable you to use the inverter in the first environment, during installation you must observe the limit values for the **cable-conducted, low-frequency disturbance variables (harmonics)** in addition to the limit values for the "second environment - category C2".

Harmonic currents (Page 421)

Contact your system operator to obtain approval for an installation in the first environment.

10.9.1 Harmonic currents

Table 10-14 Typical harmonic currents as a % referred to the LO input current for U_K 1%

Harmonic number	5th	7th	11th	13th	17th	19th	23rd	25th
Harmonic [%] for FSAA … FSC referred to the LO input current for U_K = 1 %	54	39	11	5.5	5	3	2	2
Harmonic [%] for FSD … FSF referred to the LO input current	37	21	7	5	4	3	3	2

10.9.2 EMC limit values in South Korea

이 기기는 업무용(A 급) 전자파적합기기로서 판매자 또는 사용자는 이 점을 주의하시기 바라며, 가정외의 지역에서 사용하는 것을 목적으로 합니다.
For sellers or users, please keep in mind that this device is an A-grade electromagnetic wave device. This device is intended to be used in areas other than home.

The EMC limit values to be observed for Korea correspond to the limit values of the EMC product standard for variable-speed electric drives EN 61800-3 of category C2 or the limit value class A, Group 1 to KN11.

By implementing appropriate additional measures, the limit values according to category C2 or limit value class A, Group 1, are observed.

Additional measures, such as the use of an additional RFI suppression filter (EMC filter), may be necessary.

In addition, measures for EMC-compliant configuration of the plant or system are described in detail in this manual and in the Configuration manualEMC installation guideline (http://support.automation.siemens.com/WW/view/en/60612658).

The final statement on compliance with the applicable standard is given by the respective label attached to the individual device.

10.10 Accessories

10.10.1 Line reactor

The assignment of a suitable line reactor to the inverter is provided in the following Chapter:

Optional components (Page 36)

Dimensions and mounting dimensions:

Mounting base components (Page 47)
Mounting the line reactor (Page 57)

Table 10-15 Technical data of the line reactors

Article no.	**6SE6400-3CC00-2AD3**	**6SE6400-3CC00-4AD3**	**6SE6400-3CC00-6AD3**
Inductance	2.5 mH	2.5 mH	2.5 mH
Power loss	25 W	25 W	40 W
Degree of protection	IP20	IP20	IP20
Weight	1.3 kg	1.4 kg	1.4 kg

Table 10-16 Technical data of the line reactors

Article no.	**6SL3203-0CE13-2AA0**	**6SL3203-0CE21-0AA0**	**6SL3203-0CE21-8AA0**
Inductance	2.5 mH	2.5 mH	0.5 mH
Power loss	25 W	40 W	55 W
Degree of protection	IP20	IP20	IP20
Weight	1.1 kg	2.1 kg	3.0 kg

Table 10-17 Technical data of the line reactors

Article no.	**6SL3203-0CE23-8AA0**
Inductance	0.3 mH
Power loss	90 W
Degree of protection	IP20
Weight	7.8 kg

10.10.2 Line filter

The assignment of a suitable line filter to the inverter is provided in the following Chapter:

Optional components (Page 36)

Dimensions and mounting dimensions:

Mounting base components (Page 47)

Table 10-18 Technical data of the line filter as footprint component

Feature	Data		
Article no.	6SL3203-0BE17-7BA0	6SL3203-0BE21-8BA0	6SL3203-0BE23-8BA0
Power loss at 50/60 Hz	---	---	---
Degree of protection	IP20	IP20	IP20
Weight	1.75 kg	4.0 kg	7.3 kg

10.10.3 Output reactor

Preconditions for using reactors:

- Maximum permissible output frequency of the inverter: 150 Hz
- Inverter pulse frequency: 4 kHz

The assignment of a suitable output reactor to the inverter is provided in the following Chapter:

Optional components (Page 36)

Dimensions and mounting dimensions:

Mounting base components (Page 47)
Mounting the output reactor (Page 59)

Table 10-19 Technical data of the output reactor

Article no.	6SE6400-3TC00-4AD2	6SL3202-0AE16-1CA0	6SL3202-0AE18-8CA0
Inductance	2.5 mH	2.5 mH	1.3 mH
Power loss at 50/60 Hz	25 W	90 W	80 W
Degree of protection	IP20	IP20	IP20
Weight	0.8 kg	3.4 kg	3.9 kg

Table 10-20 Technical data of the output reactors

Article no.	6SL3202-0AE21-8CA0	6SL3202-0AE23-8CA0	6SE6400-3TC07-5ED0
Inductance	0.54 mH	0.26 mH	0.3 mH
Power loss	80 W	110 W	277 W
Degree of protection	IP20	IP20	IP20
Weight	10.1 kg	11.2 kg	26.7 kg

Table 10-21 Technical data of the output reactors

Article no.	6SE6400-3TC14-5FD0	6SL3000-2BE32-1AA0	6SL3000-2BE32-6AA0
Inductance	0.2 mH	---	---
Power loss	469 W	486 W	500 W
Degree of protection	IP20	IP00	IP00
Weight	55.9 kg	60 kg	66 kg

10.10.4 Sine-wave filter

Preconditions for using a sine-wave filter:

- Maximum permissible output frequency of the inverter: 150 Hz
- Inverter pulse frequency: 4 kHz

The assignment of a suitable sine-wave filter to the inverter is provided in the following Chapter:

Optional components (Page 36)

Dimensions and mounting dimensions:

Mounting base components (Page 47)

Table 10-22 Technical data of the sine-wave filter as footprint component

Article no.	6SE6400-3TD00-4AD0
Power loss at 50/60 Hz	25 W
Degree of protection	IP20
Weight	0.8 kg

10.10.5 dU/dt filter plus Voltage Peak Limiter

The du/dt filter plus Voltage Peak Limiter limits the rate of voltage rise at the inverter output to values < 500 V/µs - and the voltage peaks at the rated line voltages to values < 1000 V:

The assignment of the "du/dt filter plus Voltage Peak Limiter" to the inverter is provided in the following Chapter:

Optional components (Page 36)

Dimensions and mounting dimensions:

Mount dU/dt filter plus Voltage Peak Limiter (Page 62)

Table 10-23 Technical data "dU/dt filter plus Voltage Peak Limiter"

Article no.	**6SL3000-2DE32-6AA0**
Power loss	730 W
Degree of protection	IP00
Weight	72 kg

10.10.6 Braking resistor

Assigning the braking resistor to the inverter:

Optional components (Page 36)

Dimensions and mounting dimensions:

Mounting base components (Page 47)
Mounting the braking resistor (Page 63)

Table 10-24 Technical data of the braking resistor

Article no.	6SE6400-4BD11-0AA0	6SL3201-0BE14-3AA0	6SL3201-0BE21-0AA0
Resistance	390 Ω	370 Ω	140 Ω
Pulse power P_{max}	2.0 kW	1.5 kW	4 kW
Rated power P_{DB}	100 W	75 W	200 W
Temperature contact (NC contact)	250 VAC / 2.5 A	250 VAC / 2.5 A	250 VAC / 2.5 A
Degree of protection	IP20	IP20	IP20
Weight	1.0 kg	1.5 kg	1.8 kg

Table 10-25 Technical data of the braking resistors

Article no.	6SL3201-0BE21-8AA0	6SL3201-0BE23-8AA0	JJY:023422620001
Resistance	75 Ω	30 Ω	25 Ω
Pulse power P_{max}	7.5 kW	18.5 kW	22 kW
Rated power P_{DB}	375 W	925 W	1100 W
Temperature contact (NC contact)	250 VAC / 2.5 A	250 VAC / 2.5 A	250 VAC / 2.5 A
Degree of protection	IP20	IP20	IP21
Weight	2.7 kg	6.2 kg	7.0 kg

Table 10-26 Technical data of the braking resistors

Article no.	JJY:023424020001	JJY:023434020001	JJY:023454020001
Resistance	15 Ω	10 Ω	7.1 Ω
Pulse power P_{max}	37 kW	55 kW	77 kW
Rated power P_{DB}	1850 W	2750 W	3850 W
Temperature contact (NC contact)	250 VAC / 2.5 A	250 VAC / 2.5 A	250 VAC / 2.5 A
Degree of protection	IP21	IP21	IP21
Weight	9.5 kg	13.5 kg	20.5 kg

Table 10-27 Technical data of the braking resistors

Article no.	JJY:023464020001
Resistance	5 Ω
Pulse power P_{max}	110 kW
Rated power P_{DB}	5500 W
Temperature contact (NC contact)	250 VAC / 2.5 A
Degree of protection	IP21
Weight	27 kg

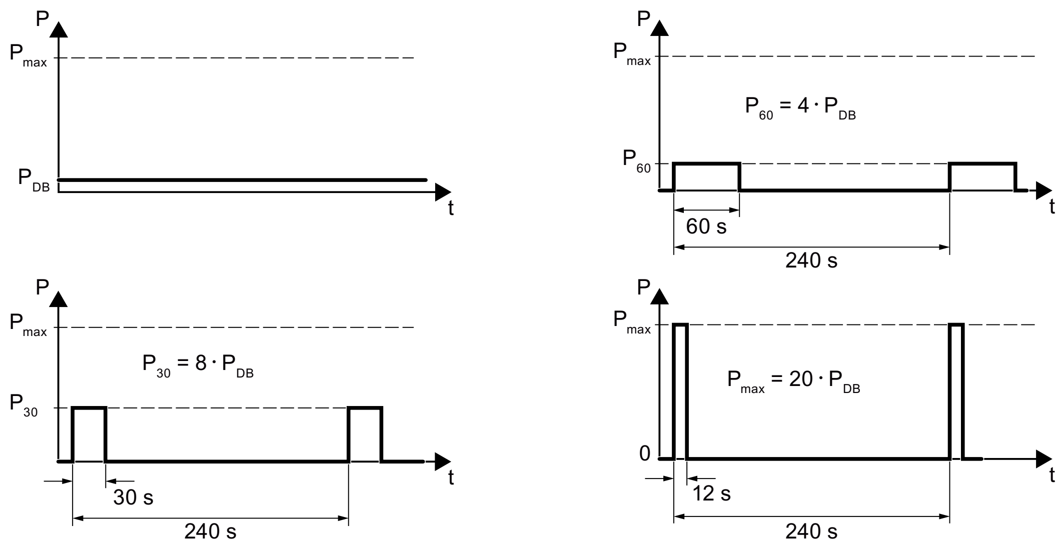


Figure 10-9 Pulse power P_{max}, rated power P_{DB} and examples of the switch-on duration of the braking resistor

Appendix A

A.1 New and extended functions

A.1.1 Firmware version 4.7 SP9

Table A-1 New functions and function changes in firmware 4.7 SP9

	Function	SINAMICS								
				G120				G120D		
		G110M	G120C	CU230P-2	CU240B-2	CU240E-2	CU250S-2	CU240D-2	CU250D-2	ET 200pro FC-2
1	Support of PM240-2 FSG Power Modules	-	-	✓	✓	✓	✓	-	-	-
2	Support of PM240-2 Power Modules in push-through technology, frame sizes FSD … FSF, for the following voltages: • 3 AC 200 V … 240 V • 3 AC 380 V … 480 V • 3 AC 500 V … 690 V	-	-	✓	✓	✓	✓	-	-	-
3	Support of PM240-2 Power Modules, 3 AC 500 V … 690 V, frame size FSD with reduced power 3 kW … 7.5 kW	-	-	✓	✓	✓	✓	-	-	-
4	Shortened switch-on time for PM330 Power Modules	-	-	✓	-	-	-	-	-	-
5	Expansion of the support for 1FP1 synchronous-reluctance motor with the following inverters: • SINAMICS G110M • SINAMICS G120D • SINAMICS G120 with CU240B-2 or CU240E-2 Control Unit A PM240-2 Power Module is required to operate a 1FP1 synchronous-reluctance motor with SINAMICS G120	✓	-	✓	✓	✓	-	✓	-	-
6	Support of 1FP3 synchronous-reluctance motors A PM240-2 Power Module is required to operate a 1FP3 synchronous-reluctance motor along with a selective release from SIEMENS	-	-	✓	-	-	-	-	-	-
7	Support of 1LE5 induction motors	-	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	-	-	-
8	The inverter supports forming the PM330 Power Module DC link capacitors	-	-	✓	-	-	-	-	-	-

	Function	SINAMICS								
				G120				G120D		
		G110M	G120C	CU230P-2	CU240B-2	CU240E-2	CU250S-2	CU240D-2	CU250D-2	ET 200pro FC-2
9	Setting option for two output reactors using parameter p0235 at the SINAMICS G120C and SINAMICS G120 with PM240-2 FSD … FSF Power Module	-	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	-	-	-
10	Efficiency-optimized operation of induction motors Improved method "Efficiency optimization 2"	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
11	New setting option for the "Technology application" p0500 = 5 during quick commissioning	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
12	Expansion of the available PROFIdrive telegrams in the SINAMICS G120C to include telegram 350	-	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	-	-	-
13	An SSI encoder can be parameterized as motor encoder	-	-	-	-	-	✓	-	✓	-
14	Expansion of the "Basic positioner" function to include the feedback signal from traversing blocks to the higher-level control system	-	-	-	-	-	✓	-	✓	-
15	Expansion to include a feedback signal if a memory card is not inserted in the inverter: • Parameter r9401 as BiCo parameter for the optional feedback signal to the higher-level control system. • New alarm A01101	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
16	Expansion of the "End stop control" function on the following inverters: • SINAMICS G120 • SINAMICS G120C • SINAMICS G120D	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	-
17	Expansion of the technology controller to include the following functions: • Gain K_P and integral time T_N can be adapted. • The system deviation can be used as adaptation signal	-	-	✓	-	✓	-	-	-	-
18	Expansion to the torque limiting for SINAMICS G120 inverters with CU230P-2 Control Unit	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓

Changes in the current manual (Page 5)

A.1.2 Firmware version 4.7 SP6

Table A-2 New functions and function changes in firmware 4.7 SP6

	Function	SINAMICS								
				G120				G120D		
		G110M	G120C	CU230P-2	CU240B-2	CU240E-2	CU250S-2	CU240D-2	CU250D-2	ET 200pro FC-2
1	Support for the Power Module PM240-2, FSF frame sizes	-	-	✓	✓	✓	✓	-	-	-
	Support of PM240P-2 Power Modules frame sizes FSD … FSF	-	-	✓	✓	✓	-	-	-	-
	Support of safety function Safe Torque Off (STO)via the terminals of the PM240-2 Power Module, frame size FSF and PM240P-2 Power Module FSD … FSF You can find additional information in the "Safety Integrated" function manual. Overview of the manuals (Page 459)	-	-	-	-	✓	✓	-	-	-
2	Support for Power Module PM330 JX frame size	-	-	✓	-	-	-	-	-	-
3	Support for 1PC1 induction motors	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
4	The control of synchronous reluctance takes into account the inductance of the output reactor.	-	-	✓	-	-	-	-	-	-
5	Support of motor temperature sensor Pt1000	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
6	New p4621 parameter for disabling PTC short-circuit monitoring	-	-	-	-	-	-	✓	✓	✓
7	Revision of the thermal motor model for protecting the motor against damage due to overheating in the stator or rotor	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
8	Changing the quick commissioning in the "Standard Drive Control" application class: The motor data identification is no longer permanently set to p1900 = 12; instead, users select the appropriate motor data identification. Factory setting: p1900 = 2.	-	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	-	-	-
9	The free function blocks are also available in the SINAMICS G120C.	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	-	-

Changes in the current manual (Page 5)

A.1.3 Firmware version 4.7 SP3

Table A-3 New functions and function changes in firmware 4.7 SP3

	Function	SINAMICS								
				G120				G120D		
		G110M	G120C	CU230P-2	CU240B-2	CU240E-2	CU250S-2	CU240D-2	CU250D-2	ET 200pro FC-2
1	PM240-2 Power Modules, frame sizes FSD and FSE are supported	-	-	✓	✓	✓	✓	-	-	-
	The Safety Integrated basic function Safe Torque Off (STO) is supported via the terminals of the PM240-2 Power Module, frame sizes FSD and FSE	-	-	-	-	✓	✓	-	-	-
2	Revised PM230 Power Module with new article numbers supported: • IP55 degree of protection: 6SL3223-0DE . . - . . **G** . • IP20 degree of protection and Push Through: 6SL321 . -1NE . . - . . **G** . You can find additional information in the "Safety Integrated" function manual. Overview of the manuals (Page 459)	-	-	✓	✓	✓	-	-	-	-
	The Safety Integrated basic function Safe Torque Off (STO) is supported with the revised PM230 Power Module	-	-	-	-	✓	-	-	-	-
3	PM330 Power Module, frame size HX is supported	-	-	✓	-	-	-	-	-	-
4	Support of 1FP1 synchronous-reluctance motors	-	-	✓	-	-	-	-	-	-
5	Encoderless 1FG1 geared synchronous motors are supported	-	-	-	-	-	-	✓	-	-
6	Selection list for 1PH8 induction motors in the STARTER and Startdrive commissioning wizard	-	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	-	-	-
7	Updated selection list for 1LE1 induction motors in the STARTER and Startdrive commissioning wizard	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
8	Motor support expanded with 1LE1, 1LG6, 1LA7 and 1LA9 induction motors	✓	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
9	Speed and position control obtain their respective actual value from an SSI encoder with incremental tracks. The output signals of the encoder are available as encoder 2 for position control and timer 1 for speed control.	-	-	-	-	-	✓	-	✓	-
10	Power Module with temperature-controlled fan	✓	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
11	SINAMICS “Standard Drive Control” and “Dynamic Drive Control” application classes to simplify commissioning and increase the degree of ruggedness of the closed-loop motor control. The SINAMICS application classes are available with the following inverters: • SINAMICS G120C • SINAMICS G120 with PM240, PM240-2 and PM330 Power Modules	-	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	-	-	-

	Function	SINAMICS								
				G120				G120D		
		G110M	G120C	CU230P-2	CU240B-2	CU240E-2	CU250S-2	CU240D-2	CU250D-2	ET 200pro FC-2
12	Moment of inertia estimator with moment of inertia precontrol to optimize the speed controller in operation	✓	✓	-	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
13	Friction torque characteristic with automatic plotting to optimize the speed controller	✓	✓	-	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
14	Automatic optimization of the technology controller	-	-	✓	✓	✓	-	-	-	-
15	The sign of the system deviation for the additional, free technology controller can be switched over. A new parameter defines the sign of the system deviation matching the particular application, e.g. for cooling or heating applications.	-	-	✓	-	-	-	-	-	-
16	The technology controller output can be enabled and disabled during operation	-	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	-	-	-
17	Ramp-function generator remains active with enabled technology controller	-	-	✓	-	-	-	-	-	-
18	Line contactor control using a digital output of the inverter to save energy when the motor is switched off	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	-
19	Fast flying restart for PM330 Power Modules: The "Flying restart" function does not have to wait for the motor demagnetization time, and identifies the motor speed without requiring a search operation.	-	-	✓	-	-	-	-	-	-
20	Load torque monitoring extended to include the following functions: • Protection against blocking, leakage and dry running operation in pump applications • Protection against blocking and broken belts in fan applications	✓	-	✓	✓	✓	-	-	-	-
21	Automatic switchover of the real time clock from daylight saving time (summer time) to standard time (winter time).	-	-	✓	-	-	-	-	-	-
22	New or revised default settings of the interfaces: p0015 macros 110, 112 and 120	-	-	✓	-	-	-	-	-	-
23	Expansion of the temperature sensors to include DIN-Ni1000 for analog inputs AI 2 and AI 3	-	-	✓	-	-	-	-	-	-
24	Communication via AS-Interface. Default setting of the communication via AS-i: p0015 macros 30, 31, 32 and 34	✓	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
25	Communication expansion via Modbus: Adjustable parity bit, access to parameters and analog inputs	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	-	-	-
26	Extending communication via BACnet: Access to parameters and analog inputs	-	-	✓	-	-	-	-	-	-
27	The bus error LED for communication via USS and Modbus can be switched off	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	-	-	-

	Function	SINAMICS								
				G120				G120D		
		G110M	G120C	CU230P-2	CU240B-2	CU240E-2	CU250S-2	CU240D-2	CU250D-2	ET 200pro FC-2
28	Default of the minimum speed to 20% of the rated motor speed	-	-	✓	-	-	-	-	-	-
29	For commissioning with an operator panel, the inverter automatically backs up the measured data retentively in the ROM after identification of the motor data.	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
30	The result of the energy savings calculation for flow machines is available as a connector	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
31	New "ppm" unit (parts per million) for unit switching	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
32	Displaying speeds during commissioning via operator panel in units of Hz instead of rpm. Conversion from Hz to rpm via p8552	-	-	✓	-	-	-	-	-	-
33	Voltage-dependent current limit for 600V devices of Power Module PM330 and PM240-2	-	-	✓	✓	✓	✓	-	-	-

A.1.4 Firmware version 4.7

Table A-4 New functions and function changes in Firmware 4.7

	Function	SINAMICS							
				G120				G120D	
		G110M	G120C	CU230P-2	CU240B-2	CU240E-2	CU250S-2	CU240D-2	CU250D-2
1	Supporting the identification & maintenance datasets (I&M1 … 4)	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
2	Fall in pulse rate with increased drive power required by the motor • The inverter temporarily lowers the pulse frequency if required when the motor is started up, and simultaneously increases the current limit.	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
3	S7 communication • Direct data exchange between the inverter and human-machine interface (HMI). • Increase in communication performance with the engineering tools and support of the S7 routing	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
4	The basic functions of Safety Integrated are unrestrictedly available in all control types with 1FK7 encoderless permanent-field synchronous motors	-	-	-	-	-	-	✓	-
5	Encoderless 1FK7 synchronous motors are supported • Direct motor selection based on the article number with associated code number • It is not necessary to input individual motor data	-	-	-	-	-	-	✓	-
6	Pulse input as source of setpoint value • The inverter calculates its speed setpoint from a sequence of pulses at the digital input.	-	-	-	-	-	✓	-	-
7	Dynamic IP address assignment (DHCP) and temporary device names for PROFINET	✓	✓	✓	-	✓	✓	✓	✓
8	PROFIenergy Slave profile 2 and 3	✓	✓	✓	-	✓	✓	✓	✓
9	Uniform behavior for component replacement • After a component is replaced, an inverter with activated Safety Integrated will report what type of component has been replaced using a unique code.	✓	✓	-	-	✓	✓	✓	✓
10	Improved direct-component control in PM230 • Optimized efficiency for pump and fan applications	-	-	✓	-	-	-	-	-
11	Rounding down of BACnet and macros	-	-	✓	-	-	-	-	-

A.1.5 Firmware version 4.6 SP6

Table A-5 New functions and function changes in firmware 4.6 SP6

	Function	SINAMICS						
			G120				G120D	
		G120C	CU230P-2	CU240B-2	CU240E-2	CU250S-2	CU240D-2	CU250D-2
1	Support for the new Power Modules • PM330 IP20 GX	-	✓	-	-	-	-	-

A.1.6 Firmware version 4.6

Table A-6 New functions and function changes in Firmware 4.6

	Function	SINAMICS						
			G120				G120D	
		G120C	CU230P-2	CU240B-2	CU240E-2	CU250S-2	CU240D-2	CU250D-2
1	Support for the new Power Modules • PM240-2 IP20 FSB … FSC • PM240-2 in through-hole technology FSB ... FSC	-	✓	✓	✓	✓	-	-
2	Support for the new Power Modules • PM230 in through-hole technology FSD ... FSF	-	✓	✓	✓	-	-	-
3	Motor data preassignment for the 1LA/1LE motors via code number • During quick commissioning with the operator panel, set the motor data using a code number	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
4	Extension to communication via CANopen • CAN velocity, ProfilTorque, SDO channel for each axis, system test with CodeSys, suppression of ErrorPassiv alarm	✓	✓	-	-	✓	-	-
5	Extension to communication via BACnet • Multistate value objects for alarms, commandable AO objects, objects for configuring the PID controller	-	✓	-	-	-	-	-
6	Communication via EtherNet/IP	✓	✓	-	✓	✓	✓	✓
7	Skip frequency band for analog input • A symmetrical skip frequency band can be set for each analog input around the 0 V range.	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	-
8	Changing the control of the motor holding brake	✓	-	✓	✓	✓	✓	-
9	Safety function SBC (Safe Brake Control) • Secure control of a motor holding brake when using the "Safe Brake Module" option	-	-	-	-	✓	-	-
10	Safety function SS1 (Safe Stop 1) without speed monitoring	-	-	-	-	✓	-	-
11	Straightforward selection of standard motors • Selection of 1LA... and 1LE... motors with an operator panel using a list containing code numbers	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
12	Firmware update via memory card	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
13	Safety info channel • BICO source r9734.0…14 for the status bits of the extended safety functions	-	-	-	✓	✓	✓	✓
14	Diagnostic alarms for PROFIBUS	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓

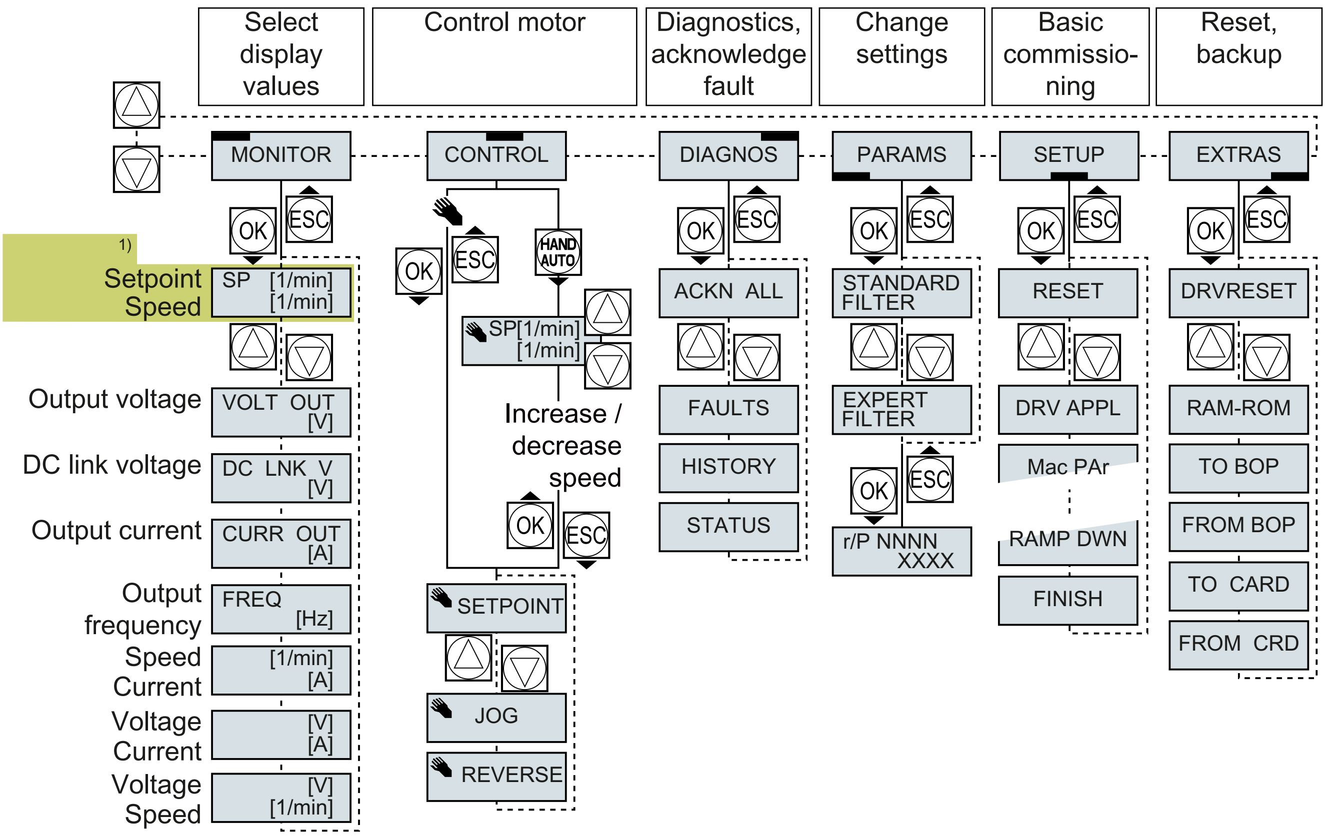
A.1.7 Firmware version 4.5

Table A-7 New functions and function changes in Firmware 4.5

	Function	SINAMICS					
			G120			G120D	
		G120C	CU230P-2	CU240B-2	CU240E-2	CU240D-2	CU250D-2
1	Support for the new Power Modules: • PM230 IP20 FSA … FSF • PM230 in a push-through FSA … FSC	-	✓	✓	✓	-	-
2	Support for the new Power Modules: • PM240-2 IP20 FSA • PM240-2 in push-through FSA	-	✓	✓	✓	-	-
3	New Control Units with PROFINET support	✓	✓	-	✓	✓	✓
4	Support of the PROFIenergy profile	✓	✓	-	✓	✓	✓
5	Shared device support via PROFINET	✓	✓	-	✓	✓	✓
6	Write protection	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
7	Know-how protection	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
8	Adding a second command data set (CDS0 → CDS0 … CDS1) (All other inverters have four command data sets)	✓	-	-	-	-	-
9	Position control and basic positioner	-	-	-	-	-	✓
10	Support of an HTL encoder	-	-	-	-	✓	✓
11	Support of an SSI encoder	-	-	-	-	-	✓
12	Fail-safe digital output	-	-	-	-	✓	✓

A.2 Handling the BOP 2 operator panel

A.2.1 Menu structure, symbols and keys



1) Status display once the power supply for the inverter has been switched on.

Figure A-1 Menu of the BOP-2

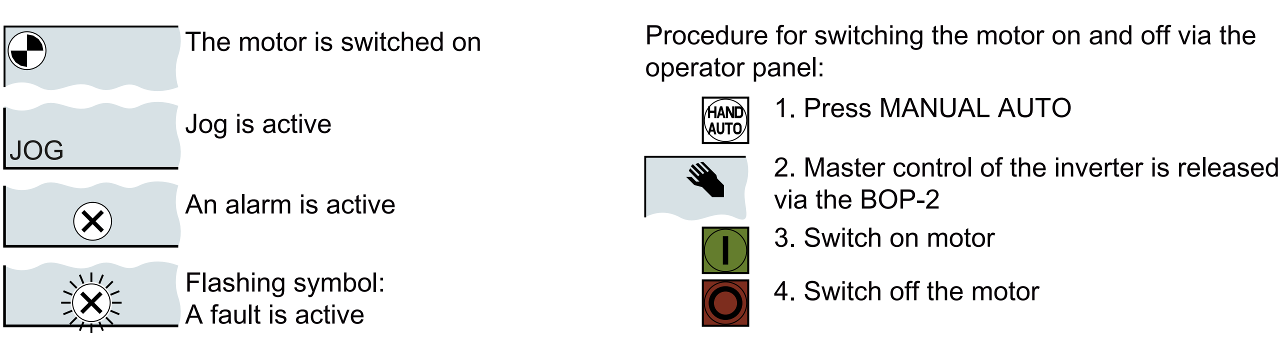


Figure A-2 Other keys and symbols of the BOP-2

A.2.2 Changing settings using BOP-2

Changing settings using BOP-2

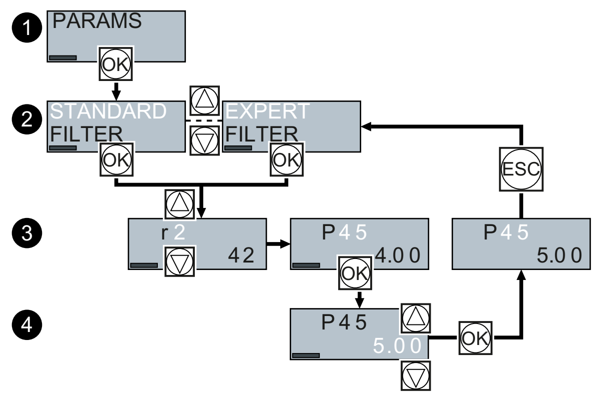
You can modify the settings of your inverter by changing the values of the its parameters. The inverter only permits changes to "write" parameters. Write parameters begin with a "P", e.g. P45.

The value of a read-only parameter cannot be changed. Read-only parameters begin with an "r", for example: r2.

Procedure

To change write parameters using the BOP-2, proceed as follows:

1. Select the menu to display and change parameters.
   Press the OK key.
2. Select the parameter filter using the arrow keys.
   Press the OK key.
   – STANDARD: The inverter only displays the most important parameters.
   – EXPERT: The inverter displays all of the parameters.



3. Select the required number of a write parameter using the arrow keys.
   Press the OK key.
4. Select the value of the write parameter using the arrow keys.
   Accept the value with the OK key.

You have now changed a write parameter using the BOP-2.

The inverter saves all the changes made using the BOP-2 so that they are protected against power failure.

A.2.3 Changing indexed parameters

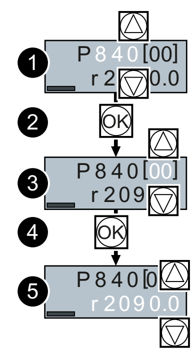
Changing indexed parameters

For indexed parameters, several parameter values are assigned to a parameter number. Each of the parameter values has its own index.

Procedure

To change an indexed parameter, proceed as follows:

1. Select the parameter number.
2. Press the OK key.
3. Set the parameter index.
4. Press the OK key.
5. Set the parameter value for the selected index.



You have now changed an indexed parameter.

A.2.4 Directly entering the parameter number and value

Directly select the parameter number

The BOP-2 offers the possibility of setting the parameter number digit by digit.

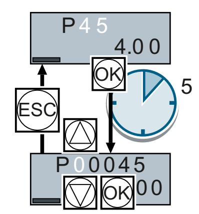
Precondition

The parameter number is flashing in the BOP-2 display.

Procedure

To select the parameter number directly, proceed as follows:

1. Press the OK button for longer than five seconds.
2. Change the parameter number digit-by-digit.
   If you press the OK button then the BOP-2 jumps to the next digit.
3. If you have entered all of the digits of the parameter number, press the OK button.



You have now entered the parameter number directly.

Entering the parameter value directly

The BOP-2 offers the option of setting the parameter value digit by digit.

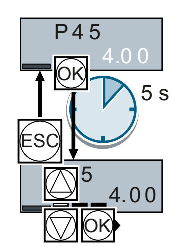
Precondition

The parameter value flashes in the BOP-2 display.

Procedure

To select the parameter value directly, proceed as follows:

1. Press the OK button for longer than five seconds.
2. Change the parameter value digit-by-digit.
   If you press the OK button then the BOP-2 jumps to the next digit.
3. If you have entered all of the digits of the parameter value, press the OK button.

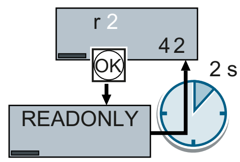
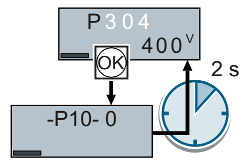
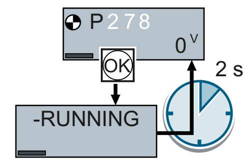


You have now entered the parameter value directly.

A.2.5 A parameter cannot be changed

When cannot you change a parameter?

The inverter indicates why it currently does not permit a parameter to be changed:

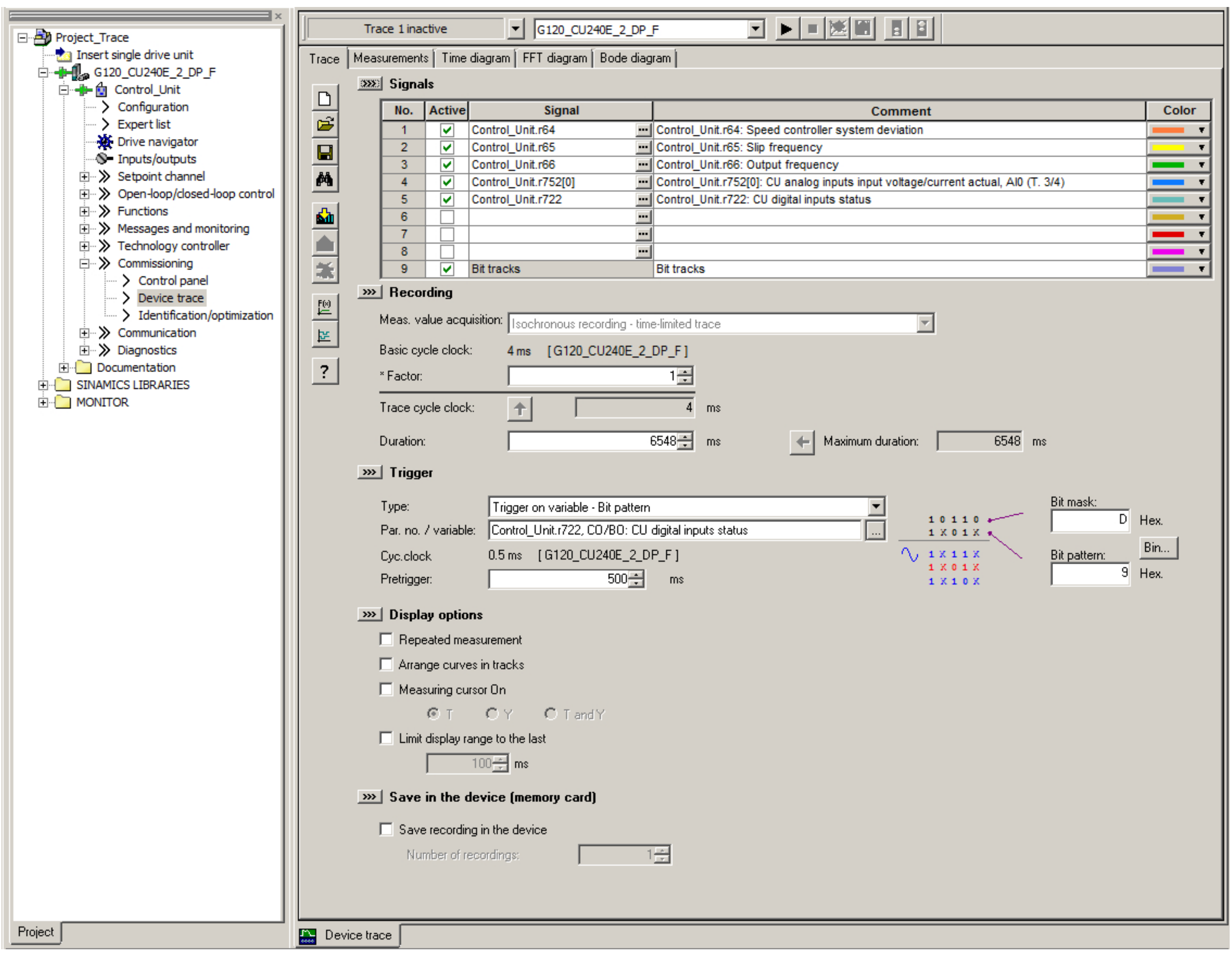
Read parameters cannot be adjusted	The parameter can only be adjusted during quick commissioning.	A parameter can only be adjusted when the motor is switched off
		

The operating state in which you can change a parameter is provided in the List Manual for each parameter.

A.3 The device trace in STARTER

Description

The device trace graphically displays inverter signals with respect to time.



Signals

In two settings that are independent of one another, using ... you can interconnect eight signals each.

Recording

You can start a measurement as frequently as you require. As long as you do not exit START, the results remain under the "Measurements" tab with data and time. When terminating STARTER or under the "Measurements" tab, you can save the measurement results in the *.trc format.

If you require more than two settings for your measurements, you can either save the individual settings in the project or export them in *.clg format, and load or import them, if necessary.

You can record individual bits of a parameter (e.g. r0722. 1) by allocating the relevant bit using "bit track" ( ).

Using the mathematical function ( ) you can define a curve, for example, the difference between the speed setpoint and the speed actual value.

The device trace shows "individual bits" or "mathematical functions" as signal No. 9.

Recording cycle and duration

The device trace records data in a CU-dependent basic cycle clock. The maximum recording duration depends on the number of recorded signals and the trace clock cycle.

Proceed as follows to extend the recording duration:

1. Multiply the trace clock cycle by an integral number.
2. Accept the displayed maximum duration using .

Alternatively, you can also specify the measurement period and then calculate the trace clock cycle of STARTER using .

Trigger (condition to start the device trace)

The device trace starts as soon as you press the (start trace) button.

Using the button , you can define another trigger to start the device trace.

The pretrigger defines the time in which the signals are traced before the trigger condition. As a consequence, the trigger condition traces itself.

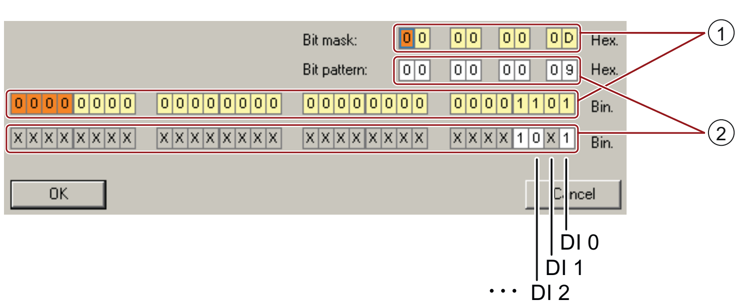
Example of a bit pattern as trigger:

You must define the pattern and value of a bit parameter for the trigger. To do so, proceed as follows:

Using , select "Trigger to variable - bit pattern"

Using , select the bit parameter

Using bin..., open the screen form in which you set the bits and their values for the start condition



①	Select the bits for the trace trigger, upper row hex format, lower row binary format
②	Define the bits for the trace trigger, upper row hex format, lower row binary format

Figure A-3 Trigger as bit pattern of r0722 (status of the digital inputs)

In the example, the trace starts if digital inputs DI 0 and DI 3 are high, and DI 2 is low. The state of the other digital inputs is not relevant for the trigger condition.

Further, you can either set an alarm or fault as start condition.

Display options

In this area, you can set how the measurement results are displayed.

- Repeat measurement
  This places the measurements that you wish to perform at different times above one other.
- Arrange curves in tracks
  This defines whether the device trace will show all measured values on a common zero line or on separate zero lines.
- Measuring cursor On
  This allows you to analyze the measuring intervals in more detail.

Save to device (memory card)

In this area, you define whether the device trace will save successive measurements in directory /USER/SINAMICS/DATA/TRACE on a inserted memory card.

Displaying the measurements backed up on the memory card

Procedure

To display the measurements backed up on the memory card, proceed as follows:

1. Insert the memory card into a card reader.
2. Go to the "Measurements" tab in the device trace.
3. Open the read out ACX files with the "Open measurements" button.

STARTER shows the measurements backed up on the memory card.

A.4 Interconnecting signals in the converter

A.4.1 Fundamentals

The following functions are implemented in the inverter:

- Open-loop and closed-loop control functions
- Communication functions
- Diagnosis and operating functions

Every function comprises one or several blocks that are interconnected with one another.

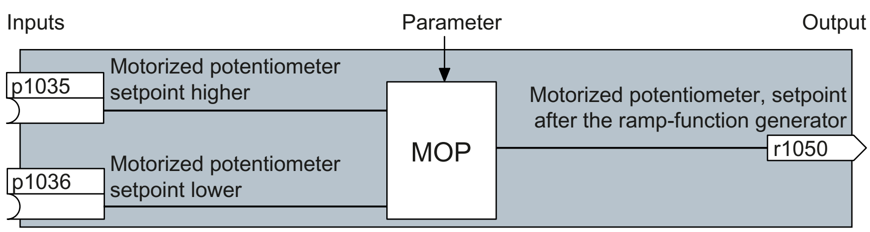


Figure A-4 Example of a block: Motorized potentiometer (MOP)

Most of the blocks can be adapted to specific applications using parameters.

You cannot change the signal interconnection within the block. However, the interconnection between blocks can be changed by interconnecting the inputs of a block with the appropriate outputs of another block.

The signal interconnection of the blocks is realized, contrary to electric circuitry, not using cables, but in the software.

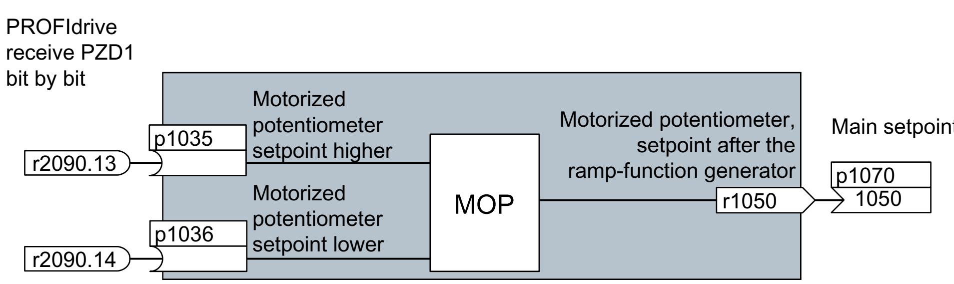


Figure A-5 Example: Signal interconnection of two blocks for digital input 0

Binectors and connectors

Connectors and binectors are used to exchange signals between the individual blocks:

- Connectors are used to interconnect "analog" signals (e.g. MOP output speed)
- Binectors are used to interconnect digital signals (e.g. "Enable MOP up" command)

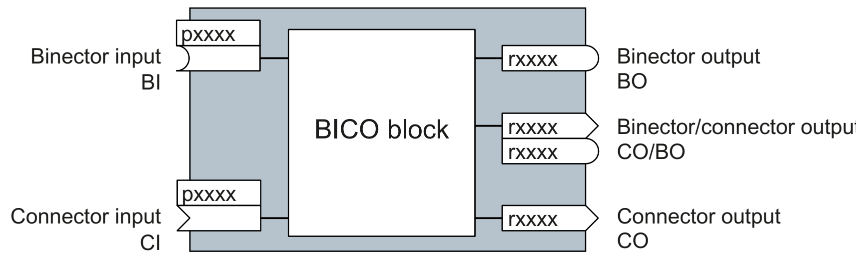


Figure A-6 Symbols for binector and connector inputs and outputs

Binector/connector outputs (CO/BO) are parameters that combine more than one binector output in a single word (e.g. r0052 CO/BO: status word 1). Each bit in the word represents a digital (binary) signal. This summary reduces the number of parameters and simplifies parameter assignment.

Binector or connector outputs (CO, BO or CO/BO) can be used more than once.

Interconnecting signals

When must you interconnect signals in the inverter?

If you change the signal interconnection in the inverter, you can adapt the inverter to a wide range of requirements. This does not necessarily have to involve highly complex functions.

Example 1: Assign a different function to a digital input.

Example 2: Switch the speed setpoint from the fixed speed to the analog input.

Principle when connecting BICO blocks using BICO technology

When interconnecting the signal, the following principle applies: **Where does the signal come from?**

An interconnection between two BICO blocks consists of a connector or a binector and a BICO parameter. The input of a block must be assigned the output of a different block: In the BICO parameters, enter the parameter numbers of the connector/binector that should supply its output signal to the BICO parameter.

How much care is required when you change the signal interconnection?

Note which changes you make. A subsequent analysis of the set signal interconnections is possible only by evaluating the parameter list.

We recommend that you use the STARTER and Startdrive commissioning tools for setting the signal interconnections.

Where can you find additional information?

- This manual suffices for assigning a different meaning to the digital inputs.
- The parameter list in the List Manual is sufficient for more complex signal interconnections.
- The function diagrams in the List Manual provide a complete overview of the factory setting for the signal interconnections and the setting options.

A.4.2 Application example

Shift the control logic into the inverter

It is only permissible that a conveyor system starts when two signals are present simultaneously. These could be the following signals, for example:

- The oil pump is running (the required pressure level is not reached, however, until after 5 seconds)
- The protective door is closed

To implement this task, you must insert free function blocks between digital input 0 and the command to switch on the motor (ON/OFF1).

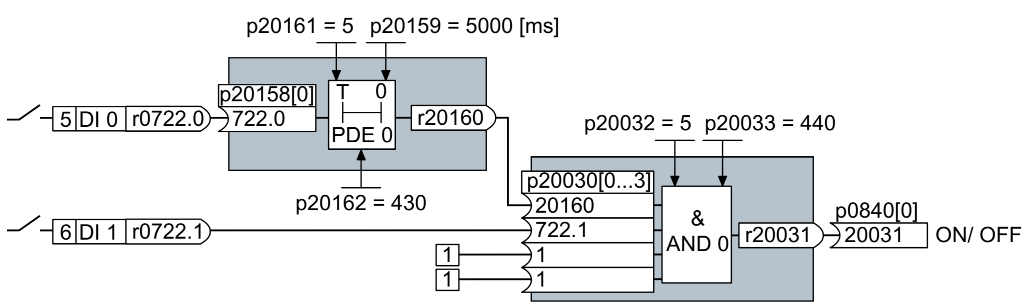


Figure A-7 Signal interconnection for control logic

The signal of digital input 0 (DI 0) is fed through a time block (PDE 0) and is interconnected with the input of a logic block (AND 0). The signal of digital input 1 (DI 1) is interconnected to the second input of the logic block. The logic block output issues the ON/OFF1 command to switch-on the motor.

Setting the control logic

Parameter	Description
p20161 = 5	The time block is enabled by assigning to runtime group 5 (time slice of 128 ms)
p20162 = 430	Run sequence of the time block within runtime group 5 (processing before the AND logic block)
p20032 = 5	The AND logic block is enabled by assigning to runtime group 5 (time slice of 128 ms)
p20033 = 440	Run sequence of the AND logic block within runtime group 5 (processing after the time block)

Parameter	Description
p20159 = 5000.00	Setting the delay time [ms] of the time module: 5 seconds
p20158 = 722.0	Connect the status of DI 0 to the input of the time block r0722.0 = Parameter that displays the status of digital input 0.
p20030[0] = 20160	Interconnecting the time block to the 1st AND input
p20030[1] = 722.1	Interconnecting the status of DI 1 to the 2nd AND input r0722.1 = Parameter that displays the status of digital input 1.
p0840 = 20031	Interconnect the AND output to ON/OFF1

Explanation of the application example using the ON/OFF1 command

Parameter p0840[0] is the input of the "ON/OFF1" block of the inverter. Parameter r20031 is the output of the AND block. To interconnect ON/OFF1 with the output of the AND block, set p0840 = 20031.

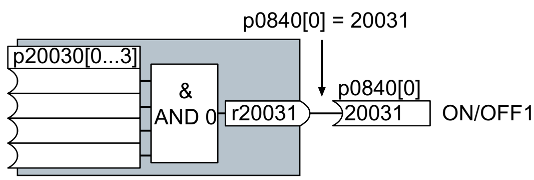


Figure A-8 Interconnecting blocks by setting p0840[0] = 20031

A.5 Connecting a fail-safe digital input

The following examples show the interconnection of a fail-safe digital input corresponding to PL d according to EN 13849-1 and SIL2 according to IEC61508. You can find additional examples and information in the "Safety Integrated" function manual.

Special requirements placed on EMC-compliant installation

Use shielded signal cables. Connect the shield at both conductor ends.

In order to connect two or more inverter terminals, use the shortest possible jumpers directly at the terminals themselves.

PM-switching and PP-switching fail-safe digital outputs

The inverter allows a fail-safe PM-switching digital output as well as a PP-switching fail-safe digital output to be connected.

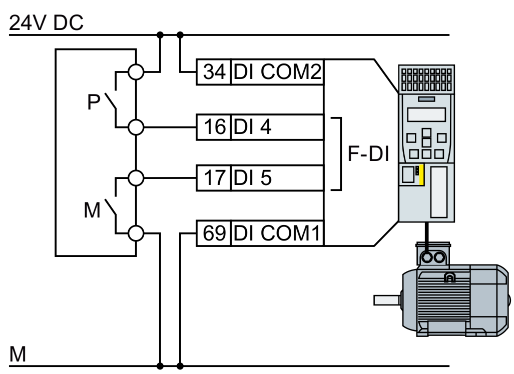


Figure A-9 Connecting a PM-switching and PP-switching fail-safe digital output

Connection examples

The following examples comply with PL d according to EN 13849-1 and SIL2 according to IEC 61508 for the case that all components are installed within one control cabinet.

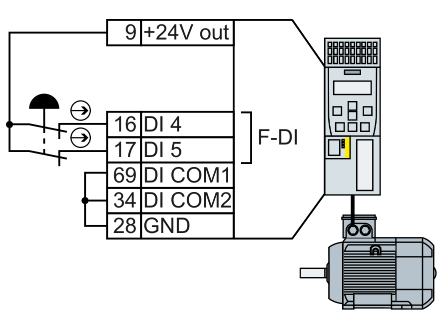


Figure A-10 Connecting a sensor, e.g. Emergency Stop mushroom pushbutton or limit switch

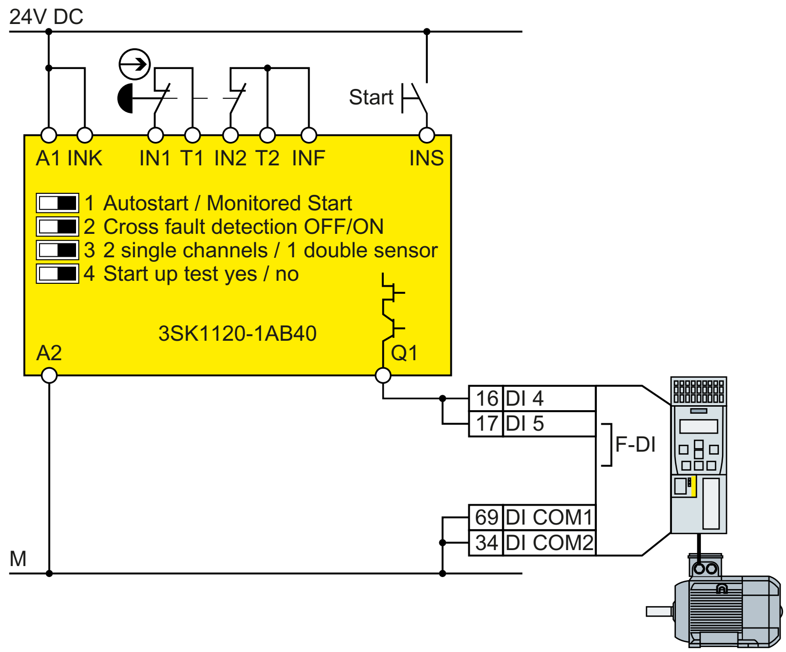


Figure A-11 Connecting a safety relay, e.g. SIRIUS 3SK11

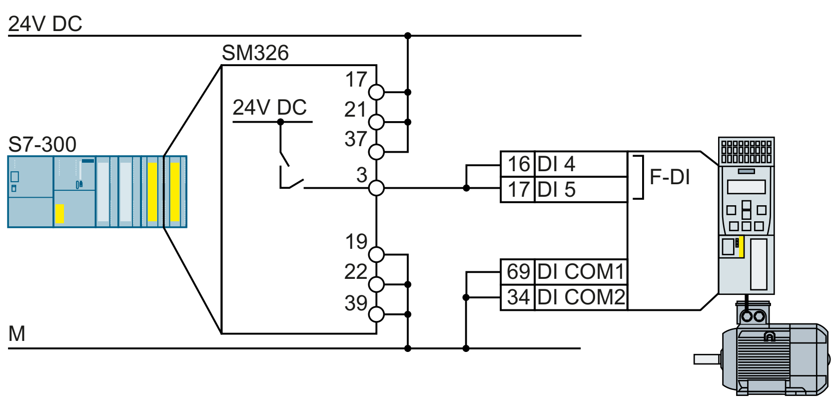


Figure A-12 Connecting an F digital output module, e.g. SIMATIC F digital output module

The Safety Integrated function manual provides additional connection options and connections in separate control cabinets.

Manuals and technical support (Page 459)

A.6 Acceptance test for the safety function

A.6.1 Recommended acceptance test

The following descriptions for the acceptance test are recommendations that illustrate the principle of acceptance. You may deviate from these recommendations if you check the following once you have completed commissioning:

- Correct assignment of the interfaces of each converter with the safety function:
  - Fail-safe inputs
  - PROFIsafe address
- Correct setting of the STO safety function.

Note

Perform the acceptance test with the maximum possible velocity and acceleration in order to test the expected maximum braking distances and braking times.

Note

Non-critical alarms

The following alarms are issued following each system ramp-up and are not critical for acceptance:

- A01697
- A01796

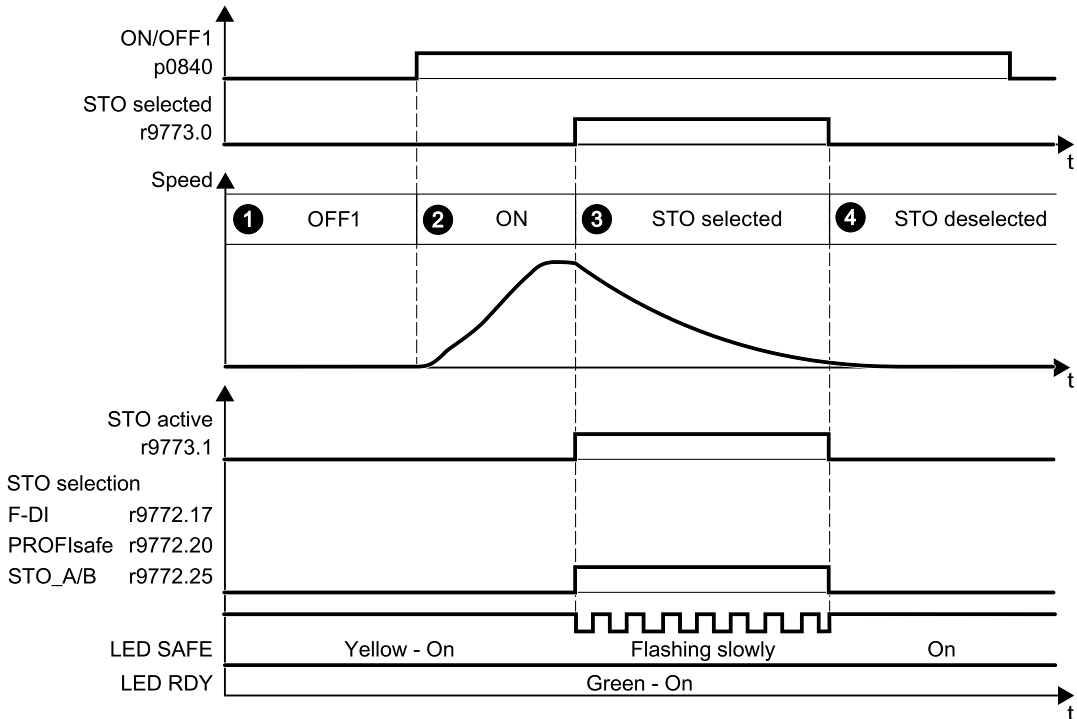


Figure A-13 Acceptance test for STO (basic functions)

Procedure

To perform an acceptance test of the STO function as part of the basic functions, proceed as follows:

			Status
1.	**The inverter is ready**		
	• The inverter signals neither faults nor alarms of the safety functions (r0945[0…7], r2122[0…7]).		
	• STO is not active (r9773.1 = 0).		
2.	**Switch on motor**		
	2.1.	Enter a speed setpoint ≠ 0.	
	2.2.	Switch on the motor (ON command).	
	2.3.	Check that the correct motor is running.	

					Status
3.	**Select STO**				
	3.1.	Select STO while the motor is running. *Test each configured activation, e.g. via digital inputs and PROFIsafe.*			
	3.2.	Check the following:			
		When controlled via PROFIsafe	When controlled via a fail-safe F-DI digital input	When controlled via STO_A and STO_B terminals on a PM240-2 or PM240P-2 Power Module	
		• The inverter signals the following: "STO selection via PROFIsafe" (r9772.20 = 1)	• The inverter signals the following: "STO Selection via terminal" (r9772.17 = 1)	• The inverter signals the following: "STO Selection via terminal on Power Module" (r9772.25 = 1)	
		• If a mechanical brake is not available, the motor coasts down. A mechanical brake brakes the motor and holds it to ensure that it remains at standstill.			
		• The inverter signals neither faults nor alarms of the safety functions (r0945[0…7], r2122[0…7]).			
		• The inverter signals the following: "STO is selected" (r9773.0 = 1). "STO is active" (r9773.1 = 1).			
4.	**Deselect STO**				
	4.1.	Deselect STO.			
	4.2.	Check the following:			
		• STO is not active (r9773.1 = 0).			
		• The inverter signals neither faults nor alarms of the safety functions (r0945[0…7], r2122[0…7]).			

You have performed the acceptance test of the STO function.

A.6.2 Machine documentation

Machine or plant description

Designation	
Type	
Serial number	
Manufacturer	
End customer	
Overview diagram of the machine and/or system:	

Inverter data

The inverter data include the hardware version of the safety-relevant inverter.

Labeling the drive	Article number and hardware version of the inverter

Function table

The active safety functions depending on the operating mode and safety equipment are shown in the function table.

Operating mode	Safety equipment	Drive	Selected safety function	Checked

Table A-8 Example of a function table

Operating mode	Safety equipment	Drive	Selected safety function	Checked
Automatic	*Protective door closed*	*Conveyor belt*	---	---
	Protective door open	*Conveyor belt*	*STO*	
	Emergency Stop button pressed	*Conveyor belt*	*STO*	

Acceptance test reports

File name of the acceptance reports	

Data backup

Data	Storage medium			Holding area
	Archiving type	Designation	Date	
Acceptance test reports				
PLC program				
Circuit diagrams				

Countersignatures

Commissioning engineer

The commissioning engineer confirms that the tests and checks listed above have been correctly executed.

Date	Name	Company/dept.	Signature
…	…	…	…

Machine manufacturer

The machine OEM confirms the correctness of the settings documented above.

Date	Name	Company/dept.	Signature
…	…	…	…

A.6.3 Documenting the settings for the basic functions, firmware V4.4 ... V4.7 SP6

Drive = <pDO-NAME_v>

Table A-9 Firmware version

Name	Number	Value
Control Unit firmware version	r18	<r18_v>
SI version, safety functions integrated in the drive (processor 1)	r9770	<r9770_v>

Table A-10 Monitoring cycle

Name	Number	Value
SI monitoring clock cycle (processor 1)	r9780	<r9780_v>

Table A-11 Checksums

Name	Number	Value
SI module identifier, Control Unit	r9670	<r9670_v>
SI module identifier, Power Module	r9672	<r9672_v>
SI reference checksum SI parameters (processor 1)	p9799	<p9799_v>
SI reference checksum SI parameters (processor 2)	p9899	<p9899_v>

Table A-12 Settings of the safety functions

Name		Number	Value
SI enable, functions integrated in the drive		p9601	<p9601_v>
Only for the CU250S-2 Control Unit	SI enable safe brake control	p9602	<p9602_v>
SI PROFIsafe address		p9610	<p9610_v>
F-DI switch over discrepancy time		p9650	<p9650_v>
SI STO debounce time		p9651	<p9651_v>
Only for the CU250S-2 Control Unit	SI Safe Stop 1 delay time	p9652	<p9652_v>
SI forced dormant error detection timer		p9659	<p9659_v>
SI forced checking procedure STO via PM terminals time		p9661	<p9661_v>

Table A-13 Safety logbook

Name	Number	Value
SI change control checksum	r9781[0]	<r9781[0]_v>
SI change control checksum	r9781[1]	<r9781[1]_v>
SI change control time stamp	r9782[0]	<r9782[0]_v>
SI change control time stamp	r9782[1]	<r9782[1]_v>

A.7 Manuals and technical support

A.7.1 Overview of the manuals

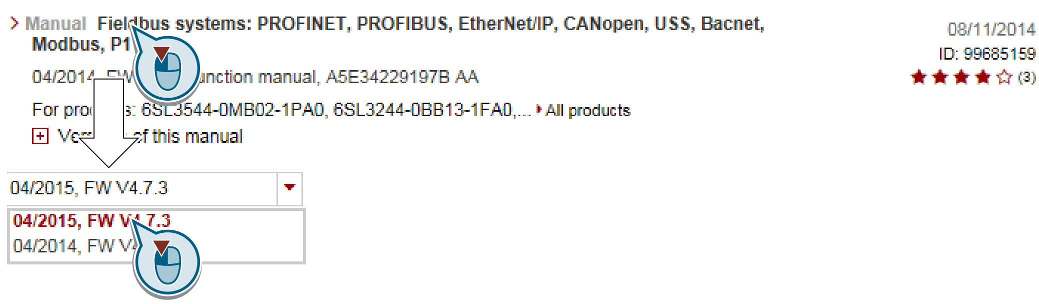
Manuals with additional information that can be downloaded

- Compact operating instructions SINAMICS G120C, FSAA ... FSC (https://support.industry.siemens.com/cs/ww/en/view/109736227)
  Installing and commissioning inverters, frame sizes FSAA … FSC.
- Compact operating instructions SINAMICS G120C, FSD ... FSF (https://support.industry.siemens.com/cs/ww/en/ps/13221/man)
  Installing and commissioning inverters, frame sizes FSD … FSF.
- SINAMICS G120C operating instructions. (https://support.industry.siemens.com/cs/ww/en/view/109482993)
  Installing, commissioning and maintaining the inverter. Advanced commissioning (this manual)
- EMC installation guideline (http://support.automation.siemens.com/WW/view/en/60612658)
  EMC-compliant control cabinet design, potential equalization and cable routing
- "Safety Integrated" function manual (https://support.industry.siemens.com/cs/ww/en/view/109483003)
  Configuring PROFIsafe. Installing, commissioning and operating fail-safe functions of the inverter.
- "Fieldbus" function manual (https://support.industry.siemens.com/cs/ww/en/view/109483004)
  Configuring fieldbuses
- SINAMICS G120C List Manual (https://support.industry.siemens.com/cs/ww/en/view/109482977)
  Parameter list, alarms and faults. Graphic function diagrams
- BOP-2 operating instructions (https://support.industry.siemens.com/cs/ww/en/view/109483379)
  Using the operator panel

- Operating instructions IOP-2 (https://support.industry.siemens.com/cs/ww/en/view/109747658)
  Using the Operator Panel.
- Accessories manual (https://support.industry.siemens.com/cs/ww/en/ps/13225/man)
  Installation descriptions for inverter components, e.g. line reactors and line filters. The printed installation descriptions are supplied together with the components.

Finding the most recent edition of a manual

If there a multiple editions of a manual, select the latest edition:

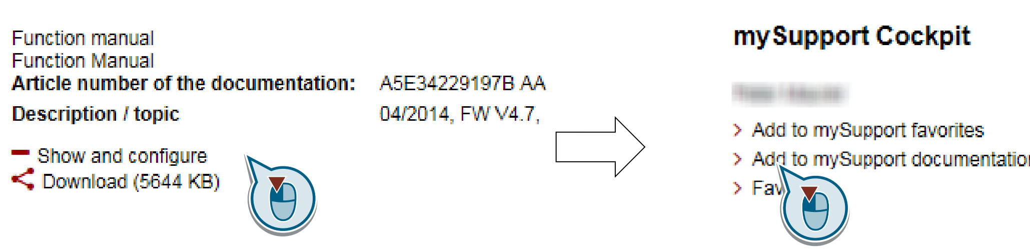


Configuring a manual

Further information about the configurability of manuals is available in the Internet:

MyDocumentationManager (https://www.industry.siemens.com/topics/global/en/planning-efficiency/documentation/Pages/default.aspx).

Select "Display and configure" and add the manual to your "mySupport-documentation":



Not all manuals can be configured.

The configured manual can be exported in RTF, PDF or XML format.

A.7.2 Configuring support

Catalog

Ordering data and technical information for SINAMICS G inverters.

Catalogs for download or online catalog (Industry Mall):

All about SINAMICS G120C (www.siemens.com/sinamics-g120c)

SIZER

The configuration tool for SINAMICS, MICROMASTER and DYNAVERT T drives, motor starters, as well as SINUMERIK, SIMOTION controllers and SIMATIC technology

SIZER on DVD:

Article number: 6SL3070-0AA00-0AG0

Download SIZER (http://support.automation.siemens.com/WW/view/en/10804987/130000)

EMC (electromagnetic compatibility) technical overview

Standards and guidelines, EMC-compliant control cabinet design

EMC overview (https://support.industry.siemens.com/cs/ww/en/view/103704610)

EMC Guidelines configuration manual

EMC-compliant control cabinet design, potential equalization and cable routing

EMC installation guideline (http://support.automation.siemens.com/WW/view/en/60612658)

Safety Integrated for novices technical overview

Application examples for SINAMICS G drives with Safety Integrated

Safety Integrated for novices (https://support.industry.siemens.com/cs/ww/en/view/80561520)

A.7.3 Product Support

You can find additional information on the product and more in the Internet under (http://www.siemens.com/automation/service&support)

This address provides the following:

- Actual product information (product memorandums), FAQs (frequently asked questions), downloads.
- The Newsletter contains the latest information on the products you use.
- The Knowledge Manager (Intelligent Search) helps you find the documents you need.
- Users and specialists from around the world share their experience and knowledge in the Forum.
- You can find your local representative for Automation & Drives via our contact database under "Contact & Partner".
- Information about local service, repair, spare parts and much more can be found under "Services".

Index

U

V

W

Z

Further information

SINAMICS converters:
www.siemens.com/sinamics

Safety Integrated:
www.siemens.com/safety-integrated

PROFINET:
www.siemens.com/profinet

Siemens AG
Digital Factory
Motion Control
Postfach 3180
91050 ERLANGEN
Germany

For additional information on SINAMICS G120, scan the QR code.